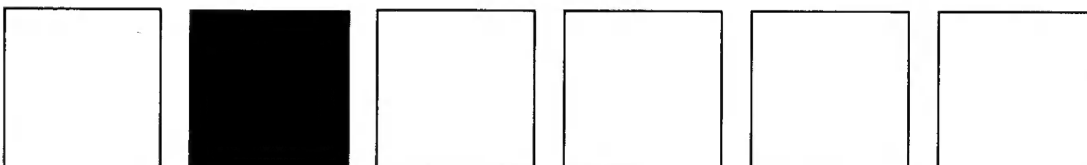




Software Internal Design

Specification Volume I

For the HP-71



Hewlett-Packard -- Portable Computer Division
Corvallis, Oregon

%%
%
% HP-71 Software %
%
% Internal Design Specification %
%
%
% VOLUME I %
%
% Detailed Design Description %
%
%%

%%%%%%%%%	%%%%%%%%%	%%%%%%%%
%%%%%%%%%	%%%%%%%%%	%%%%%%%%%
%	%	%%
%	%	%
%	%	%
%	%	%%%%%%%%
%	%	%%%%%%%%%
%	%	%%
%	%	%
%	%	%%
%%%%%%%%%	%%%%%%%%%	%%%%%%%%%
%%%%%%%%%	%%%%%%%%%	%%%%%%%%

%%	%%	%%	%%	%%
%%	%%	%%	%%	%%
%%	%%	%	%	%%
%%	%%	%%	%%	%%
%	%%	%%	%%	%%

December 1983

HP Part No. 00071-90068

(c) Copyright Hewlett-Packard Company 1983

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

*** NOTICE ***

Hewlett-Packard Company makes no expressed or implied warranty with regard to the documentation and program material offered or to the fitness of such material for any particular purpose. The documentation and program material is made available solely on an "as is" basis, and the entire risk as to its quality and performance is with the user. Should the documentation and program material prove defective, the user (and not Hewlett-Packard Company or any other party) shall bear the entire cost of all necessary correction and all incidental or consequential damages. Hewlett-Packard Company shall not be liable for any incidental or consequential damages in connection with or arising out of the furnishing, use, or performance of the documentation and program material.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Table of Contents

Table of Contents

1	OVERVIEW	
1.1	Structure of the HP-71 Software IDS	1-1
1.1.1	Volume I: Detailed Design Description	1-2
1.1.2	Volume II: Entry Point and Poll Interfaces	1-4
1.1.3	Volume III: Operating System Source Listings	1-5
1.2	Operating System Overview	1-5
1.2.1	Memory Layout	1-7
1.2.2	File System	1-8
1.3	CPU Overview	1-8
1.3.1	Registers	1-8
1.3.1.1	Field Selection	1-9
1.3.2	Pointer Registers	1-9
1.3.3	Input, Output, and Program Counter Registers	1-10
1.3.4	Status and Carry Bits	1-10
1.4	HP Support For HP-71 Software Development	1-11
2	SYSTEM STARTUP AND MEMORY CONFIGURATION	
2.1	System Configuration Overview Including RAM and ROM	2-1
2.2	Entering Deep Sleep	2-2
2.3	Startup/Configuration Sequence	2-2
2.4	Configuration Routine -- DETAIL	2-3
2.4.1	CHIP ID	2-4
2.4.1.1	Examples	2-6
2.5	Configuration Buffer Format	2-7
2.6	Special Role of High Two Pages in Memory	2-8
2.6.1	Producing a Hard-Configured ROM at E0000	2-8
2.6.2	Dangers of Hard-Configuring ROMs	2-8
2.6.2.1	Bus Contention	2-8
2.6.2.2	Invisible Plug-ins	2-9
2.7	Location of Future System ROMs	2-9
2.7.1	Soft-Configured ROM	2-9
2.7.2	Fifth ROM at F8000	2-9
2.8	Configuration "Garbage Dump"	2-10
3	MEMORY STRUCTURE	
3.1	Operating System ROM	3-1
3.2	Memory Mapped I/O and Display RAM	3-1
3.2.1	Display Driver Addresses	3-2
3.3	System RAM	3-4
3.3.1	Interrupt RAM (INTR4 - VECTOR,DISINT)	3-9
3.3.2	Keyboard Buffer/Flags (ATNDIS - KEYSAB)	3-10
3.3.3	Pseudo-Device Display Driver (WINDST - DSPMSK)	3-10
3.3.4	User Memory Pointers (MAINST - RAMEND)	3-12
3.3.5	Parameter Chain Pointer (PRMPTR)	3-14
3.3.6	Variable Chain Pointer List (CHNLST)	3-14
3.3.7	Statement/Program Execute RAM (DSPCHX-TMRIN3)	3-15
3.3.8	Miscellaneous BASIC RAM (STSAVE - INADDR)	3-15

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Table of Contents

3.3.9	System and User Flags (SYSFLG - FLGREG)	3-16
3.3.10	Traps (INXNIB - IVLNIB)	3-17
3.3.11	Random Number Seed (RNSEED)	3-17
3.3.12	Alarm Clock System RAM (NXTIRQ - TIMAF)	3-17
3.3.13	"IS" Table Assignments (IS-TBL)	3-18
3.3.14	HP-IL RAM (MBOX, LOOPST, DSPSET)	3-18
3.3.15	STAT Array (STATAR), TRACE Mode (TRACEM)	3-19
3.3.16	LOCK Password (LOCKWD)	3-19
3.3.17	Result Register (RESREG)	3-19
3.3.18	Error Number (ERRN)	3-19
3.3.19	Current Line (CURRL)	3-20
3.3.20	Error Line Number (ERRL#)	3-20
3.3.21	Snapshot Buffer (SNAPBF)	3-20
3.3.22	Return Stack Save (RSTKBp, RSTKBF)	3-20
3.3.23	Multi-Line Function Flag (MLFFLG)	3-21
3.3.24	Statement, Function Scratch (STMTR - FUNCd1)	3-21
3.3.25	TRANSFORM Scratch RAM (TRFMBF)	3-22
3.3.26	Scratch RAM (SCRATCH)	3-22
3.3.27	Scratch Math Stack (SCRSTO - SCREXx)	3-23
3.3.28	DISP/PRINT RAM (SCROLL - EOLSTR)	3-24
3.3.29	CALL Parameter Count (PRMCNT)	3-24
3.3.30	Key Definition Info (DEFADR)	3-24
3.3.31	Channel Number Save (CHN#SV)	3-25
3.3.32	Number of Command Stack Entries (MAXCMD)	3-25
3.3.33	Clock Speed (CSPEED)	3-25
3.3.34	HP-IL Special RAM (ERRLCH - HPSCRH)	3-25
3.3.35	Reserved RAM (RESRV)	3-26
3.3.36	System RAM Availability	3-26
3.4	Configuration Buffer	3-26
3.5	User Memory	3-29
3.5.1	MAIN File Chain	3-29
3.5.2	Program Scope	3-30
3.5.3	System Buffers	3-31
3.5.3.1	Format	3-31
3.5.3.2	Update Addresses in System Buffers	3-32
3.5.3.3	Automatic Deletion of System Buffers	3-32
3.5.3.4	Permanent Buffers	3-32
3.5.3.5	Scratch Buffers	3-33
3.5.3.6	System Buffers Used by the Mainframe	3-33
3.5.4	CALC Mode Pointers	3-33
3.5.5	Command Stack	3-35
3.5.6	Available Memory	3-37
3.5.7	Math Stack	3-37
3.5.8	Save Stack	3-37
3.5.9	FOR/NEXT Stack	3-38
3.5.10	GOSUB Stack	3-39
3.5.11	Variable Storage	3-40
3.5.12	User-Defined Function Environment Stacking	3-40
3.5.12.1	Environment Save Block	3-41
3.5.12.2	Extended Parameter Storage	3-43
3.5.13	Subprogram CALL Environment Stacking	3-43

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Table of Contents

3.5.13.1	Environment Save Area	3-44
3.6	Plug-in ROM and Independent RAM	3-46
3.6.1	Standard Configuration	3-47
3.6.2	Stand Alone Module ID	3-47
3.6.3	File Chain Layout	3-47
3.6.4	Take Over ROM	3-48
3.6.4.1	Hard-Configured Takeover ROM	3-48
3.6.4.2	Soft-Configured Takeover ROM	3-49
3.7	Available Memory Management	3-50
3.8	Handling Memory Movement	3-51
3.8.1	In Configuration Buffer Area	3-53
3.8.2	In a File Chain	3-55
3.8.3	In System Buffer Area	3-58
4	SYSTEM CONTROL	
4.1	Main Loop Flow Diagram	4-2
4.2	Algorithm	4-3
4.2.1	Cold Start	4-3
4.2.2	Main Loop, Wakeup, Power Off, Deep Sleep	4-3
4.3	Interrupt Handling	4-6
4.3.1	Causes of Interrupts	4-6
4.3.1.1	Keyboard Interrupts	4-6
4.3.1.2	ON-Key Interrupt	4-6
4.3.1.3	Module Pulled Interrupts	4-6
4.3.1.4	Other Interrupts	4-6
4.3.2	Interrupt Handling Algorithm	4-6
4.4	Statement Parse	4-7
4.4.1	Initiation	4-7
4.4.1.1	External Invoking of Parse	4-8
4.4.2	Statement Parse Algorithm	4-8
4.4.3	Errors and Restart	4-12
4.4.4	Restart Algorithm	4-12
4.5	Statement Decompile	4-13
4.5.1	Initiation	4-13
4.5.1.1	External Invoking of Decompile	4-13
4.5.2	Algorithm	4-13
4.5.3	Decompile Routines	4-14
4.6	Program Edit	4-14
4.6.1	Global Assumptions	4-15
4.6.2	Program Edit Algorithm	4-15
5	THE BASIC INTERPRETER	
5.1	BASIC Interpreter	5-1
5.2	Entering the BASIC Interpreter	5-1
5.3	Reentering the BASIC Interpreter	5-1
5.4	Exiting the BASIC Interpreter	5-2
5.5	Exception Handling	5-3
5.5.1	Servicing Clock System Exceptions	5-4
5.5.2	Algorithm	5-4
5.6	Immediate Mode	5-6
5.6.1	Statement Buffer	5-6

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Table of Contents

5.7	Program Execution	5-7
5.8	TRACE Mode	5-8
5.9	Global Assumptions	5-8
6	LANGUAGE EXTENSION AND BINARY FILES	
6.1	LEX File Structure	6-1
6.1.1	How it All Works	6-6
6.1.1.1	Parsing	6-7
6.1.1.2	Decompiling	6-7
6.1.1.3	Execution	6-7
6.1.2	How to Create a LEX File	6-8
6.1.2.1	HP-71 Assembler	6-8
6.1.3	Symbolic Referencing	6-8
6.1.3.1	Mainframe Tokens	6-8
6.1.3.2	Other Mainframe Symbolics	6-17
6.1.3.3	Building Symbolic Tokens For a LEX File	6-18
6.2	Lexical Analysis, Parse, Execute	6-18
6.3	LEX IDs and Entry #s	6-19
6.3.1	LEX ID Allocation	6-20
6.3.2	Range of Entry Numbers	6-20
6.3.3	Merging LEX Files	6-20
6.4	Referencing Mainframe Entry Points	6-20
6.4.1	LEX Files and Memory Movement	6-21
6.4.2	MGOSUB Utility	6-21
6.5	Referencing Addresses in a LEX File	6-22
6.6	External Lexical Analysis	6-22
6.7	Entry and Display of External Keywords	6-23
6.8	Short Keywords	6-23
6.9	Line Number References Within a Statement	6-
6.9.1	References Within an "Interrupt" Statement	6-
6.10	Polling	6-25
6.10.1	Fast Poll	6-26
6.10.1.1	Fast Poll Example	6-27
6.10.2	Slow Poll	6-27
6.10.2.1	Slow Poll Example	6-28
6.10.2.2	Save Stack Slow Poll Information	6-28
6.10.3	POLL Subroutine Level Usage	6-29
6.10.4	How to Answer a Poll	6-29
6.10.5	Responding to a Poll from Binary	6-29
6.10.6	Take-over Poll	6-30
6.10.7	Polling during Parse or Decompile	6-30
6.10.8	Polling from a LEX File in RAM	6-30
6.10.9	Summary of Poll Function Codes	6-31
6.10.10	Special Mainframe Polls	6-31
6.10.10.1	Pointer and Buffer "Clean-Up"	6-31
6.11	BIN Main Programs	6-31
6.11.1	Ending a Binary Program	6-32
6.12	BIN Subprograms	6-32
6.13	BIN Error Exit	6-32
6.14	Invoking BASIC from Binary	6-33
6.14.1	Responding to POLL and Invoking BASIC	6-33

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Table of Contents

7	STATEMENT PARSE, DECOMPILE, AND EXECUTION	
7.1	Writing a Parse Routine	7-1
7.1.1	Statement Tokenization	7-1
7.1.1.1	Program Line	7-1
7.1.1.2	Program Line with Comment	7-2
7.1.1.3	Program Line Containing Labels	7-2
7.1.1.4	Multi-statement Line with Label	7-3
7.1.2	Statements with Special Tokenization	7-3
7.1.2.1	IF...THEN...ELSE	7-3
7.1.2.2	CALL	7-5
7.1.2.3	SUB	7-7
7.1.2.4	IMAGE	7-8
7.1.3	Global Assumptions	7-9
7.1.4	Entry Conditions from Line Parse Driver	7-10
7.1.5	Exit Conditions	7-10
7.1.6	Parse Errors	7-11
7.1.6.1	Relinquishing Error Handling	7-11
7.1.7	Expression Tokenization	7-12
7.1.7.1	Constants	7-12
7.1.7.2	Variables	7-12
7.1.7.3	Operators	7-13
7.1.7.4	Functions	7-13
7.1.8	Funny Function Parse	7-13
7.1.8.1	Funny Function Tokenization	7-15
7.1.9	Polling during Parse	7-15
7.2	Writing a Decompile Routine	7-16
7.2.1	Global Assumptions	7-16
7.2.2	Entry Conditions from Line Decompile	7-16
7.2.3	Decompile Utilities	7-16
7.2.4	Exit Conditions	7-17
7.2.5	Existing Multi-use Decompile Routines	7-17
7.2.6	Funny Function Decompile	7-18
7.2.7	Polling during Decompile	7-18
7.3	Statement Execution	7-19
7.3.1	Entry Conditions	7-19
7.3.2	Global Assumptions	7-19
7.3.3	Exit Conditions	7-19
7.3.4	Error Exits through MFERR/BSERR	7-20
7.3.5	Use of Available Memory by Statements	7-20
7.3.6	Statement Execution Utilities	7-20
7.4	Expression Execution	7-21
7.4.1	Entry Conditions to Expression Execute	7-21
7.4.2	Math Stack Usage and Format	7-21
7.4.3	Data Types on the Stack	7-21
7.4.4	Expression Execution Utilities	7-23
7.4.5	Function Returns	7-24
7.5	Implementation of Function Execution	7-24
7.5.1	Entry Point	7-24
7.5.2	Entry Conditions	7-25
7.5.3	Exit Conditions	7-25

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Table of Contents

7.5.4	Error Exits through MFERR/BSERR	7-25
7.5.5	"Funny" Functions	7-26
8	BASIC FILE CONSIDERATIONS	
8.1	ROM Generation	8-1
8.1.1	Chaining a BASIC File	8-1
8.1.2	Compiling Line Number References	8-1
8.2	BASIC Application Standards	8-2
8.2.1	Preserving The Main Environment	8-2
8.3	BASIC Packing Techniques	8-2
8.4	Version Number	8-3
9	UTILITIES	
9.1	Decompile Utilities	9-1
9.2	Display and Keyboard Control Utilities	9-2
9.2.1	Display Control	9-2
9.2.1.1	Carriage Return and Line Feed	9-2
9.2.1.2	Display Escape Code Sequences	9-3
9.2.1.3	Scrolling The Display	9-3
9.2.1.4	Setting The Bit Pattern In The Display	9-4
9.2.2	Keyboard Interface	9-4
9.2.3	Summary	9-4
9.3	Expression Execution Utilities	9-4
9.3.1	Utilities for Pushing Items Onto Math Stack	9-5
9.3.2	Utilities for Popping Items Off Math Stack	9-5
9.4	File I/O Utilities	9-6
9.5	Flag Utilities	9-7
9.6	Math Utilities	9-7
9.6.1	Numeric Comparison	9-7
9.6.2	Trig Routines	9-8
9.6.3	Inverse Trig Routines	9-8
9.6.4	Arithmetic & Square Root	9-8
9.6.5	Integer-Fraction Functions	9-9
9.6.6	Logarithmic Functions	9-9
9.6.7	Exponential & Involution	9-9
9.6.8	Conversion Between 15-forms and 12-forms	9-9
9.6.9	Pop, Test, Prepare 1 Argument	9-10
9.6.10	Scratch Math Stack	9-10
9.6.11	Factorial	9-10
9.6.12	Statistical Utilities	9-10
9.6.13	Miscellaneous Math Utilities	9-11
9.7	Parse Utilities	9-12
9.7.1	Parse Input Utilities	9-12
9.7.2	Parse/Decompile Output Utilities	9-13
9.7.3	Parse General Utilities	9-14
9.8	Statement Execution Utilities	9-15
9.8.1	Utilities for PRINT class statements	9-15
9.9	System Buffer Utilities	9-16
9.10	Variable Storage Utilities	9-17
9.10.1	Summary	9-18

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Table of Contents

10	MESSAGE HANDLING	
10.1	BASIC Keywords Involving Messages	10-1
10.1.1	ERRN	10-1
10.1.2	ERRL	10-1
10.1.3	ERRM\$	10-2
10.1.4	MSG\$ Function	10-2
10.2	Message Handling	10-3
10.2.1	Message Types	10-3
10.2.1.1	Effects of Error Messages	10-4
10.2.1.2	Effects of Memory Error Messages	10-4
10.2.1.3	Effects of Warning Messages	10-5
10.2.1.4	Effects of System Messages	10-5
10.2.1.5	Text Insertion	10-5
10.2.1.6	ERRN and ERRL Considerations	10-6
10.2.1.7	Messages During Running Programs	10-7
10.2.2	Error Message Handling	10-7
10.2.2.1	Entry Points	10-7
10.2.2.2	Entry Conditions for MFERR*	10-8
10.2.2.3	Parse Errors	10-9
10.2.2.4	Examples	10-10
10.2.2.5	Entry Point MFERSp	10-10
10.2.3	Warning Message Handling	10-11
10.2.3.1	Entry Conditions for MFURN	10-11
10.2.3.2	MFURN DELAY Option	10-13
10.2.3.3	Multiple Text Insertions	10-13
10.2.3.4	Indirect Message Calling	10-14
10.2.4	System Messages	10-14
10.2.4.1	Entry Conditions for System Messages	10-14
10.2.4.2	Adding Prefixes to System Messages	10-15
10.3	Insufficient Memory Error	10-17
10.3.1	Reporting MEMERR	10-17
10.3.1.1	Calling MEMER*	10-18
10.3.2	MEMERR Handling	10-19
10.3.2.1	MEMERR Poll	10-19
10.4	Foreign Language Translators	10-21
10.4.1	BASIC Error Trapping	10-21
10.4.2	LEX File Number Sharing	10-22
10.4.2.1	LEX File #00 (Mainframe) Translation	10-22
10.4.2.2	Other LEX File Translation	10-23
10.4.2.3	HPIL Message Range	10-24
10.4.3	Poll Handlers for Translators	10-24
10.4.3.1	Poll Handler for LEX ID #01	10-25
10.4.3.2	Poll Handler for Other LEX Files	10-25
10.4.4	Two Types of Language Translators	10-26
10.4.4.1	One-shot Translator	10-26
10.4.4.2	Selectable Translator	10-26
10.5	Message Table Construction	10-29
10.5.1	Message Formats	10-29
10.5.2	Message Prefix	10-29
10.5.3	Message Construction	10-29

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Table of Contents

10.5.3.1	Message Range	10-30
10.5.3.2	Message Blocks	10-31
10.5.3.3	ROM Savings With Building Blocks	10-35
10.5.3.4	Example	10-37
11	FILE SYSTEM	
11.1	File Chain Structure	11-1
11.1.1	File Header	11-3
11.1.2	Implementation Field	11-4
11.1.3	File Subheader	11-5
11.1.4	File Header Structure by Copy Code	11-5
11.2	File Types	11-7
11.2.1	File Protection	11-7
11.2.2	BASIC	11-8
11.2.2.1	Subheader	11-8
11.2.2.2	Subprogram Chain	11-9
11.2.2.3	Label/User-Defined Function Chain	11-9
11.2.2.4	Statement Tokenization	11-9
11.2.3	BIN	11-10
11.2.3.1	Subheader	11-10
11.2.3.2	Subprogram Chain	11-11
11.2.3.3	Writing a Binary Subprogram	11-11
11.2.4	DATA	11-15
11.2.4.1	Implementation Field	11-16
11.2.4.2	File Structure	11-16
11.2.5	KEY	11-21
11.2.5.1	File Structure	11-22
11.2.6	LEX	11-22
11.2.6.1	File Structure	11-22
11.2.7	SDATA	11-22
11.2.7.1	File Structure	11-23
11.2.8	TEXT	11-23
11.2.8.1	File Structure	11-23
11.3	Copying a File	11-24
11.3.1	Copying to/from Card	11-24
11.3.2	Copying to/from External Media	11-25
11.3.3	Copying to/from Other Memory Devices	11-25
11.4	Opening a File	11-25
11.5	File Searching	11-26
11.6	File Creation	11-27
12	TABLE FORMATS	
12.1	ASSIGN Buffer	12-1
12.2	Card Reader Buffer	12-1
12.3	Character Sets	12-2
12.3.1	Standard Character Set	12-2
12.3.2	Alternate Character Set Buffer	12-2
12.4	External Command Buffer	12-3
12.5	File Information Buffer	12-3
12.5.1	Open Files and Protection	12-6
12.6	File Type Table	12-6

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Table of Contents

12.7	Keycode Table	12-8
12.8	Language Tables	12-9
12.8.1	MAINT and XROM01	12-10
12.8.2	Message Table	12-10
12.8.3	Lexical Type Table	12-10
12.8.4	FG Table	12-11
12.9	LEX Entry Buffer	12-12
12.9.1	Search Order of LEX Files	12-12
12.9.2	Usage	12-13
12.10	Startup and Immediate Execute Key Buffers	12-13
12.11	Statistic Buffer	12-13
12.12	System Flags	12-13
12.12.1	Display Format Information	12-14
12.13	Traps	12-14
13	INTERNAL DATA REPRESENTATION	
13.1	Data Types	13-1
13.2	Registers	13-1
13.2.1	Numbers in CPU Registers	13-1
13.2.2	Strings in CPU Registers	13-3
13.3	Variables	13-3
13.3.1	Variable Chains	13-3
13.3.2	Variable Internal Representation	13-5
13.3.2.1	Scalar Numeric Variables	13-5
13.3.2.2	Numeric Arrays	13-6
13.3.2.3	Statistical (STAT) Array	13-9
13.3.2.4	String Variables	13-10
13.3.3	Indirect Variables	13-12
13.3.4	Accessing Variables from Binary Programs	13-13
13.3.4.1	Finding the Address of a Variable	13-13
13.3.4.2	Recalling a Variable	13-13
13.3.4.3	Storing into a Variable	13-13
13.3.4.4	Creating Variables and Arrays	13-14
13.3.4.5	Destroying Variables and Arrays	13-14
13.4	Mathematical Operands	13-15
13.4.1	Packed Representation (12-form)	13-15
13.4.1.1	Normal Values	13-15
13.4.1.2	Extended Values	13-16
13.4.2	Unpacked representation (15-form)	13-17
14	NUMERIC COMPUTATION ALGORITHMS	
14.1	Standard Math Inputs and Outputs	14-1
14.2	Statistical Algorithms	14-2
14.2.1	Summary Statistics	14-2
14.2.1.1	ADD operator	14-4
14.2.1.2	DROP Operator	14-5
14.2.2	Simple Linear Regression	14-5
15	CLOCK SYSTEM	
15.1	Theory of Operation	15-1
15.1.1	Clock System Hardware	15-1

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Table of Contents

15.1.2	Clock System Software	15-1
15.2	Software Timebase Correction	15-2
15.3	Format of Time Information	15-2
15.4	Scheduling External Alarms	15-3
15.4.1	Scheduling Code	15-3
15.4.2	Priority of External Alarms	15-3
15.4.3	When Alarms Come Due	15-4
15.5	Developing Clock System Applications	15-4
15.5.1	Taking Control	15-4
15.5.2	Insuring That the Alarm is Processed	15-5
15.5.3	Disrupting the Mainframe	15-5
15.5.4	Maintaining Your Own Alarm List	15-5
15.6	Clock System Ram Usage	15-6
16	HP-71 ASSEMBLER INSTRUCTION SET	
16.1	CPU Overview	16-1
16.1.1	Working and Scratch Registers	16-1
16.1.1.1	Field Selection	16-2
16.1.2	Pointer Registers	16-3
16.1.3	Input, Output, and Program Counter Registers	16-4
16.1.4	Carry and Status Bits	16-4
16.1.5	Loading Data from Memory	16-5
16.1.6	Storing Data in Memory	16-6
16.2	Instruction Syntax	16-6
16.2.1	Labels and Symbols	16-6
16.2.2	Comments	16-7
16.2.3	Expressions	16-7
16.2.4	Sample Line Image	16-8
16.3	Explanation of Symbols	16-8
16.3.1	Field Select Table	16-10
16.4	Instruction Set Overview	16-11
16.4.1	GOTO Instructions	16-11
16.4.2	GOSUB Instructions	16-11
16.4.3	Subroutine Returns	16-11
16.4.4	Test Instructions	16-12
16.4.4.1	Register Tests	16-12
16.4.4.2	P Pointer Tests	16-12
16.4.4.3	Hardware Status Bit Tests	16-12
16.4.4.4	Program Status Bit Tests	16-12
16.4.5	P Pointer Instructions	16-13
16.4.6	Status Instructions	16-13
16.4.6.1	Program Status	16-13
16.4.6.2	Hardware Status	16-13
16.4.7	System Control	16-14
16.4.8	Keyscan Instructions	16-14
16.4.9	Register Swaps	16-14
16.4.10	Data Pointer Manipulation	16-14
16.4.11	Data Transfer	16-15
16.4.12	Load Constants	16-16
16.4.13	Shift Instructions	16-16
16.4.14	Logical Operations	16-16

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Table of Contents

16.4.15	Arithmetics	16-16
16.4.15.1	General Usage	16-17
16.4.15.2	Restricted Usage	16-17
16.4.16	No-Op Instructions	16-17
16.4.17	Pseudo-Ops	16-17
16.4.17.1	Data Storage Allocation	16-17
16.4.17.2	Conditional Assembly	16-18
16.4.17.3	Listing Formatting	16-18
16.4.17.4	Symbol Definition	16-18
16.4.17.5	Assembly Mode	16-18
16.5	Mnemonic Dictionary	16-18
17	HP-71 CODE EXAMPLES	
17.1	Machine Code Packing Techniques	17-1
17.2	Mainframe File Type Table	17-2
17.3	LEX File Implementing Statements and Functions	17-3
17.4	LEX File Showing Use of Speed Table	17-62
17.5	Foreign Language Translation of Messages	17-66
17.5.1	One-shot Mainframe Translator	17-66
17.5.2	One-shot HPIL Translator	17-93
17.5.3	Selectable Translator	17-105
18	HP-71 RESOURCE ALLOCATION	
18.1	Device Types, Classes and Codes	18-1
18.1.1	Device Types	18-2
18.1.2	Device Class	18-2
18.1.3	Device Codes	18-2
18.2	File Types	18-3
18.3	Special Physical Key Code Allocations	18-3
18.4	LEX IDs	18-4
18.4.1	LEX ID 52 Hex - First User's Library ID	18-6
18.4.2	LEX ID 53 Hex - Second User's Library ID	18-6
18.5	Poll Process Number Allocations	18-7
18.6	Reserved RAM Allocations	18-9
18.7	System Buffer ID Allocations	18-9
18.8	GOSUB Stack Item Type Allocations (RETURN Types)	18-10
18.9	System Flag Allocations	18-10
A	GLOSSARY	

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

OVERVIEW	CHAPTER 1
----------	-----------

The HP-71 is an advanced portable BASIC handheld computer with built-in calculator capabilities. The proprietary CPU, which has a 512KB address space, is optimized for high-precision BCD math and very low power consumption. The proprietary 64KB BASIC operating system automatically incorporates plug-in software and memory modules, allows optional device interfaces such as HPIL or card, maintains a memory file system that may contain an arbitrary number of files, and has been designed so that independent software vendors may conveniently extend or customize the functionality of the machine. HP-71 software may be programmed in BASIC, FORTH, or assembly language.

The internal design of the HP-71 operating system is documented in three volumes, of which this is the first:

- * HP-71 Software Internal Design Specification
 - Volume I: Detailed Design Description
 - Volume II: Entry Point and Poll Interfaces
 - Volume III: Operating System Source Listings

A brief overview of these three volumes, which are known collectively as the HP-71 Software IDS, is given below. Related documents which may also be of interest are:

- * HP-71 Hardware Specification
- * HP-71 HP-IL Module Internal Design Specification
 - Volume I: Detailed Design and Entry Point Description
 - Volume II: Source Listings
- * HP-71 FORTH/Assembler ROM Owner's Manual

For information on how to order any of these documents, please contact Systems Engineering Support in the HP Portable Computer Division Product Support Group at (503) 757-2000.

1.1 Structure of the HP-71 Software IDS

This three-volume document discusses the internal design of the HP-71 Operating System in sufficient detail to allow applications software programmed in BASIC, FORTH or assembly language to use the

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Overview

various resources of the Operating System.

1.1.1 Volume I: Detailed Design Description

This volume, which you are currently reading, documents the operating system memory structure, table formats, configuration, operation, interrupt handling, BASIC tokenization, file system, numerical algorithms, and the interfaces to Language Extension (LEX) files. A summary of important system utilities is also provided. Here is a brief description of the remaining chapters in this volume:

Chapter 2 - System Startup and Memory Configuration

This chapter describes how the HP-71 configures memory at power on, memory reset, or after FREE PORT or CLAIM PORT commands.

Chapter 3 - Memory Structure

This chapter describes how memory is initialized after startup configuration. The meanings of various system pointers and locations in system RAM are also discussed, along with certain memory data structures such as system buffers and the various system stacks.

Chapter 4 - System Control

The master control loop (Main Loop) of the operating system is described in this chapter, as well as the system's handling of interrupts.

Chapter 5 - The BASIC Interpreter

An overview of the structure and operation of the HP-71 BASIC Interpreter is provided in this chapter.

Chapter 6 - Language Extension and Binary Files

This chapter describes the structure and use of LEX and BIN file types. Polling of LEX files by the operating system is also covered.

8

Chapter 7 - BASIC File Considerations

This chapter discusses specifics of BASIC file applications software.

7

Chapter 8 - Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Overview

This chapter describes the procedures for writing code to support LEX file keywords. Keywords have routines to tokenize (parse) them, list (decompile) them, and to execute them. This chapter also gives a detailed description of the BASIC language tokenization used by the HP-71 BASIC Interpreter.

Chapter 9 - Utilities

This chapter summarizes various groups of operating system entry points which applications software may call to perform system operations.

Chapter 10 - Message Handling

This chapter describes how the HP-71 issues error and warning messages, and how LEX files may interface with this process.

Chapter 11 - File System

This chapter describes the HP-71 file system structure and the various file types which the HP-71 supports.

Chapter 12 - Table Formats

This chapter describes the format of various operating system data structures, such as file information buffers, alternative character set buffers, file type tables, and so forth.

Chapter 13 - Internal Data Representation

This chapter describes how data and operands are internally represented in registers, variables, and arrays.

Chapter 14 - Numeric Computation Algorithms

This chapter describes the overall algorithms and procedures used by the HP-71 in mathematical statistical calculations.

Chapter 15 - Clock System

This chapter describes the internal workings of the HP-71 clock system and related considerations for developing clock system applications software.

Chapter 16 - HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

This chapter describes the HP-71 assembler instruction set and gives the instruction opcodes and execution cycle times.

Chapter 17 - HP-71 Code Examples

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Overview

This chapter gives examples of how to perform various operations in HP-71 machine language.

Chapter 18 - HP-71 Resource Allocation

This chapter lists the current allocations of HP-71 Operating System resources such as system buffer ID's, LEX file ID's, poll process numbers, file types, reserved RAM, and so forth. It also describes the procedures by which additional resources may be allocated.

1.1.2 Volume II: Entry Point and Poll Interfaces

This volume documents the entry and exit conditions of the 25 categories of supported system entry points that are available to the assembly language programmer, as well as the interfaces to operating system polls of LEX files. Supported entry point categories include keyboard and display interface utilities, math, parse, decompile, and file utilities, and so forth. An index of entry point names and global symbol values is also included.

HP-71 SUPPORTED ENTRY POINT CATEGORIES

-
1. Address Calculation Utilities
 2. I/O Buffer Utilities
 3. System Configuration Utilities
 4. Conversion Utilities
 5. Display Utilities
 6. Decompile Utilities
 7. Execute Utilities
 8. File Utilities
 9. Function Execute Utilities
 10. General Purpose Utilities
 11. Keyboard Utilities
 12. System Math Functions
 13. Math Stack Utilities
 14. System Level Math Utilities
 15. Parse Utilities
 16. Poll Interface Descriptions
 17. Pointer Utilities
 18. Save Stack Utilities
 19. Save Utilities
 20. Statement Decompile Utilities
 21. Statement Execute Utilities
 22. Statement Parse Utilities
 23. System Level Major Entry Points
 24. Time And Date Utilities
 25. Variable Management Utilities

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Overview

1.1.3 Volume III: Operating System Source Listings

This hefty volume contains the full assembly listings of the 76 modules which comprise the HP-71 operating system. All parts of the operating system are listed, including the mainframe token table, BASIC interpreter, math routines, and supported entry points. The supported entry point interface documentation in Volume II is programmatically extracted, categorized, and indexed from comment blocks in these source modules. Therefore Volume II information reappears in scattered form throughout Volume III.

1.2 Operating System Overview

The HP-71 contains a 64KB operating system kernel which resides at address 0. The kernel performs various control functions, and contains the BASIC interpreter. An internal clock system supports time-dependent applications. External software may be added to the machine in the form of files which are interpreted or executed directly by the kernel. These files may be directly added to the computer through plug-in memory modules, or copied into the computer from external media such as magnetic cards or tape.

There are three types of software files which can be interpreted or executed by the HP-71 standard configuration: BASIC, BIN (Binary), and LEX (Language Extension). A FORTH file type may also be invoked when the HP-71 FORTH/Assembler ROM is present in the machine.

BASIC files may be developed on the HP-71 using the built-in BASIC interpreter. BIN, LEX, and FORTH files may be developed on the HP-71 using the FORTH/Assembler ROM.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Overview

Type	Format	Method of Invocation	Mode of Execution
BASIC	Tokenized BASIC statements	RUN, CHAIN, or CALL command	Interpretation
BIN	Machine language (binary)	RUN, CHAIN, or CALL command	Direct execution
LEX	Language extension file; adds BASIC keywords, messages, and functional extensions; written in machine language	Through its added BASIC keywords and by polls from operating system	Direct execution
FORTH	FORTH vocabulary	Through FORTH interpreter	Threaded Interpretation

A BASIC or BIN file can be executed as a program or as a subprogram. However, the great flexibility of the HP-71 operating system is due to the manner in which it automatically incorporates LEX files into the operation of the machine.

A LEX file may contain a BASIC keyword token table which is similar in format to the built-in token tables used by the HP-71 BASIC interpreter. Whenever a LEX file is added to the machine, it is automatically "registered" with the operating system. The BASIC command interpreter then references the LEX file's keywords during lexical analysis, making them automatically a part of the HP-71 command language available to the computer's user.

In addition, a LEX file may contain a message table in order to add its own error/warning messages to the machine, or to override the built-in HP-71 error messages for foreign language localization. (An example of such a LEX file is given in the "HP-71 Code Examples" chapter)

Furthermore, the operating system contains outward hooks, called "polls", by which a LEX file may intercept the operation of the machine at a strategic point to extend or customize that operation. At over 80 points in the operating system code when the system is prepared to perform a special task, such as parsing a device name or terminating execution of a program, it "polls" each LEX file present in the machine to find if one wishes to intercept the task.

The polling mechanism is as follows. The operating system jumps to the LEX file's poll handling code, passing a unique code called a "poll process number" that identifies the task to be done. The LEX file may choose to intercede by honoring the documented interface for that poll process number. In this way very sophisticated and

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Overview

detailed customization of the machine's functionality is possible. Polling is described in detail below. The individual poll interfaces are described in Volume II of this document.

Since there is no logical separation of address space between an application program and the HP-71 operating system, a code in a BIN or LEX file may directly access certain system entry points to perform operations ranging from BCD math to file I/O. Over 1700 such entry points are supported by the HP-71 in such a manner that the absolute addresses of these entry points will remain fixed throughout subsequent releases of the operating system ROMs. The interfaces to these entry points are described in Volume II of this document.

1.2.1 Memory Layout

The general layout of the HP-71 physical address space is shown below. Sections marked with an asterisk indicate RAM areas which may be used by applications software for data storage according to the procedures described in this document.

+-----+
Operating System
+-----+
Memory-Mapped I/O
and Display RAM
+-----+
System RAM
+-----+
*Reserved RAM
+-----+
*MAIN File Chain
+-----+
*System Buffers
+-----+
Command Stack
+-----+
CALC Mode Buffers
+-----+
*Available Memory
+-----+
*Environment Stacks
+-----+
Independent RAM,
ROM Modules
+-----+

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Overview

1.2.2 File System

The HP-71 has a memory-based file system which has no central directory. The main file system is a chain of files, each with its own identifying file header, in Main RAM.

In general, a plug-in ROM module contains its own file chain in the same format as the main file chain. Similarly, a plug-in RAM module can be maintained as an Independent RAM (IRAM) with its own file chain, or it can be pooled with the Main RAM. The operating system's file operations automatically incorporate all file chains present in memory.

1.3 CPU Overview

The HP-71 CPU is a proprietary CPU optimized for high-accuracy BCD math and low power consumption. The data path is 4 bits wide. Memory is accessed in 4-bit quantities called "nibbles" or "nibs". Addresses are 20 bits, yielding a physical address space of 512K bytes.

There are four working 64-bit registers, five scratch 64-bit registers, two 20-bit data pointer registers, one 4-bit pointer register, a 20-bit program counter, a 16-bit input register, and a 12-bit output register. Return addresses are stored on an eight-level hardware return stack that accepts 20-bit addresses. In addition, there are 4 hardware status bits, a carry bit, and 16 program status bits. The lower 12 program status bits can be manipulated as a 12-bit register.

For a more detailed overview of the HP-71 CPU, please see the "HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set" chapter.

1.3.1 Registers

The working registers are used for data manipulation. Registers A and C are also used for memory access. The scratch registers are used to temporarily hold the contents of working registers.

In addition, the lower 20 bits of R4 are used during interrupt processing and therefore are not normally available for data storage.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Overview

WORKING REGISTERS		SCRATCH REGISTERS	
Name	Size	Name	Size
A	64 bits	R0	64 bits
B	64 bits	R1	64 bits
C	64 bits	R2	64 bits
D	64 bits	R3	64 bits
		R4	64 bits*

* Note: the lower 20 bits of R4 are modified
whenever an interrupt occurs, and are
generally unavailable for storage

1.3.1.1 Field Selection

Subfields of the working registers may be manipulated by the use of field selection. The possible field selections range from the entire register to any single nibble of the register. Certain subfields are designed for use in BCD calculations. Others are used for data access or general data manipulation. See the "HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set" chapter for a description of the selectable fields.

1.3.2 Pointer Registers

The Data Pointer registers, D0 and D1, are used to contain addresses during memory access, and are used in conjunction with the working registers.

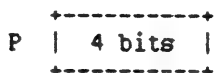
The P Pointer register is used in Field Selection operations with the working registers.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Overview

DATA POINTER REGISTERS



P POINTER REGISTER



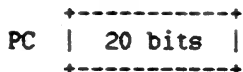
1.3.3 Input, Output, and Program Counter Registers

The input/output registers are used to communicate with the HP-71 bus. The program counter points to the next instruction to be executed by the CPU.

INPUT AND OUTPUT REGISTERS



PROGRAM COUNTER REGISTER



1.3.4 Status and Carry Bits

The operating system uses 4 of the program status bits to indicate the state of the operating system. The remaining 12 program status bits are generally available to applications software.

CARRY: 1 bit

PROGRAM STATUS: 16 bits (lower 12 act as the ST register)

HARDWARE STATUS: 4 bits

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Overview

1.4 HP Support For HP-71 Software Development

HP encourages independent software vendors to develop software for the HP-71. There are a number of system resources, such as unique LEX file ID numbers and system buffer numbers, which may need to be allocated to a particular vendor's software. The procedures for allocating these resources is described in the "HP-71 Resource Allocations" chapter.

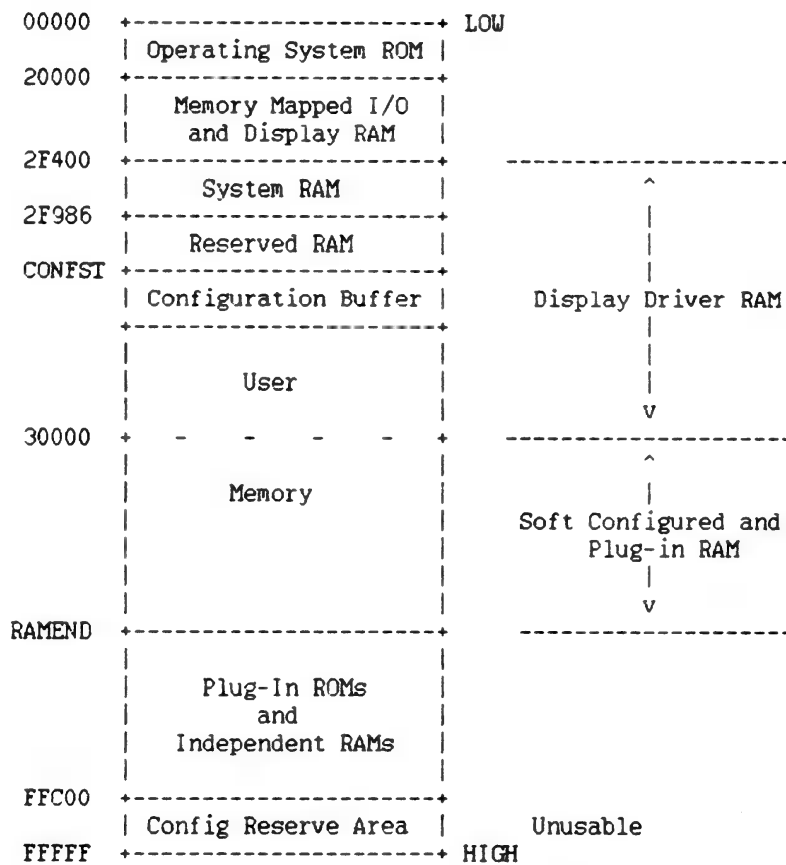
Any requests for further information should be directed to Systems Engineering Support in the HP Portable Computer Division Product Support Group at (503) 757-2000.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

System Startup and Memory Configuration

SYSTEM STARTUP AND MEMORY CONFIGURATION	CHAPTER 2
---	-----------

2.1 System Configuration Overview Including RAM and ROM



For a further breakdown of User Memory, see the "Memory Structure" chapter.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

System Startup and Memory Configuration

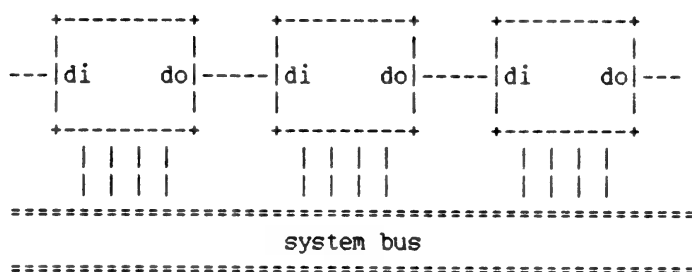
2.2 Entering Deep Sleep

When the computer is turned off, the state of the machine is preserved. All variables, pointers and stacks are preserved. A system configuration is performed upon wakeup from deep sleep.

2.3 Startup/Configuration Sequence

System configuration is performed at coldstart, power-on, and FREE and CLAIM execution. Performing configuration consists of determining what chips are resident on the system bus and assigning an address to each chip. While all chips are on the bus "in parallel", an electrical scheme known as "daisy chaining" determines an order in which the chips are found by the CPU when it is performing configuration.

In a daisy chain, each chip has two special lines: daisy-in (DI) and daisy-out (DO). By creating a chain in which daisy-out of one chip is connected to daisy-in of the next chip, you establish an order. Daisy-in to the first chip is (in most cases) a software-switchable electrical line from the CPU (the one exception is port #0, the internal daisy chain, in which daisy-in to the first chip is wired high).



When a chip is unconfigured, it does not occupy address space and its daisy-out is held low. If its daisy-in is low, it will not respond to any CPU instructions. If its daisy-in is high, it will respond to two instructions: C=ID, which returns the chip ID to the CPU (see CHIP ID, below), and CONFIG, which assigns an address to the chip and configures it.

When a chip is configured, it does occupy address space and its daisy-out equals its daisy-in. In this state, the chip will NOT respond to C=ID and CONFIG. So once a chip has been configured, the next chip on the daisy chain is able to identify itself and be

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Startup and Memory Configuration

configured.

The configuration routine examines the daisy chains corresponding to ports #0 through #5 (see PORT#, below) and configures each chip on each daisy chain. A plug-in device may contain more than one chip and may even contain chips of different types (e.g., ROMs and RAMs). The routine builds lists in the configuration buffer area identifying what is plugged in and where it is configured.

2.4 Configuration Routine -- DETAIL

The configuration code assigns addresses to all soft-configurable devices on the system Bus. The code builds three tables in the configuration buffers: system RAM, other memory (ROM, EEPROM, independent RAM, etc.), memory-mapped I/O. The one-byte configuration buffer IDs for the above configuration tables are, respectively, FF, FE, FD. The exact format of the information in the tables is explained in "Table Formats" chapter.

Following is the pre-configuration memory layout:

```
00000-1FFFF: Operating system
2C000-2C01F: Card reader
2E100-2E3FF: Display RAM
2F400-2FFFF: Display Driver RAM
(FFC00-FFFFF: Reserved for configuration garbage dump)
```

Addresses are assigned to devices as follows:

Memory-mapped I/O is configured in the space 20000-2C000.

System RAM is configured contiguously upward from 30000.

To achieve this contiguous mapping, system RAM is configured in reverse size order. That is, the largest RAM chips are configured first, then successively smaller chips. This assures that 64 Kbib RAMs are configured on 64 Kbib boundaries, 32 Kbib RAMs on 32 Kbib boundaries, etc.

Other memory (ROM, independent RAM, EEPROM, etc.) is put in the space between the end of RAM and FFC00.

The scheme of where each memory device is configured is fairly complex. The configuration code assures that memory devices are configured on legal boundaries and that consecutive chips within a single plug-in are configured contiguously in the order in which they are encountered on the daisy chain. A bit within the chip ID (explained below) is used to identify the physical boundaries of the plug-in memory.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description System Startup and Memory Configuration

To explain configuration, the following terms are used below:

PORT#: Physical port location (1-5) whose daisy chain is addressed by a bit (0-4) in output register. Port #0 is the internal daisy chain; it includes all built-in devices and the HPIL port. Ports #1-4 are the ports in the front of the machine (#1 is the leftmost port, etc.). Port #5 is the card reader slot.

DEV#: Position of a plug-in (0-15) in a daisy chain. Unless there is a port extender, all plug-ins will be device #0.

SEQUENCE: Consecutive chips in a module to be used as a single entity (e.g., a quad RAM which appears as one plug-in to the user).

DEVICE TYPE: Type of memory (RAM, ROM, etc., or memory-mapped I/O).

DEVICE CLASS: Identifies exact type of memory-mapped I/O device.

2.4.1 CHIP ID

The CHIP ID is a (usually) mask-programmed 20-bit identifier which is read by the CPU on an ID poll (C=ID instruction). A chip responds to the ID poll if two conditions are met:

- 1) The chip is unconfigured,
- 2) Daisy-in is high on the chip.

By examining the daisy chains one at a time and configuring each chip as it is found, the software can locate and identify all soft-configurable chips on the bus.

The chip-id contains the following information:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Startup and Memory Configuration

NIBBLE 0: 15-Log2(size).

Memory Size	Nib 0	MM I/O space
1 knob	F	1 word (16 nibs)
2	E	2
4	D	4
8	C	8
16	B	16
32	A	32
64 (max RAM)	9	64
128	8	128
256 (max memory)	7	256
	6	512
	5	1024

NIBBLE 1: (Reserved for future use)

This nibble from the first chip in a sequence is stored in the configuration table for all sequences.

NIBBLE 2: Device type:

- 0: RAM
- 1: ROM (includes EPROM, which cannot be written to)
- 2: EEPROM
- 3-6: (unassigned)
- 7-E: Unusable due to COPY command requirements
- F: Memory-mapped I/O

NIBBLE 3: For memory:
(Not used)

For memory-mapped I/O, contains device class:

- 0: HPIL mailbox
- 1-15: (Unassigned)

(Note: Card reader is hard configured at 2C000-2C01F)

NIBBLE 4:

bits 0-1: (unassigned)

bit 2: Last chip in sequence (see note (*) below). Always assumed high for MM I/O devices, meaning all such devices have their own entry in the Memory-mapped I/O

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Startup and Memory Configuration

table.

bit 3: Last chip in module. On a ROM, in general, this bit, like the rest of the ID, is mask-programmed. On RAMs, this chip is typically pad-programmed so the same parts can be used for all chips in a multi-chip RAM module.

The top two bits (bits 2-3 of nibble 4) are used to determine what chips are in what physical plug-ins. Every sequence of chips (e.g., four identical RAMs in a RAM plug-in, an applications pack containing two ROMs, etc.) results in one entry in the configuration tables.

(*) End of sequence (but not module) is identified in one of two ways: 1) next chip returns ID with different value in nibs 0-3, or 2) last chip of sequence has bit 18 set. The second approach is necessary if consecutive, identical chips are to be considered as different sequences, and will probably NEVER be used in the entire lifetime of the machine. But it can be done.

2.4.1.1 Examples

A module containing four 8-Kbit RAMS might return the following sequence of IDs:

0000E 0000E 0000E 8000E

The resulting table entry would identify the chip size, chip count, device type, physical location, and configuration address of the device.

A module containing two 128-Kbit ROMS, a memory-mapped I/O interface using 2 words of address space, and four 16-Kbit RAMS might present the following sequence of IDs:

0010A First ROM	\	one ROM table entry
0010A End of ROM sequence	/	
01F0E MM I/O devclass 1	-	one MM I/O table entry
0000D Start of RAMS	\	
0000D		one RAM table entry
0000D		
8000D End of module	/	

Restrictions: 16 chips/sequence
16 sequences/device
16 devices/port

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Startup and Memory Configuration

2.5 Configuration Buffer Format

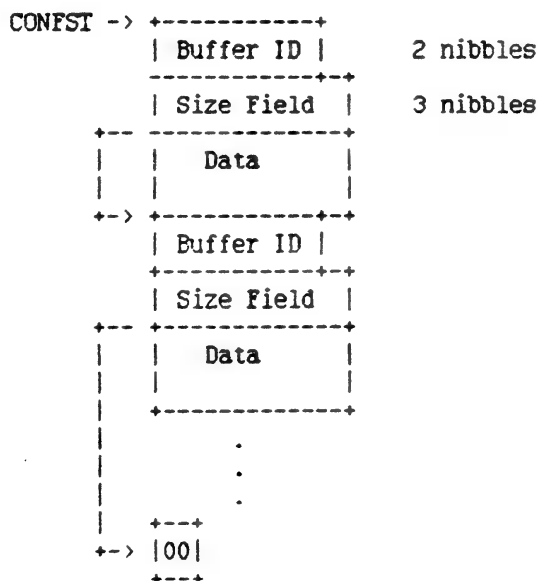
Configuration buffers contain a list of what devices are configured where. The buffers are treated and maintained similarly to system buffers (see chapter on

- 1) Their ID's are only two nibbles long, and
- 2) They exist before program memory, while system buffers exist after program memory. This insures that these tables will reside in built-in display driver RAM, rather than some memory which may be removed.

The configuration buffer area is the beginning of non-fixed memory. That is, while its starting location is fixed (first buffer starts at address CONFST), its ending location is not. Configuration buffers are maintained as a linked list whose end is identified with a zero byte. Each buffer has a 5-nibble header consisting of:

Buffer ID	First 2 nibbles
Size field	3 nibbles

This is the size of the data field only.



The header is followed by the data field whose size has been specified in the size field above. Immediately following the data field is either the next buffer ID or a zero-byte identifying the

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description System Startup and Memory Configuration

end of the buffer chain.

The contents of the buffers are discussed in the "Configuration Buffer" section in the "Memory Structure" chapter.

2.6 Special Role of High Two Pages in Memory

Provision has been made for allowing devices to be hard-configured in address space without fear that the configuration code will soft-configure something over them. At configuration time, the code examines addresses E0000-E000F. If any of those eight bytes is non-zero, the configuration code will NOT configure anything at or above address E0000. So if a hard-configured device resides there, the space from E0000-FFFFF is reserved and is not available for soft-configured devices. The only time that space may be used is DURING the execution of the configuration code, when it may be needed temporarily for "garbage dump".

2.6.1 Producing a Hard-Configured ROM at E0000

In certain cases it is desirable to produce a ROM which is configured to a fixed location in the HP-71 address space. Hard-configuration is a mask-programmed option which is selected at mask-generation time for the ROM chip. This is because some applications simply cannot be soft-configured. For example, the Debugger ROM must be hard-configured so it will be immune to the configuration code.

Any application which must be hard-configured should either reside at E0000 or reside above E0000 and have something else plugged in which resides at E0000. The presence of some device at E0000 is necessary to insure that the space above E0000 will not be configured over.

2.6.2 Dangers of Hard-Configuring ROMS

There are certain disadvantages to hard-configuring a ROM or other device.

2.6.2.1 Bus Contention

Two devices hard-configured to the same address cannot be plugged in at the same time. Otherwise they will both respond to a READ request at the same time, each contending for use of the bus. This may be electrically harmful to the computer. It will certainly produce useless data, since the results from a bus-contention situation cannot be predicted.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description System Startup and Memory Configuration

2.6.2.2 Invisible Plug-ins

Aside from noticing that a hard-configured device is there, the operating system will not do anything with the device. Because the device is not soft-configured and therefore has no ID, the operating system has no way of knowing what type of device it is, its size, etc. Its address and its existence will not be recorded in any tables. To use it, there must be some LEXfile around (in a soft-configured device or in main memory) which expects it to be around and knows how to use it.

If, for example, an alternate operating system is written and resides in a ROM hard-configured to E0000, there must also be some LEXfile around which will provide the keyword to give control to that operating system.

2.7 Location of Future System ROMs.

Two possible schemes may be used if the operating system needs to be expanded.

2.7.1 Soft-Configured ROM

Operating system enhancements might be contained in a soft-configured ROM, possibly in a LEXfile. This method would be appropriate for many conceivable enhancements. The disadvantages are that the hard-configured part of the operating system would have to expend some effort to locate the soft-configured part, and there is no guarantee that the soft-configured part will be configured if many devices are plugged in.

2.7.2 Fifth ROM at F8000.

The address space from F8000 to FFFFF might be used to contain a fifth operating system ROM. This would make it unavailable to hard-configured ROMs at E0000 and would require some change to the configuration code. This space is temporarily used during configuration as a "garbage dump" area, but nothing is left configured in the garbage dump area after configuration is done. This means that the configuration code itself certainly could not reside in this fifth ROM.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Startup and Memory Configuration

2.8 Configuration "Garbage Dump"

A definition for a term used in this section: Garbage Dump. During the execution of the configuration code, some plug-ins may be found for which there is no room to configure. Because of the operation of the daisy-chain (a device must be configured before the following device can be configured), it is sometimes necessary to configure such a device "out of the way" so devices after it on the daisy chain can be configured. Such "garbage" devices are configured to end at FFFFF, and to start at whatever location ends them at FFFFF. In other words, a "garbage" 16-kByte ROM would be temporarily configured at F8000. All such devices are unconfigured before the termination of the configuration code. This is referred to throughout this section as "Garbage Dump."

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

MEMORY STRUCTURE	CHAPTER 3
------------------	-----------

3.1 Operating System ROM

The operating system is contained in four 16K-byte ROMs hard-configured in the address range 00000-1FFFF. Volume III of this document provides a source code listing of all the operating system modules that fill this address space.

3.2 Memory Mapped I/O and Display RAM

Addr	Name	Memory Size	Comment
	*		
	* * *		Display driver addresses
	*		
2E100	ANNAD1	1	Annunciator column 1
2E101	ANN1.5	1	
2E102	ANNAD2	2	Annunciator column 2
2E104	DD3ST	#2E160-*	Start of display driver 3
2E160	DD3END	#2E1F8-*	End of display driver 3
2E1F8	TIMER3	#2E1FF-*	Timer 3
2E1FF	DD3CTL	1	Display driver 3 control nib
2E200	DD2ST	#2E260-*	Start of display drive
2E260	DD2END	#2E2F8-*	End of display driver 2
2E2F8	TIMER2	#2E2FF-*	Timer 2
2E2FF	DD2CTL	1	Display driver 2 control nib
2E300	DD1ST	#2E34C-*	Start of display driver
2E34C	DD1END		End of display driver 1
2E34C	ANNAD3	2	Annunciator column 3
2E34E	ANNAD4	2	Annunciator column 4
2E350	ROWDVR	#2E3F8-*	Row Drivers
2E3F8	TIMER1	#2E3FE-*	Timer 1
2E3FE	DCONTR	#2E3FF-*	Display contrast nibble
2E3FF	DD1CTL	#2F400-*	Display driver 1 control nib

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

3.2.1 Display Driver Addresses

The HP-71 display contains two columns of annunciators on the left followed by 132 columns of dots and two more columns of annunciators.

The columns are addressed as follows:

```
*****  
****      SLAVE DISPLAY DRIVER II      ****  
*****
```

Leftmost column of annunciators

```
ANNAD1 (2E100)      -- Bits 0-2 not connected  
                   <--- -- Bit 3  
ANN1.5 (2E101)      AC  -- Bit 4  
                   USER -- Bit 5  
                   RAD  -- Bit 6  
                   -- Bit 7 not connected
```

Adjacent column of annunciators

```
ANNAD2 (2E102)      -- Bits 0-1 not connected  
                   f -- Bit 2  
                   g -- Bit 3  
                   BAI -- Bit 4  
                   -- Bits 5-7 not connected
```

```
DD3ST (2E104) Columns 0-45 (46 Columns)  
DD3END (2E15F)
```

```
TIMER3 (2E1F8) Timer (least sig. nib (LSB) at lowest address)  
              (6 nibbles)
```

```
DD3CTL (2E1FF) Status Nibble:  
                   WRITE      READ  
                   LSB 0 -- RAM  RAM  
                   1 -- RAM  RAM  
                   2 --  
                   MSB 3 -- Enable Timer
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

**** SLAVE DISPLAY DRIVER I ****

DD2ST (2E200) Columns 46-93 (48 Columns)
DD2END (2E260)

TIMER2 (2E2F8) Timer (least sig. nib at lowest address)
(6 nibbles)

DD2CTL (2E2FF) Status Nibble:
 WRITE READ
 LSB 0 -- RAM RAM
 1 -- RAM RAM
 2 --
 MSB 3 -- Enable Timer

**** MASTER DISPLAY DRIVER ****

DD1ST (2E300) Columns 94-131 (38 Columns)
DD1END (2E34C)

ANNAD3 (2E34C) Right column of annunciators
 -- Bits 0-2 not connected
 0 -- Bit 3
 1 -- Bit 4
 2 -- Bit 5
 3 -- Bit 6
 4 -- Bit 7

ANNAD4 (2E34E) Rightmost column of annunciators
 -- Bits 0-2 not connected
 ((*)) -- Bit 3
 ---> -- Bit 4
 PRGM -- Bit 5
 SUSP -- Bit 6
 CALC -- Bit 7

ROWDVR (2E350) Row Lines (16 Nibbles). Should be set
by software as follows: 8001400220041008

TIMER1 (2E3F8) Timer (least sig. nib at lowest address)
(6 nibbles)

DD1CTL (2E3FF) Display Control Nibble:
 WRITE READ
 LSB 0 -- Display On Same
 1 -- Display Blink Same

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

2 -- Display Test Very Low Bat
MSB 3 -- Enable Timer Low Bat

3.3 System RAM

Addr	Name	Memory Size	Comment

	*		
	* * *	Start of interrupt RAM	
	*		
2F400	INTR4	16	(R4 and D0)
2F410	INTA	16	(A reg)
2F420	INTB	16	(B reg)
2F430	INTM	8	(Misc stuff)
	*		
	*	INTM is mode-Pointer-Carry-Return stack	
	*		
	* * *	End of interrupt RAM	
	*		
	CMOSTV EQU	#168F	Value for CMOS test word
2F438	CMOSTW	4	CMOS test word
2F43C	VECTOR	5	Interrupt vector
2F441	ATNDIS	1	Attention disable flag
2F442	OFFFLG		
2F442	ATNFLG	1	Attention key hit flag
2F443	KEYPTR	1	Key buffer pointer
2F444	KEYBUF	15*2	Key buffer
2F462	KEYSAV		(LSB = Bottom Row)
2F462	KCOLD	1	14th column keymap
2F463	KCOLC	1	13th
2F464	KCOLB	1	12th
2F465	KCOLA	1	11th
2F466	KCOL9	1	10th
2F467	KCOL8	1	9th
2F468	KCOL7	1	8th
2F469	KCOL6	1	7th
2F46A	KCOL5	1	6th
2F46B	KCOL4	1	5th
2F46C	KCOL3	1	4th
2F46D	KCOL2	1	3rd
2F46E	KCOL1	1	2nd
2F46F	KCOL0	1	1st
2F470	DISINT	1	Interrupt ignore flag used in keyscan
	*		
	* Pseudo-device Display Driver Memory		

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

*			
2F471	WINDST	2	Window start
2F473	WINDLN	2	Window len
2F475	DSPSTA	6	User status save, Dsp status
2F47B	ESCSTA	1	Escape status
2F47C	FIRSTC	2	Buffer position of 1st char
2F47E	CURSOR	2	Buffer position of cur
2F480	DSPBFS	2*96	96 char buffer (2 nibs/char)
2F540	DSPBFE		
2F540	DSPMSK	96/4	96 bits (4 bits/nib)
*			
* System Pointer Allocations			
*			
2F558	MAINST	5	Main Program Memory Start
2F55D	UPD1ST		Start of Update Addresses #1
2F55D	CURRST	5	Current File Start
2F562	PRGMST	5	Current Program Start
2F567	PRGMEN	5	Current Program End
2F56C	CURREN	5	Current File End
2F571	IOBEST		Start of System buffers
2F571	MAINEN	5	Main Program Memory End
2F576	IOBFEN		End of System buffers
2F576	CLCBFR	5	Calc Mode Pointers
2F57B	RENBFR	5	
2F580	RAWBFR	5	
2F585	CLCSTK	5	Calc Stack token stream start
*			
* SYSEN,OUTBS,AVMEMS collapsed			
* here at end of CALC mode			
2F58A	SYSEN	5	End of RAM used by System
*			
* OUTBS and AVMEMS collapsed			
* here at end of Parse,			
* Decompile,TRANSFORM			
2F58F	OUTBS	5	Output Buffer Start
*			
* Output Start for Parse/Decomp			
2F594	AVMEMS	5	Available Memory Start
2F599	UPD1EN		End of Update Addresses #1
*			
2F599	TASTK		
2F599	MTHSTK		Arithmetic Stack
2F599	AVMEME	5	End of Available Memory
*			
* (AVMEME collapsed to SAVST			
* after statement ex			
2F59E	SAVSTK		Save Area Stack Pointer
2F59E	TFORN		
2F59E	FORSTK	5	FOR/NEXT Stack
2F5A3	TGSBS		
2F5A3	GSBSTK	5	GOSUB Stack
2F5A8	ACTIVE	5	Active Variable Space
2F5AD	CALSTK	5	CALL Stack
2F5B2	RAMEND	5	End of Memory
*			

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Memory Structure

```

*   Variable List Pointers
*
2F5B7 PRMPTR      7      Parameter Chain Pointer
2F5BE CHNLST      Variable Chain Pointer List
2F5BE             26*7   26 Chains (7 nibs/chain)
*
* The following pointers are position dependent
*
*   PCADDR through TMADR3 adjusted by READJ+
*   PCADDR through DATPTR saved by CALL
*   CNTADR through TMADR3 zeroed by CLRSTK/CLPSTK
*
2F674 UPD2ST      Start of Update Addresses #2
2F674 DSPCHX      5      Pointer to external display
2F679 PCADDR      5      Program Counter Stmt Length
2F67E CNTADR      5      Continue Address
2F683 ERRSUB      5      ON ERROR-GOSUB Return Address
2F688 ERRADR      5      ON ERROR Statement Address
2F68D ONINTR      5      ON INTRPT Statement Address
2F692 DATPTR      5      DATA Statement Pointer
2F697 TMRAD1      5      ON TIMER#1 Statement Address
2F69C TMRAD2      5      ON TIMER#2 Statement Address
2F6A1 TMRAD3      5      ON TIMER#3 Statement Address
2F6A6 UPD2EN      End of Update Addresses #2
*
* The following Timer Intervals are position dependent
*   with TMRAD1 - TMRAD3
*
2F6A6 TMRIN1      8      TIMER#1 Interval
2F6AE TMRIN2      8      TIMER#2 Interval
2F6B6 TMRIN3      8      TIMER#3 Interval
*
2F6BE STSAVE      3      Status saved during Expr Exec
2F6C1 LDCSPC      5      Addr of space after line #
2F6C6 INBS        5      Input buffer start
2F6CB AUTINC      4      Increment value for AUTO
2F6CF LEXPTR      5      Temporary storage for RESPTR
2F6D4 CMDPTR      Command Stack pointer
2F6D4 INADDR      5      Stmt Len ptr: Parse/Decomp
*
2F6D9 SYSFLG      16     System flags
2F6E9 FLGREG      16     User flags
2F6F9 TRPREG      IEEE exception traps
2F6F9 INXNIB      1      Inexact result trap
2F6FA UNFNIB      1      Underflow trap
2F6FB OVFNIB      1      Overflow trap
2F6FC DVZNIB      1      Divide by zero trap
2F6FD IVLNIB      1      Invalid result trap
*
*   Random Number Seed
*

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

2F6FE	RNSEED	15	
	*		
	* Alarm Clock System RAM		
	*		
2F70D	NXTIRQ	12	Time of next SREQ
2F719	ALRM1	12	ON TIMER #1
2F725	ALRM2	12	ON TIMER #2
2F731	ALRM3	12	ON TIMER #3
2F73D	ALRM4	12	Time of timeout
2F749	ALRM5	12	Time of WAIT expiration
2F755	ALRM6	12	Time external alarm expires
2F761	PNDALM	2	Bitmap of pending alarms
	*		
	* Storage needed for accuracy factor stuff		
	*		
2F763	TIMOF5	12	Time error offset
2F76F	TIMLST	12	Time last set
2F77B	TIMLAF	12	Time of last AF correction
2F787	TIMAF	6	Accuracy factor
	*		
2F78D	IS-TBL		Table of "IS" assignments
2F78D	IS-DSP	7	
2F794	IS-PRT	7	
2F79B	IS-INP	7	
2F7A2	IS-PLT	7	
	*		
2F7A9	MBOX^	3	HP-IL Mailbox pointer
2F7AC	LOOPST	1	HP-IL loop status
2F7AD	STATAR	3	STATISITICAL ARRAY NAME
2F7B0	TRACEM	1	TRACE MODE (0,2,4,6)
2F7B1	DSPSET	1	Display device set up on HPIL
	*		
2F7B2	LOCKWD	8*2	Password
	*		
2F7C2	RESREG	34	Result register
	*		
	*		
	* ERR# through ERRL# are position dependent		
	*		
2F7E4	ERR#	4	Execution Error Number
2F7E8	CURRL	4	Current Line# Referenced
2F7EC	ERRL#	4	Execution Error Line#
	*		
	* Snapshot Buffer and Return Stack Save Buffer		
	*		
2F7F0	SNAPBF	16+16+5+5+5	Snapshot Buffer
2F81F	RSTKBp	1	Return Stack Save Buffer Ptr
2F820	RSTKBF	16*5	Return Stack Save Buffer
	*		
2F870	MLFFLG	1	Multi-Line Function FLAG
	*		

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

2F871	STMTR0		Statement scratch RAM
2F871	S-R0-0	5	
2F876	S-R0-1	5	
2F87B	S-R0-2	5	
2F880	S-R0-3	1	
	*		
2F881	STMTR1		
2F881	S-R1-0	5	
2F886	S-R1-1	5	
2F88B	S-R1-2	5	
2F890	S-R1-3	1	
	*		
2F891	STMTD0	5	
2F896	STMTD1	5	
	*		
2F89B	FUNCRO		Function scratch RAM
2F89B	F-R0-0	5	
2F8A0	F-R0-1	5	
2F8A5	F-R0-2	5	
2F8AA	F-R0-3	1	
	*		
2F8AB	FUNCR1		
2F8AB	F-R1-0	5	
2F8B0	F-R1-1	5	
2F8B5	F-R1-2	5	
2F8BA	F-R1-3	1	
	*		
2F8BB	FUNCDO	5	
2F8C0	FUNCD1	5	
	*		
	* TRANSFORM Scratch RAM		
	*		
2F8C5	TRFMBF	60	Used by TRANSFORM command
	*		
	*		
2F901	SCRICH		Scratch RAM
2F901	SCRST0	4*16	Scratch stack (Mantissas & s
2F941	SCREX0	5	Scratch stack exponent
2F946	SCROLT	2	Character scroll timer
2F948	DELAYT	2	Display timeout value
2F94A	NEEDSC	1	Scroll mode needed
2F94B	PRMCNT	2	CALL parameter count
2F94D	DPOS	2	Current DISP column
2F94F	DWIDTH	2	DISP width
2F951	SCREX1	5	Scratch stack exponent 1
2F956	PPOS	2	Current PRINT column
2F958	PWIDTH	2	PRINT width
2F95A	EOLLEN	1	Length of ENDLINE stri
2F95B	EOLSTR	2*3	ENDLINE string (3 chars max
2F961	SCREX2	5	Scratch stack exponent 2
2F966	SCRPTR	1	Scratch stack pointer

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

2F967	DEFADR	8	Key definition info
2F96F	CHN#SV	2	Channel # save
2F971	SCREX3	5	Scratch stack exponent 3
■			
2F976	MAXCMD	1	# of Command Stack entries
*			
2F977	CSPEED	5	Clock speed (Hz/16)
*			
■ The following 10 nibbles are used by HP-IL ROM			
■			
2F97C	ERRLCH	1	Error latch
2F97D	TERCHR	2	Terminating char for ENTER
2F97F	HPSCRH	7	HP-IL Reserved.
*			
(INTPND, ICAUSE, IMASK, LSTDDC)			
*			
2F986	RESERV	48*2	Reserved Memory.
■			
* Configuration table start			
■			
2F9E6	CONFEST		

3.3.1 Interrupt RAM (INTR4 - VECTOR, DISINT)

The interrupt routine uses 56 nibbles of RAM (INTR4, INTA, INTB, INTM) to save the contents of A(W), B(W), C(W), DO, P, Carry, Hex/Dec Mode.

The interrupt routine checks the RAM address VECTOR to see if an alternate interrupt handler has been enabled. Before processing any interrupt, four nibbles at CMOSTW (CMOS test word) are checked to verify that RAM is likely not corrupt. (The CMOS test word is immediately next to the VECTOR address since it is unlikely to accidentally change one address without changing the other.)

If the 5 nibble value at VECTOR is zero then normal interrupt processing is performed.

The nibble at DISINT is used to cause exactly one interrupt to be ignored. If the interrupt routine sees this nibble set to a non-zero value it will return immediately without any processing except to check for a "Module Pulled" interrupt and to zero this nibble. This is used during keyscan to side-step the interrupt that may result when the output register has been used to check individual key columns while doing synchronous (i.e., not from interrupt routine) keyscans.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

3.3.2 Keyboard Buffer/Flags (ATNDIS - KEYSAV)

The keyboard system has a fifteen key buffer which is preceded by a nibble indicating how many keys are in the buffer. This buffer is treated as a FIFO where the oldest key in the buffer is at the lowest address in the buffer (ie. pointed to by KEYBUF). The pointer nibble is named KEYPTR.

In addition to the key buffer, a "bit map" of which keys were down during the latest keyscan is maintained in the fourteen nibbles starting at KEYSAV. There are 4 rows of keys on the keyboard and each nibble of the KEYSAV buffer holds 4 bits representing the state of a particular key column. The least sig. bit of each nibble represents the key in the bottom row of that column and the most sig. bit represents the key in the top row of that column. The 14th key column is pointed to by KEYSAV. KEYSAV+13 points to the 1st key column.

The nibble at ATNFLG is decremented each time the keyscan routine finds the attention key down. It will not however be decremented from 1 to 0 since this would hide the fact that the key was ever pressed. The intention is that this flag can be used both as a flag that the attention key has been pressed and as a convenient way to tell if it has been pressed more than once.

The nibble at ATNDIS is a special location that if non-zero will cause the keyscan routine to treat the attention key as it would any other key. The attention key normally causes the key buffer to be flushed and the ATNFLG flag to be set, as well as setting the Except (S12) global status bit.

3.3.3 Pseudo-Device Display Driver (WINDST - DSPMSK)

The display driver uses a buffer of 96 consecutive bytes to hold the display buffer (DSPBFS). Each of these bytes holds one display character.

The display routines use several additional bytes to describe how the LCD should look. The byte at WINDST is the first LCD character position that should be used to display the contents of the buffer. The next byte (WINDLN) says how many LCD character positions (starting at WINDST) to use to represent the buffer. The first character of the buffer that should be put into the display is held in the byte at FIRSTC. The position of the cursor in the display is held in the byte at CURSOR. All of these bytes are represented base 0 (i.e. value 0 is the lowest possible value).

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

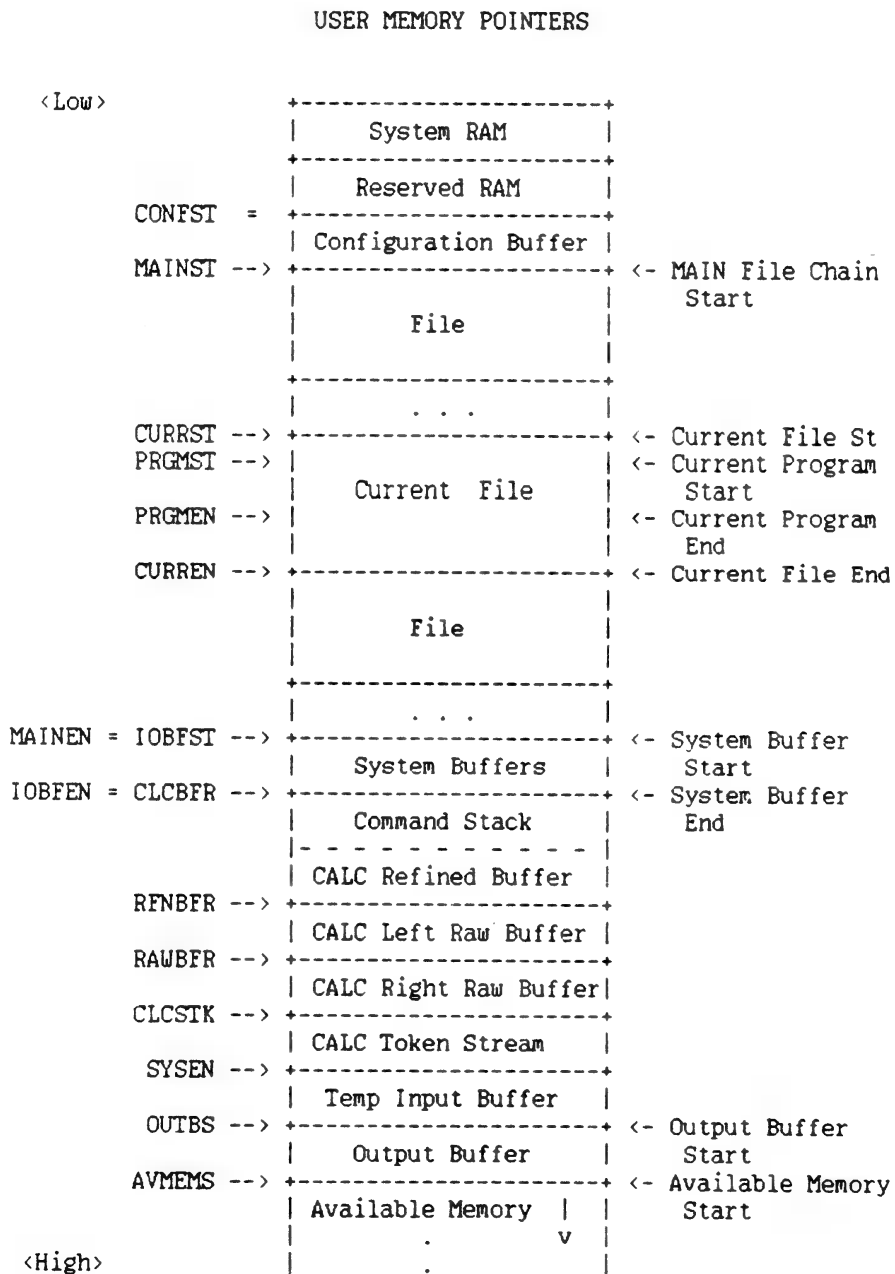
In addition to these bytes, another six nibbles are used to save status bits. The first three nibbles at DSPSTA are used to store the calling routines status bits while in the various display routines. The next three nibbles are used to hold status bits relevant to the display routines. See the display routines' documentation for a more complete description of these bits.

One nibble (ESCSTA) is used to keep track of the escape status of the display routines. This nibble indicates if the routines are in the middle of an escape sequence.

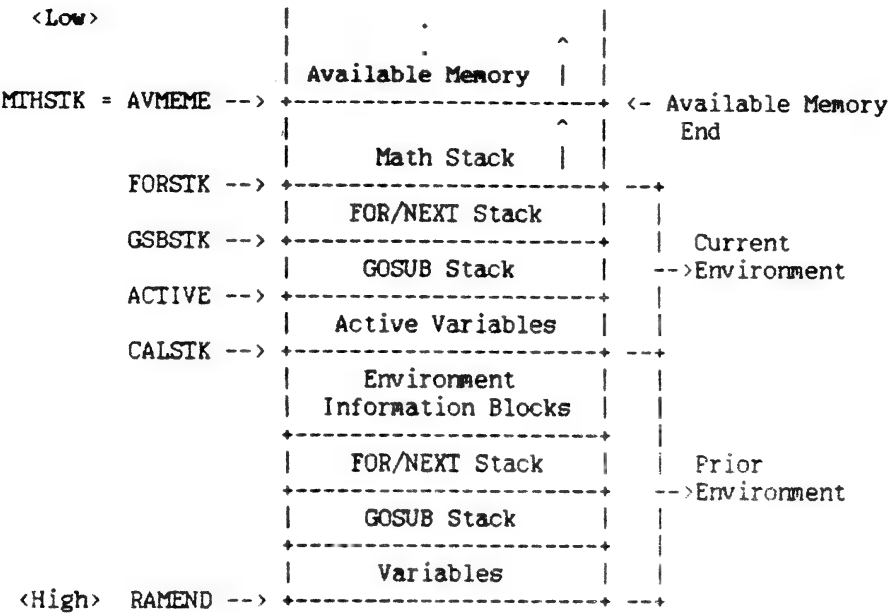
Following the display buffer is an address called DSPMSK. The 24 nibbles at this address contain 24×4 (96) bits, one of which corresponds to each of the bytes in the display buffer. The lowest address nibble maps to the highest addressed 4 bytes in the buffer and the nibble at DSPMSK+23 corresponds to the first 4 bytes in the display buffer. The most sig. bit of each nibble corresponds to the lowest addressed byte of the group of 4. These bits determine whether a particular character in the buffer is a protected, unreadable character. As characters are sent to the display this bit will be set for the character if the cursor is off. This makes the character unreadable and protects it so that the cursor cannot be positioned over it.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

3.3.4 User Memory Pointers (MAINST - RAMEND)



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure



From Low to High Memory:

-
- MAINST - MAIN File Chain Start = Configuration Buffers End
Points to the first file header in the MAIN file chain
 - CURRST - Current File Start
Points to the first nibble of the current file header
 - PRGMST - Current Program or Subprogram Start
Points to first nibble of current program or subprogram
 - PRGMEN - Current Program or Subprogram End
Points past last nibble of current program or subprogram
 - CURREN - Current File End
Points past last nibble of current file
 - MAINEN - MAIN File Chain End = System Buffer Start (IOBFST)
Points past 00 byte at end of MAIN file chain
 - CLCBFR - CALC Mode Buffer Start = System Buffer End (IOBFEN)
 - RENBFR - CALC Mode Refined Buffer
 - RAJBFR - CALC Mode Raw Buffer

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

CLCSTK	- CALC Mode Token Stack	
SYSEN	- System RAM End	
OUTBS	- Output Buffer Start	
AVMEMS	- Available Memory Start	= Output Buffer End
AVMEME	- Available Memory End	= Top of Math Stack (MTHSTK)
FORSTK	- Top FOR/NEXT Stack	= Top of Save Stack (SAVSTK)
GSBSTK	- Top GOSUB Stack	= Bottom of FOR/NEXT Stack
ACTIVE	- Active Variable Pointer	= Bottom of GOSUB Stack
CALSTK	- CALL Stack	= Bottom of Active Variables
RAMEND	- User RAM End	= Bottom of CALL Stack

3.3.5 Parameter Chain Pointer (PRMPTR)

The parameters of a user-defined function are pointed to by PRMPTR. The first two nibbles of PRMPTR is the parameter count:

Parameter count	Meaning
00	Currently is not executing an user-defined function
01-0F	Currently is executing an user-defined function, the number of the parameters of the user-defined function = count -1

The next five nibbles of the PRMPTR is the pointer to the chain of parameters. The parameters of the user-defined function are stored in a fashion similar to the program variables, except all parameters are stored in the same chain, regardless of the starting letter of the parameter name.

3.3.6 Variable Chain Pointer List (CHNLST)

Beginning at CHNLST are 26 seven-nibble chain pointers; each pointer is associated with a list of currently-existing variables. A variable is put into a particular list according to the letter of the alphabet which its name contains. For example, variables R, R7, R\$, and R3\$ are all in the same list. See the section on variables for details on variable list construction. A chain pointer has two parts: a variable count and an address. The

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

variable count is a two-nibble quantity telling how many variables exist in the chain at that time. The address field gives the absolute address of the start of the variable chain.

3.3.7 Statement/Program Execute RAM (DSPCHX-TMRIN3)

The following addresses (DSPCHX through TMRAD3) are updated whenever memory moves within system or user RAM. The symbolic names: UPD2ST and UPD2EN indicate this range.

DSPCHX Zero if no external character display device is active. Otherwise, the contents are used as an address for an external display handler for each character sent via DSPCHA routine.

PCADDR Pointer to statement length byte of statement currently executing.

CNTADR Continue Address of currently halted program.

ERRSUB Return address of ON ERROR GOSUB statement. Prevents infinite loop if error within ON ERROR GOSUB execute

ERRADR Address within ON ERROR statement pointing at GOTO or GOSUB. Remainder of statement is executed when an error occurs within a program.

ONINTR Address within ON INTERRUPT (HP-IL) statement pointing at GOTO or GOSUB. Remainder of statement is executed when an interrupt occurs.

DATPTR DATA statement READ pointer.

TMRAD1 - ON TIMER statement addresses for Timer#1-3, respectively.

TMRAD3 Points at GOTO or GOSUB within ON TIMER statement. When timer expires, remainder of statement is executed.

3.3.8 Miscellaneous BASIC RAM (STSAVE - INADDR)

TMRIN1 - ON TIMER statement timer interval for Timer#1-3,

TMRIN3 respectively. Timer is reactivated for the corresponding timer interval when an ON TIMER...GOTO expires, or on return from an ON TIMER...GOSUB.

STSAVE Saved status bits during Expression Execute (EXPEXC).

LDCSPC Cursor position for decompile of BASIC program lines and user-defined keys.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

INBS Input Buffer Start. A floating pointer indicating the start of the input buffer being parsed. Set at the beginning of Line Parse. May point to the Command Stack, Start-up Buffer, TRANSFORM Input Buffer or Direct Execute Key Buffer.

AUTINC AUTO increment value for AUTO command. This RAM location doubles as the AUTO mode flag: If zero, then not in AUTO mode.

LEXPTR Position of Input pointer prior to last NTOKEN call. Used in statement parse.

CMDPTR
INADDR Pointer to statement length byte for statement currently being parsed or decompiled. (Also used for Command Stack pointer - CMDPTR)

3.3.9 System and User Flags (SYSFLG - FLGREG)

There are 64 user flags (numbered 0-63) and 64 system flags (numbered -64 to -1). Within each nibble, the lowest numbered flag is in the least significant bit. These flags are stored in 128 consecutive bits starting at address SYSFLG:

<Low>		+-----+	
	SYSFLG -->	-1	System Flags
		+-----+	
		-2	
		+-----+	
		.	
		.	
		.	
		+-----+	
		-64	
		+-----+	
	FLGREG -->	0	User Flags
		+-----+	
		1	
		+-----+	
		.	
		.	
		.	
		+-----+	
		63	
		+-----+	
<High>			

The user can set and clear all user flags and those system flags numbered -1 to -32. The user may test the status of all user and

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

system flags.

Refer to the "Table Formats" chapter for a summary of flag assignments.

3.3.10 Traps (INXNIB - IVLNIB)

There are 5 math exception traps stored in 5 consecutive nibbles starting at address TRPREG:

<Low>	TRPREG = INXNIB -->	+-----+ INX +-----+
	UNFNIB -->	+-----+ UNF +-----+
	OVFNIB -->	+-----+ OVF +-----+
	DVZNIB -->	+-----+ DVZ +-----+
	IVLNIB -->	+-----+ IVL +-----+
<High>		

Refer to the "Table Formats" chapter for details on trap settings.

3.3.11 Random Number Seed (RNSEED)

The current random number seed (updated by RANDOMIZE and used by RND) is stored in 15 consecutive nibbles starting at address RNSEED.

3.3.12 Alarm Clock System RAM (NXTIRQ - TIMAF)

The following RAM is used by the internal clock system:

Label	Size(nibs)	Function
-----	-----	-----
NXTIRQ	12	Time of next clock service request
ALRM1	12	Time of next timer#1 request
ALRM2	12	Time of next timer#2 request
ALRM3	12	Time of next timer#3 request
ALRM4	12	Time of 10-minute timeout
ALRM5	12	Time of end of pause
ALRM6	12	Time of external alarm
PNDALM	2	Bitmap of pending alarms
TIMOPS	12	Time error offset
TIMLST	12	Time of last EXACT
TIMLAF	12	Time of last AF correction
TIMAF	6	Accuracy factor

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Memory Structure

3.3.13 "IS" Table Assignments (IS-TBL)

This table holds information defining the current state of DISPLAY IS, PRINTER IS, KEYBOARD IS and PLOTTER IS. The destination of each of these assignments can theoretically be any HP-IL device or the LCD display; however there are some combinations that don't make sense and should not be allowed. There is a 7 nibble table entry for each of these devices. Each entry has the following format and definition:

Nib 3		
bit 3	bits 2-0	
X	0	Address specified Nibs 2-0: Address, loop# or FFF if not known Nibs 6-4: Address, loop#
X	1	Type specified (loop 0)
X	2	" " (loop 1)
X	3	" " (loop 2) Nibs 2-0: Address, loop# or FFF if not known Nib 6: Sequence # Nibs 5-4: Accessory id
X	4	IO buffer for device ID/Volume label Nibs 2-0: Address, loop# or FFF if not known Nibs 6-4: Buffer #
X	5	Multiple assign buffer Nibs 2-0: FFF Nibs 6-4: Buffer #
X	6	Device ID specified Nibs 2-0: Address, loop# Nibs 6-4: Buffer #
1	7	Unassigned or not HPIL Nibs 2-0: FFF if not assigned or Fxx if not HPIL (where xx is not FF) Nibs 6-4: FFF if not assigned but not defined if not HPIL

X = 1 if device OFFed, 0 otherwise

3.3.14 HP-IL RAM (MBOX, LOOPST, DSPSET)

MBOX^ Used by HPIL ROM as a pointer to its mailbox. Three nibbles are multiplied by 16 and added to 20000 to get

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

mailbox address.

- LOOPST Used by HPIL ROM to keep track of loop status.
 Bit 3: Device "OFFed".
 Bit 2: Last call to START found HPIL mailbox
 in device mode.
 Bit 1: (Reserved)
 Bit 0: (Reserved)
- DSPSET Used by HPIL ROM to indicate status of display device.
 Bit 3: Display device is set up
 * Following ONLY valid if Bit 3 is TRUE!!
 Bit 2: Display is a HP82163 video interface
 (Retransmit line if insert or delete).
 Bit 1: Display device is line output only (printer)
 Bit 0: Display code was "OFFed" if 0.

3.3.15 STAT Array (STATAR), TRACE Mode (TRACEM)

- STATAR Name of the currently selected STAT array
TRACEM Indicates current TRACE Mode:
 0 = No TRACE
 2 = TRACE FLOW
 4 = TRACE VARS
 6 = TRACE FLOW, TRACE VARS

3.3.16 LOCK Password (LOCKWD)

The lockword supplied by the user in the lock command is stored in the 16 nibbles starting at LOCKWD. If there is no lockword, these 16 nibbles are all zeroes. The lockword is not encrypted.

3.3.17 Result Register (RESREG)

The result register holds the value of the most recently executed numeric expression. This value is updated whenever a numeric value is DISPLAYed, PRINTed, or stored into a variable.

3.3.18 Error Number (ERRN)

The number of the most recent error (ERRN) is stored in RAM location ERR#. This location is set to zero at cold start, and changed only in the message driver (MFERR*). The message number is encoded in four nibbles: abcd, where

ab = LEX ID# in hex
cd = message number in hex.

3.3.19 Current Line (CURRL)

The current line number is stored in CURRL, as a four digit decimal number. At coldstart, CURRL is set to zero. Editing the current BASIC file updates CURRL to the line number being inserted, replaced or deleted. Recalling a BASIC program line to the display changes the current line. The FETCH statement, Cursor Up, Cursor Down, Cursor Top, and Cursor Bottom recall a program line. Executing an EDIT statement changes the current line to the first line of the specified Edit file. A GOTO from the keyboard sets the current line to the specified line number or line number containing the specified label.

During program execution, CURRL is not updated until the program is halted. If program execution halts due to a PAUSE, STOP, or END statement, the line containing the statement becomes the current line. If the program halts due to an implicit END (the last line of the program is reached), CURRL becomes the last line of the program. If program execution halts because the ATTN is hit, the line containing the next statement to be executed becomes the current line.

3.3.20 Error Line Number (ERRL#)

The line number of the most recent execution error (ERRL) is stored in RAM location ERRL#. This location is set to zero at cold start, and changed only in the message driver (MFERR*). CURRL is updated to the new current line and is also placed in ERRL#; it is a four digit decimal number.

3.3.21 Snapshot Buffer (SNAPBF)

This area of RAM is used to temporarily hold a snapshot of CPU registers A, D, D0, D1, and C(A). It is 47 nibbles in size. For details on saving and restoring CPU snapshots, see routines SNAPSV and SNAPRS.

3.3.22 Return Stack Save (RSTKBp, RSTKBF)

This area of fixed RAM holds up to 16 stack levels from the hardware stack. It is administered as a LIFO (last in, first out) circular stack by the routines R<RSTK (saves stack levels) and RSTK<R (restores stack levels). The one-nibble pointer, RSTKBp, contains an index (0 thru 15) of the next 5-nibble slot available for storing a stack level.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

When a stack level is stored, the pointer is bumped, and it wraps around to zero when it passes 15. Conversely, the pointer is decremented when a stack level is removed, and the pointer wraps around to 15 when it passes 0. Therefore, if 16 levels have been stored on the stack, storing a 17th level will overwrite the oldest level on the stack.

Note that these saved stack levels are NOT updated when memory moves. Also, these saved stack levels will not necessarily remain intact when EXPEXC is called.

3.3.23 Multi-Line Function Flag (MLFFLG)

MLFFLG is the multi-Line function flag. ENDDEF statement sets it to nonzero. This allows statements to determine if a multi-line user-defined function was invoked during expression execute. They can then know whether memory could have changed. This flag may also be set by other functions that may have changed memory.

To know whether anything could have happened to "memory" during expression execution, this nibble should be cleared before calling expression execute. If it is set upon return, either a user defined function or some other "harsh" function has been invoked during the expression evaluation.

3.3.24 Statement, Function Scratch (STMTR0 - FUNC01)

Some RAM is maintained specifically to be used as scratch space during statement and function execution. The 42 nibbles starting at STMTR0 are referred to as the statement scratch area, and the 42 nibbles immediately following (starting at FUNC00) constitute the function scratch area.

The latter 42 nibbles are available during function execution, and all 84 nibbles are available during statement execution. Naturally, the function scratch area will probably be used during expression execution.

Of great importance to users of these scratch areas is the fact that this RAM is Untouched by utility routines, including display routines, message routines and the clock system. Thus, these scratch areas are often used for storing things while calling particularly disruptive utilities.

The exact layout of the statement and function scratch RAM is as follows (broken down into fields and subfields):

LABEL	#nibbles	comment
-------	----------	---------

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Memory Structure

-----	-----	-----
SIMTRO	16	Start of statement scratch
S-R0-0	5	16-nibble field
S-R0-1	5	5-nibble subfield
S-R0-2	5	5-nibble subfield
S-R0-3	1	5-nibble subfield
SIMTR1	16	1-nibble subfield
S-R1-0	5	16-nibble field
S-R1-1	5	5-nibble subfield
S-R1-2	5	5-nibble subfield
S-R1-3	1	5-nibble subfield
STMID0	5	5-nibble field
STMID1	5	5-nibble field
(total)	42	End of statement scratch
-----	-----	-----
FUNCR0	16	Start of function scratch
F-R0-0	5	16-nibble field
F-R0-1	5	5-nibble subfield
F-R0-2	5	5-nibble subfield
F-R0-3	1	5-nibble subfield
FUNCR1	16	1-nibble subfield
F-R1-0	5	16-nibble field
F-R1-1	5	5-nibble subfield
F-R1-2	5	5-nibble subfield
F-R1-3	1	5-nibble subfield
FUNCD0	5	5-nibble field
FUNCD1	5	5-nibble field
(total)	42	End of function scratch

3.3.25 TRANSFORM Scratch RAM (TRFMBF)

This area of RAM is used during execution of the TRANSFORM command and is OFF LIMITS to any parse, decompile, or transformation related routine. It is 60 nibs in size.

3.3.26 Scratch RAM (SCRICH)

The area used for the scratch math stack (below) is also used as a general purpose, highly volatile scratch RAM area, labeled SCRICH. This is to be distinguished from Statement and Function Scratch (above), which is less volatile. The ALMSRV routine uses part of SCRICH RAM to avoid destroying CPU scratch registers. The display routines also use it during <CR> and <LF> processing by virtue of their calling ALMSRV. Routines which use this space should document their exact usage; this is the only fixed-address general

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

purpose scratch space available for utility routines.

Specifically, the scratch RAM area consists exactly of the area used as the scratch math stack: 69 consecutive nibbles and three 5-nibble chunks punctuated by 11-nibble chunks which are UNAVAILABLE for use as scratch RAM:

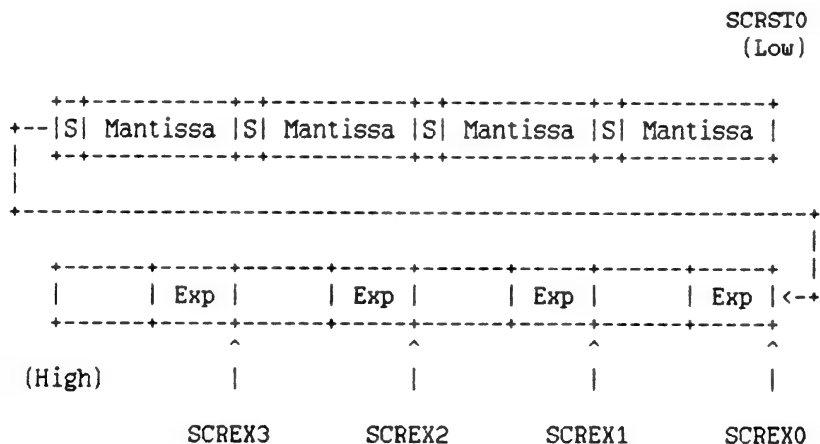
```

SCRST0:      69 nibbles      (includes SCREX0)
(unavailable): 11 nibbles
SCREX1:       5 nibbles
(unavailable): 11 nibbles
SCREX2:       5 nibbles
(unavailable): 11 nibbles
SCREX3:       5 nibbles

```

3.3.27 Scratch Math Stack (SCRST0 - SCREXx)

The scratch math stack is a four-high stack for split (21-nibble) numerical values. The 21-nibble form consists of a sign nibble, a 15-nibble mantissa, and a five-nibble exponent. The signs and mantissas are stored consecutively in 64 nibbles starting at SCRST0. SCRST0 must reside between XXX00 and XXX0F in the RAM Map. Each exponent is stored 64 nibbles higher in memory than its corresponding mantissa:



A pointer having possible values 0, 1, 2, or 3 points to the current top of the scratch math stack. This pointer is stored in the nibble with address SCRPTR.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

3.3.28 DISP/PRINT RAM (SCROLT - EOLSTR)

SCROLT Number of 1/32s of a second to delay between scrolling characters in the display. Infinity is represented by FF. Initialized to 4.

DELAYT Number of 1/32s of a second to delay between scrolling lines in the display. Infinity is represented by FF. Initialized to 16 (10 hex).

NEEDSC 0 if no characters have been sent to display since last ENDLINE key, F otherwise. This keeps track of whether the display needs to be scrolled by calling SCRLLR.

DPOS DISPLAY position. Used in DISP statements to keep track of current position in line. 0 means position 1.

DWIDTH DISPLAY width. Used to limit number of characters output on any DISPLAY line. Infinity is represented by 0. Initialized to 96 (60 hex).

PPOS PRINT position. Used in PRINT statement to keep track of the current position in the line. 0 means position 1.

PWIDTH PRINT width. Used to limit the number of characters output on any PRINT line. Infinity is represented by 0. Initialized to 96 (60 hex).

EOLLEN ENDLINE string length. Number of nibbles in the ENDLINE string. Should be 0,2,4,6. Initialized to 4.

EOLSTR ENDLINE string. Holds up to three characters which are sent to PRINTER IS device whenever an end-of-line is needed. Initialized to CR/LF.

3.3.29 CALL Parameter Count (PRMCNT)

PRMCNT is temporary scratch used by CALL execute to count the number of parameters.

3.3.30 Key Definition Info (DEFADR)

Eight nibbles of RAM used by the KEYRD subroutine for returning a pointer to a key definition. This ram is set by the key read routine (KEYRD). The contents DEFADR have the following definition:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

(DEFADR): Length of definition string in bytes (2 nibbles).
(DEFADR+2): Key type: (1 nibble)
0 = Single ASCII character. Includes characters 0-31, which result from hitting special keys (ENDLN, UP-ARROW, etc.).
1 = ASCII control character. Must subtract 64 from the one-byte definition we are pointing to. These characters should be interpreted as text, and should not cause any special action in the editor.
2 = User-defined key--terminating.
4 = User-defined key--non-terminating.
6 = User-defined key--immediate execute.
8-F = Typing aid, with lower 3 bits as follows:
 Bit 0: Parenthesis ("(") needs to be added to string.
 Bit 1: Trailing space needs to be added to string.
 Bit 2: Leading space needs to be added to string.
 (Spaces and parenthesis not included in string length field or in definition proper. For example, the f shifted 4 key returns a definition which points to a 3 character string containing "SIN" and has the bit set which indicates that a parenthesis needs to be added to get the actual key definition ("SIN(").)
(DEFADR+3): Address of definition text. (5 nibbles)

3.3.31 Channel Number Save (CHN#SV)

The CHN#SV is used to hold the channel number currently being accessed. Refer to the section on the assign buffer in the "Table Formats" chapter for details.

3.3.32 Number of Command Stack Entries (MAXCMD)

MAXCMD holds the number of Command Stack entries.

3.3.33 Clock Speed (CSPEED)

Each time the system is reconfigured, the clock speed is recomputed and stored in CSPEED. The value is the clock speed divided by 16 (decimal) and stored in Hexadecimal (Hz).

3.3.34 HP-IL Special RAM (ERRLCH - HPSCRH)

ERRLCH Used by error routines; set when error occurs.

TERCHR Terminating character for ENTER and ENTER USING.

HPSCRH 7 nibbles reserved for HP-IL scratch.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

3.3.35 Reserved RAM (RESRV)

96 nibbles (48 bytes) are reserved for future use. This memory will be allocated conservatively and through official channels. Refer to the "HP-71 Resource Allocations" chapter for details on use of this RAM.

3.3.36 System RAM Availability

The following table summarizes which RAM locations may be used by the various routines of built-in and external (LEX file) keywords:

	nibbles avail.	Stmt. Parse	Stmt. Decomp	Stmt.** Exec.	Func. Exec.
SNAPBF	47	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
SCRICH	64+4*5	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Statement Scratch	42	No	Yes	Yes	No
Function Scratch	42	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
TRFMBF	60	No	No	Yes	Yes
LDCSPC	5	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
STSAVE	3	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
LEXPTR	5	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
RSTKBF Save Buffer	16*5	Yes	Yes	Yes*	Yes
RESERV Resreved RAM	***	***	***	***	***

* A statement cannot store anything in the RSTKBF area, call Expression Execution (EXPEXC), and expect what was saved to be intact.

** In general, any statement execution may use any memory available to function execution.

*** Reserved RAM may be used only after such usage has been registered and authorized by HP. See the chapter on "HP-71 Resource Allocation" for further information.

3.4 Configuration Buffer

The configuration buffers contain three tables, identifying what memory and I/O devices are configured where. The three tables contain information on System RAM (configuration table ID = FF), Other Memory (IRAM, ROM, EEPROM, etc.; configuration table ID = FE (bROMIB)), and Memory-Mapped I/O (HPIL mailbox, etc.; configuration table ID = FD).

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

Each table has a five nibble header. The first byte is the table ID (FF, FE or FD); the next three nibbles contain the table length, not including the header. The configuration buffer is terminated by a zero byte.

A configuration table entry is created in one of the three tables for every "sequence". A sequence consists of either:

- 1) A single memory-mapped I/O chip, or
- 2) One or more consecutive chips with identical ID's (bits 15-0 of ID) on a daisy chain.

A sequence is ended with:

- 1) Chip with different ID (which will be the start of a new sequence, obviously).
- 2) Chip with bit 18 of ID set (marks end of this sequence).
- 3) Chip with bit 19 of ID set (marks end of physical plug-in module).

A table entry conveys the following information:

Seq Position: Position of this sequence within the module. Since most modules have only one sequence, this is usually zero.

Device #: Position of this module within a consecutive series of modules (i.e., modules on same daisy chain). In the absence of a port extender, this will be zero. (The RAMs on the internal daisy chain may be grouped into logical modules.)

Port #: Identifies which daisy chain contains sequence. Port #0 is internal daisy chain (daisy-in on first chip thereof is tied high). Port #n is the daisy chain activated by output register bit #(n-1).

Size: Since size is always a power of two, the size is represented internally and on the chip ID as the one's complement of $\log_2(\text{size})$. Size refers to K-nibbles for memory devices and to words (hunks of 16 nibbles) for memory-mapped I/O.

Address: For memory devices, the upper 3 nibbles of the configuration address are given (the lower 2 are always zero). For memory-mapped I/O, the middle 3 nibbles are given (upper nibble is always 1, lower nibble is always 0).

Device type: Identifies type of memory device or if this is memory-mapped I/O device. The possible values are explained in

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

the system configuration overview.

Device class: If sequence is memory-mapped I/O, this identifies which type of memory-mapped I/O device this. There is no device class for memory devices.

* Chips in sequence: Identifies how many chips comprise this sequence. Kept in the table as (#chips - 1). Not kept for memory-mapped I/O, since it is always zero (each MM I/O chip results in its own table entry).

Reserved nibble: Nibble #1 from the Chip ID is saved here. That nibble is currently not defined.

Following is the exact format of the configuration buffer table entries:

	System RAM (cnftable ID FF) -----	Other Memory (cnftable ID FE) -----
NIB 0	Seq position	Seq position
NIB 1	Device #	Device #
NIB 2	Port #	Port #
NIB 3	15-Log2(size) **	15-Log2(size)
NIB 4	/	/
NIB 5	Address (kbit)	Address (kbit)
NIB 6	\	\
NIB 7	0	Device type
NIB 8	#chips/seq - 1	#chips/seq - 1
NIB 9	Nibble 1 from ID	Nibble 1 from ID
	Memory-mapped I/O (cnftable ID FD) -----	
NIB 0	Sequence position in dev	
NIB 1	Device #	
NIB 2	Port #	
NIB 3	15-Log2(size)	
NIB 4	/	
NIB 5	Address (words rel to 20000)	
NIB 6	\	
NIB 7	Device type (always F)	
NIB 8	Device class	
NIB 9	Nibble 1 from ID	

** FREEPORT routine may set this to zero to indicate that the RAM has been removed intentionally. This affects operation of this code in the spot where the old and new tables are compared to determine which RAMs are new and which are missing.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

3.5 User Memory

User Memory consists of that portion of Main RAM which follows the Configuration Buffer. It contains the MAIN file chain, system buffers, CALC mode buffers, the command stack, the output buffer, available memory, and the various stacks maintained by the operating system.

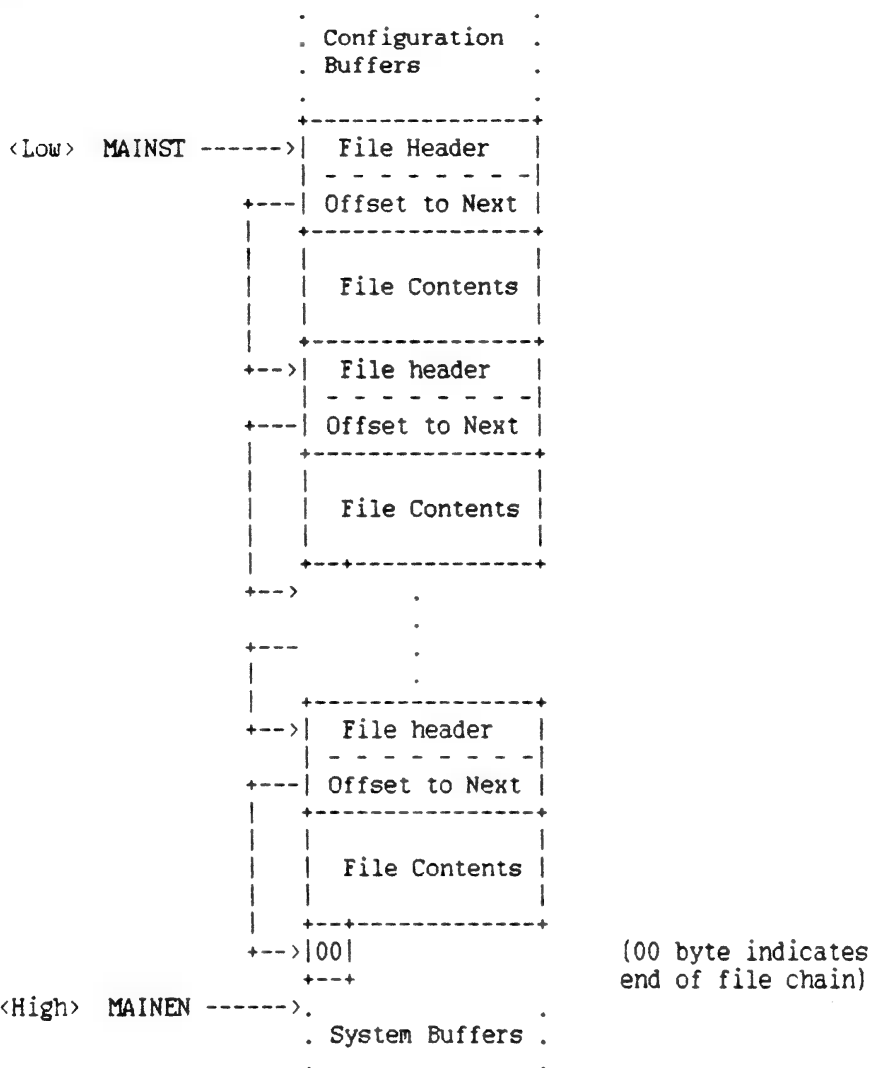
3.5.1 MAIN File Chain

Files are stored in a linked list called a file chain. Each file in the chain is immediately preceded by a file header which contains identifying information about the file as well as a pointer to the file header of the next file in the chain. See the "File System" chapter for further information on the contents of a file header.

The start of the MAIN file chain is pointed to by MAINST. The pointer MAINEN, also known as IOBFST, points past the end of the chain, which is marked by a zero byte.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure



3.5.2 Program Scope

The scope or bounds of the current program are defined by the program start and end pointers PRGMST and PRGMEN, respectively. Program scope may delimit a main program or a subprogram, which may be part of a larger file. The program end (PRGMEN) and current file end (CURREN) pointers are equal only when the current file contains a main program and no subprograms.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

Note that the program scope pointers may delimit a program in a file that resides in the MAIN file chain, in a ROM, or in an Independent RAM, and therefore have no fixed relationship to the MAIN file chain pointers MAINST and MAINEN.

3.5.3 System Buffers

System buffers are used as general purpose buffers and as I/O buffers. They are maintained immediately following the end of the file chain. They are used for storage or working data and in some respects are more convenient than files for machine language applications. Each buffer is identified by a unique ID. ID's within a certain range are permanently reserved for use by specific applications and LEX files. Permanent ID reservations are assigned to software developers according to the procedures described in the "HP-71 Resource Allocation" chapter in this document. A certain range of ID's are also used and allocated on a temporary or scratch basis by the operating system, and are useful for applications where the temporary ID number can be saved.

There are several useful utilities related to system buffers, which are summarized in the "Utilities" chapter.

3.5.3.1 Format

Each buffer consists of a seven nibble header, followed by the buffer itself. The first nibble indicates if there are any address references in the beginning of the buffer that need to be updated by READJ (Reference Adjust); in most cases this nibble will be zero.

The next three nibbles are the buffer ID. The following three nibbles are the buffer length, that is the length of the buffer NOT including the buffer header (an empty buffer has 000 in this field).

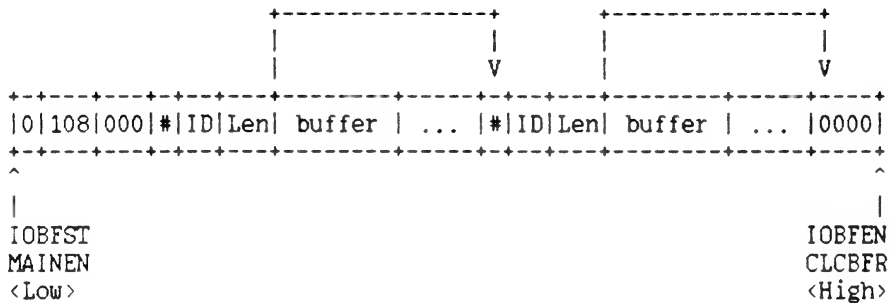
The buffer chain is terminated by 0000.

The statement buffer (bSTMT) is always present and must be the first buffer in the buffer chain. This ensures that when executing statements from the statement buffer, PCADDR is not affected by buffer modifications.

Assuming the statement buffer (ID 801) is empty, the buffer chain is as follows:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

SYSTEM BUFFER CHAIN



3.5.3.2 Update Addresses in System Buffers

If a buffer needs to have address references updated to reflect memory movement, then the first nibble of the buffer header is used. This nibble indicates the number of addresses to update (up to 15). The addresses must immediately follow the buffer header.

At the time a buffer is first created, this nibble is always initialized to zero. All of the System buffer utilities dealing with expanding and contracting existing buffers preserve this nibble. The buffer user is responsible for setting the nibble.

3.5.3.3 Automatic Deletion of System Buffers

Buffers are, by nature, temporary storage areas. Part of the system's maintenance process for buffers is deleting those which are no longer needed.

Whenever the configuration code is executed, all buffers are marked for deletion. The high bit of their buffer ID's is cleared; that is why all buffer ID's are $\geq 800H$. Certain buffers are immediately reclaimed (the statement buffer, the FIB, etc.). Then the configuration poll is performed. All buffers which have not been reclaimed (high bit set) following this poll will then be deleted.

Anyone keeping buffers must reclaim them at every configuration poll (pCONF) or the buffers will go away. This can be done with the I/ORES utility which, given a buffer ID, will find the unreclaimed buffer and reclaim it by setting the high bit of the ID.

3.5.3.4 Permanent Buffers

Permanent buffers ID are allocated through official channels and are dedicated buffer to a particular application. Refer to the chapter on "HP-71 Resource Allocation".

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

3.5.3.5 Scratch Buffers

The system buffer ID range E00 to FFF is used for scratch buffers, which may be requested by calling IOFSCR, which allocates the next available scratch buffer and returns its ID. Scratch buffers are useful for temporary storage when the buffer ID can be easily saved by the user.

3.5.3.6 System Buffers Used by the Mainframe

The following is a list of system buffers used by the mainframe:

- Alternate Character (bCHARS)
- Assign (bASSGN)
- Card Reader (bCARD)
- External Command (bECOMD)
- File Information (bFIB)
- Immediate Execute Key (bIEXKY)
- LEX Entry (bLEX)
- Statement (bSIMT)
- Statistics (bSTAT)
- Startup (bSTART)

The index indicates where more information can be found about these buffers.

3.5.4 CALC Mode Pointers

When CALC mode is in effect, the pointers AVMEMS and AVMEME, which control available memory, are given unusual meanings. They act in coordination with the other CALC mode pointers as described in this section.

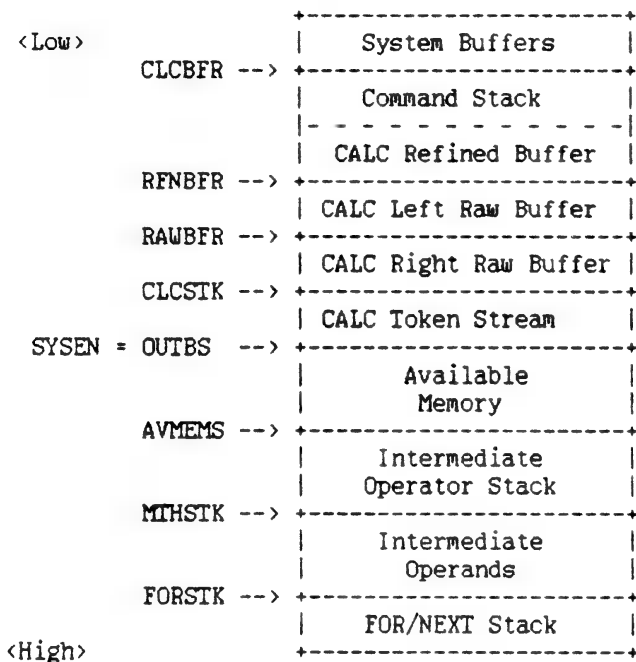
The CALC mode pointers define several volatile areas between CLCBFR (which is the beginning of the Command Stack) and FORSTK. Characters accepted by CALC mode are inserted at RAWBFR (which stands for raw input buffer), while the parsing process operates at and advances RFNBFR (refined input buffer).

Anticipated right delimiters, such as commas and right parentheses, are inserted by the parser to the right of RAWBFR.

During the parsing process, compiled tokens are appended to the end of the CALC Token Stream between CLCSTK and SYSEN. The intermediate operator stack resides between AVMEMS and MIHSTK, and intermediate operands reside between MIHSTK and FORSTK. At this time, system available memory is actually between SYSEN and AVMEMS, as shown:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Memory Structure

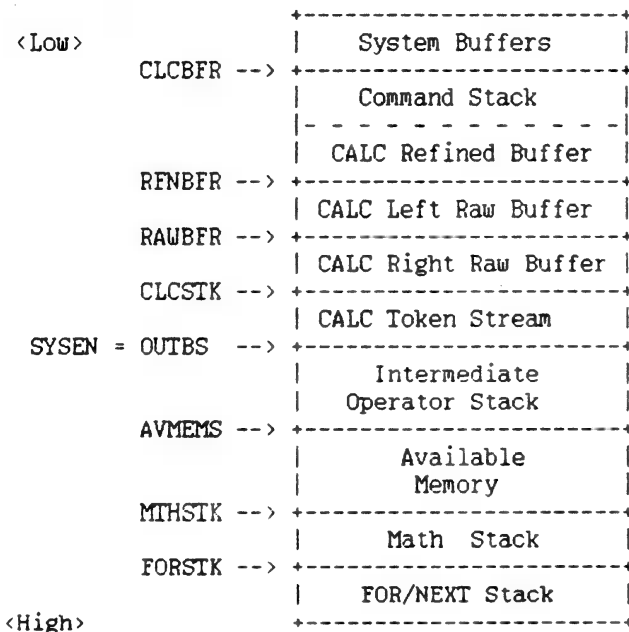
CALC MODE MEMORY STRUCTURE DURING PARSE



When a terminator is encountered in the parse process, CALC mode stores an EOL token at the end of the token stream in preparation for Expression Execute. Memory is then rearranged as shown below, with the intermediate operator stack residing between SYSEN and AVMEMS and available memory in its normal position between AVMEMS and MIHSTK. Expression Execute is then called, which returns a value on the Math Stack. CALC Mode then returns the memory pointers to the parse configuration above. In this manner, when a CALC mode statement is complete, it is already within the Command Stack.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

CALC MODE MEMORY STRUCTURE DURING EXPRESSION EXECUTION



3.5.5 Command Stack

The Command Stack is a doubly linked list of buffers between CLCBFR and RAWBFR. Outside of CALC mode, SYSEN and CLCSTK are equal to RAWBFR. RFBFR is not used outside of CALC mode (although it is updated whenever memory moves); upon entering CALC mode RFBFR is computed and initialized appropriately.

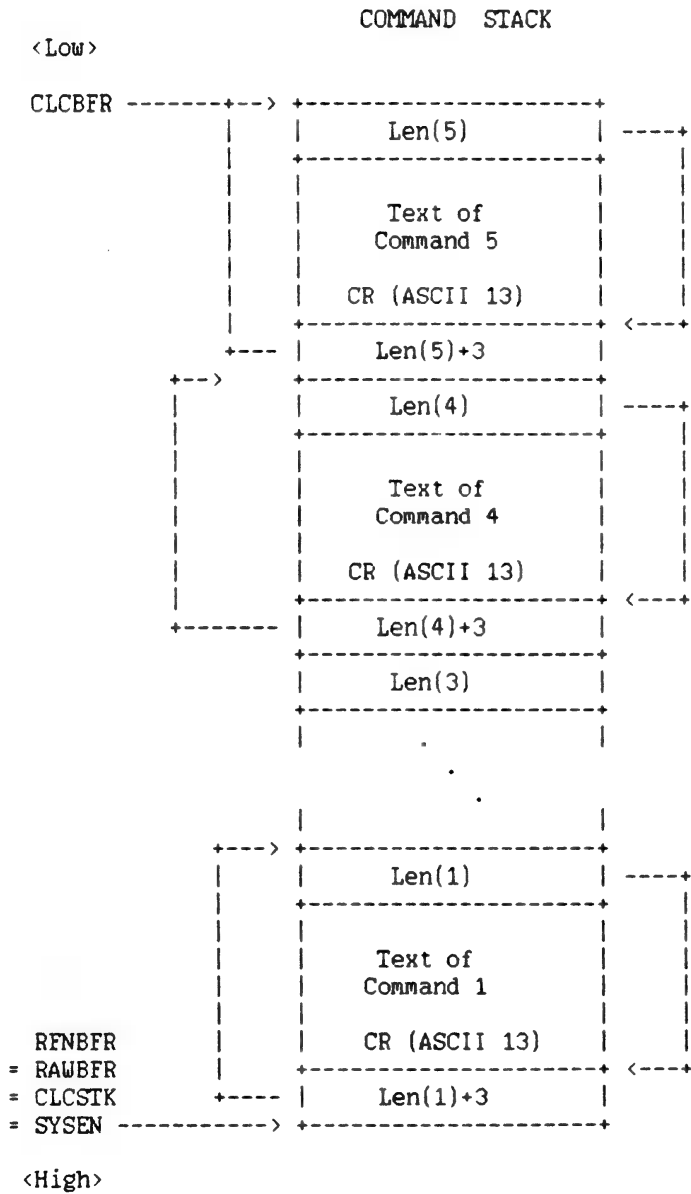
The Command Stack is initialized to have 5 entries, each containing only a carriage return (ASCII 13). Each entry consists of a 3 nibble length field, command text and a 3 nibble backwards chaining length field.

The first length field is the number of nibbles in the actual text of the command, including the carriage return at the end of the text. The command text is always terminated with a carriage return. The second length field is three nibbles greater than the length of the text to allow chaining backwards through the Command Stack.

The number of entries in the Command Stack is kept in the RAM nibble called MAXCMD. This nibble must correspond to the actual

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

number of entries in the stack. To change the number of entries in the Command Stack, this nibble must be changed as well as creating/deleting entries on the stack to match this number. The MAXCMD nibble is the number of entries minus one; thus the Command Stack can be altered to have from 1 to 16 entries. No mechanism in the mainframe is provided to do this.



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

3.5.6 Available Memory

The SYSEN pointer separates the CALC Mode token stream from the temporary input buffer area for BASIC. SYSEN is used by TRANSFORM to mark the beginning of memory available for its input and output buffers.

OUTBS points to the start of the output buffer, used to compile BASIC tokens during statement parse and to regenerate text for statement decompile.

AVMEMS marks the end of the output buffer and the start of available memory. This delimiter is necessary before moving the output buffer to the statement buffer, a program file or to the display buffer.

After statement parse or decompile, the main loop collapses available memory start (AVMEMS), the output buffer (OUTBS) and the system RAM end pointer (SYSEN) to the end of the Command Stack (CLCSTK=RENBFR).

During statement execution, available memory start is at the end of the Command Stack.

3.5.7 Math Stack

The Math Stack exists between MTHSTK and FORSTK; it is used for intermediate storage of operands during expression execution. Four types of objects are recognized on the Math Stack: real numbers, complex numbers, strings, and array dope vectors. The stack grows from high addresses to low. The pointer, MTHSTK, points to the top of the Math Stack.

Refer to the "Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution" chapter for details on expression execution and the Math Stack.

3.5.8 Save Stack

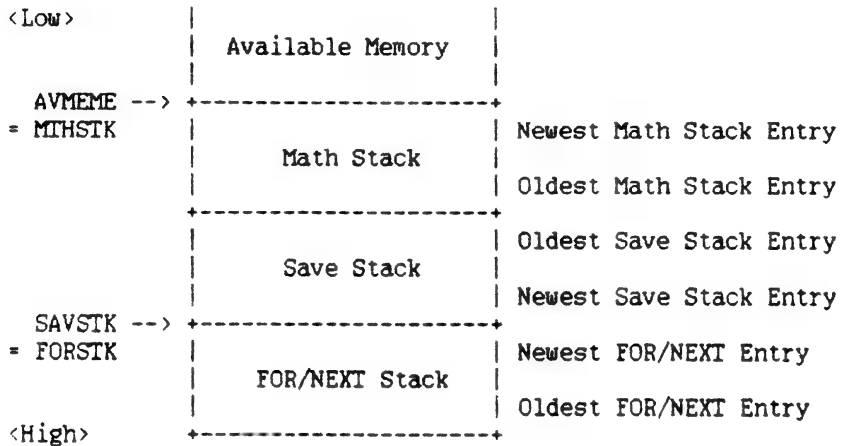
The Save Stack is an area of user memory for saving special system information. It resides between the Math Stack and FOR/NEXT Stack, as shown below.

Any new Save Stack allocation is inserted between the current Save Stack contents and the FOR/NEXT Stack. Therefore, unlike the Math Stack or FOR/NEXT stack, the top of the Save Stack is at a higher address than its bottom. The SAVSTK pointer is always positioned past the highest-addressed nibble of the most recently allocated

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

section of Save Stack memory, and is therefore identical to the FORSTK pointer (for which SAVSTK is merely another name). Note that there is no pointer which explicitly marks the bounds between the Math Stack and the Save Stack:



The routine SALLOC will expand the Save Stack by the requested number of nibbles. The memory between available memory end and the end of the Save Stack (between system pointers AVMEME and SAVSTK) is moved down into available memory by the required number of nibbles, and AVMEME is updated accordingly. Since this process preserves all memory between AVMEME and SAVSTK but overwrites the memory immediately before AVMEME, AVMEME must be set to the true top of the Math Stack in order for the Math Stack to be preserved.

Routines which allocate memory recursively on the Save Stack are responsible for removing that memory. The routine "SRLEAS" deletes the requested number of nibbles from the Save Stack and adjusts pointers.

At the end of every statement execution, the available memory end pointer AVMEME is reset to the top of the FOR/NEXT Stack, thereby collapsing the Math Stack and the Save Stack.

The Save Stack is used by POLL to save polling information. It is also used by COPY, TRANSFORM and RUN to save source and destination file information.

3.5.9 FOR/NEXT Stack

At the time a FOR statement executes, information is pushed on the FOR/NEXT Stack. This stack is referenced and/or altered any time a FOR or NEXT statement is encountered.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

<Low>	+-----+	
	Return Address	5 nibbles
	+-----+	
	Step Value	16 nibbles
<High>	+-----+	
	Limit	16 nibbles
	+-----+	
	Encoding of Var Name	4 nibbles
	+-----+	

The encoding of the variable name depends on whether the variable is alpha-digit or not. In the case of an alpha variable, the low byte is the ASCII letter and the following byte is zeroes; for alpha-digit variables, the low byte is the alpha-digit token and the following byte is the ASCII letter. The alpha-digit token has 6 in the high nibble, and the digit in the low nibble.

3.5.10 GOSUB Stack

The GOSUB Stack resides between the FOR/NEXT Stack and the active variable space. The pointer GSBSTK points to the top of the GOSUB Stack. The GOSUB Stack is typically used to save return addresses, such as the return address of a call to a subroutine, but may also be used to store other addresses and indicators.

Associated with each address on the GOSUB Stack is a return type nibble.

<Low>	+-----+	
	Return Type	1 nibble
<High>	+-----+	
	Return Address	5 nibbles
	+-----+	

The return type encoding is:

- 0 Return to Program
- 1 Return to Keyboard
- 2 ON TIMER#1 ... GOSUB
- 3 ON TIMER#2 ... GOSUB
- 4 ON TIMER#3 ... GOSUB
- 8 Machine Code Return
- 9-E Special Return Types: Future statement extensions
- F Update Address (Nonzero) or
Boundary Address (Zero)

Return to program is the standard GOSUB from within a BASIC program.

Return to keyboard is a GOSUB initiated from the keyboard. The

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

statement buffer is collapsed before returning to the keyboard.

Return from an ON TIMER, return type 2-4, reactivates the appropriate timer before returning to the statement following the GOSUB within a program.

Machine code return is a return to a binary program that called a BASIC program. The routine "PSHMCR" pushes the passed return address on the GOSUB Stack and tags it as a machine code return. The routine "POPGSB" pops an address and return type off the GOSUB Stack.

Special return types: 9-E are available for future statements or statement extensions needing special processing on return from a GOSUB. An example is ON TIMER...GOSUB needing to reactivate the timer before returning. The RETURN statement polls on special return type (pRTNtp) if within the range of 9-E.

A nonzero address of return type "F" indicates an update address. The system will not return control to an update address, but will update the address whenever memory moves. This is a convenient place to store pointers to segments of memory which may move. The routine "PSHUPD" pushes the passed address onto the GOSUB Stack and tags it as an update address. The routine "POPUPD" pops an address and return type off the GOSUB Stack. If an update address is encountered during RETURN execution, it is not popped off and the error "RTN w/o GOSUB" is generated.

A zero address of return type "F" indicates an environment boundary, however. Such an address marks the end of the environment for a user-defined function. If a RETURN statement is encountered and the end of an environment is reached, the error "RTN w/o GOSUB" is generated. The boundary mark is not popped off the GOSUB Stack.

3.5.11 Variable Storage

Variables are kept in memory immediately above (higher address) the GOSUB Stack. Currently active variables exist between the pointers ACTIVE and CALSTK. A complete description of this area is in the "Internal Data Representation" chapter.

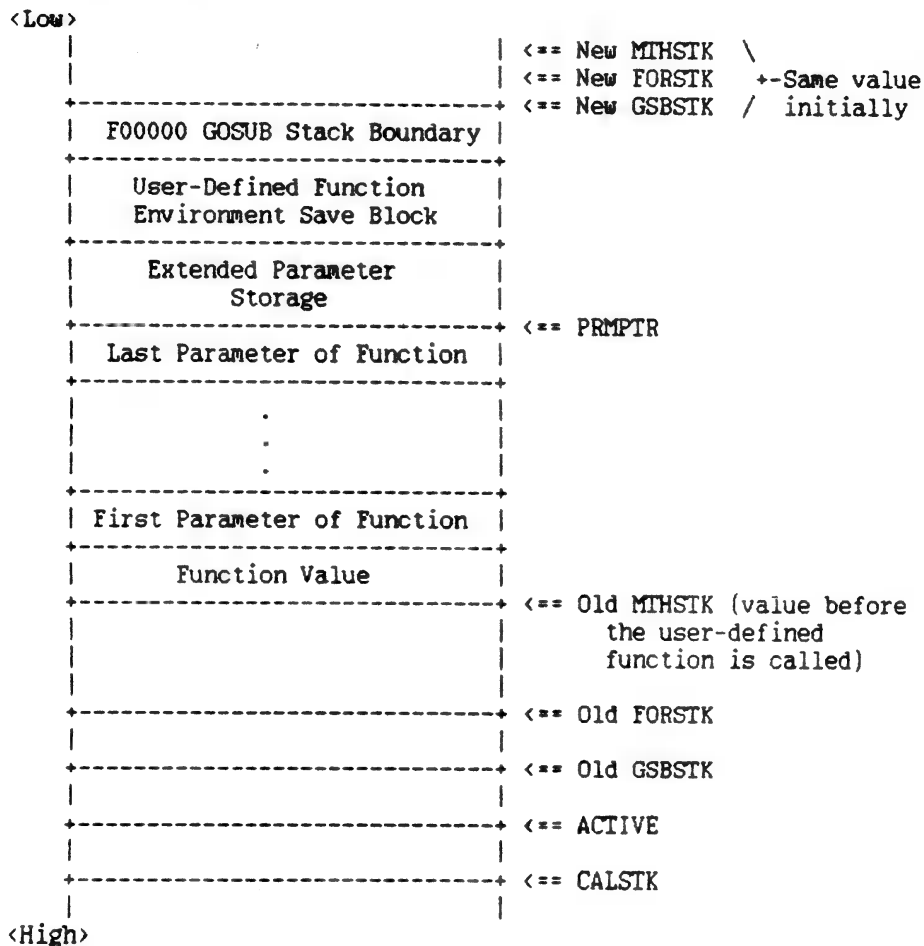
3.5.12 User-Defined Function Environment Stacking

When a user-defined function is called, a portion of the local environment is saved in an Environment Save Block which is placed on the GOSUB stack in much the same manner as the local environment is saved on the CALL stack when the CALL statement is executed.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

The following diagram shows the structure of memory immediately after a user-defined function has been called:



3.5.12.1 Environment Save Block

The User-defined Function Environment Save Block is located after the end of the GOSUB Stack (which is marked by F00000). It contains the following data:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

ENVIRONMENT SAVE AREA

USER-DEFINED FUNCTION SAVE BLOCK FORMAT

Return address	5 nibbles	-->	These pointers
PCADDR saved	5		are adjusted
CNTADR saved	5		
STMTD0 saved	5		when memory
3 hardware return addresses	15	-->	moves.
STMTD1 saved	5		
STMTRO saved	16		
STMTR1 saved	16		
Offset to previous MTHSTK	5		
Offset to previous FORSTK	5		
Offset to previous GSBSTK	5		
Previous parameter count	2		
Offset to previous PRMPTR+2	5		
STISAVE saved	3		
CHN#SV	2		
Return type	1		

Return address - Continue execution address when ENDDF is executed.

PCADDR,CNTADR,STMTD0 - Updated when memory moves.

Hardware return stack addresses - Three addresses will be popped off the hardware return stack and saved. This means if an assembly routine calls the expression execution routine, only the last three return addresses in the hardware return stack will be preserved.

STMTD1 - This saved pointer will be adjusted when a new variable is created while executing a user-defined function.

STMTRO - This is the same as S-R0-0 ... S-R0-3. If the first five nibbles of STMTRO(S-R0-0) contain a memory address (>10000 Hex) and the first hardware return address saved is =STORE, S-R0-0 will be adjusted when a new variable is created.

STMTR1 - This is the same as S-R1-0 ... S-R1-3.

Offset to previous MTHSTK,.. PRMPTR+2 - These pointers are saved as relative addresses. Adding the offset to where it is saved points to the previous pointer.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

Return type - 0 : User-defined function is called from a
program statement.
1 : User-defined function is called from a
keyboard expression.
8 : User-defined function is called by a
Binary routine.

3.5.12.2 Extended Parameter Storage

The value of string or complex parameters is stored in this area.
The extended value is pointed to by the parameter value.

3.5.13 Subprogram CALL Environment Stacking

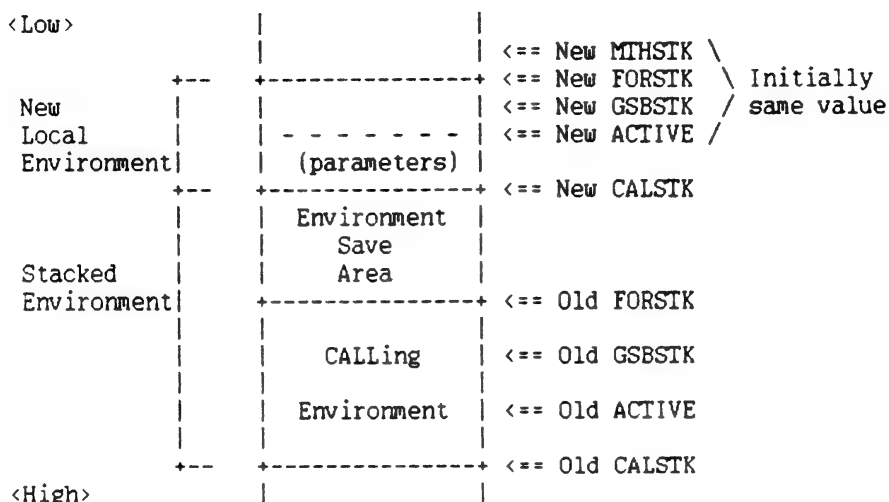
When a subprogram is called, a new local environment must be created. Before this can happen, the old calling environment must be saved by "pushing" it onto the CALL Stack. The process is performed in three steps.

First, an area is opened immediately before the current FOR/NEXT Stack to hold information blocks which contain pointers and other data about the current environment. The operating system writes one save block and then issues a poll to allow any LEX files present to add other blocks. This area is called the Environment Save Area, and is described below. It is also referred to as the Subprogram Save Stack.

Next, the current environment is "pushed" onto the CALL Stack by adjusting the pointer CALSTK to the start of the newly created Environment Save Area.

Finally, the new local environment is created and the pointers ACTIVE, GSBSTK, FORSTK, and MTHSTK are adjusted as shown below. The initial active variables are the parameters passed to the subprogram.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure



Each CALL statement adds a level to the CALL Stack by saving the current environment and each END SUB removes a level from the CALL Stack by restoring the previous environment.

The CALL Stack is bounded by the CALSTK and RAMEND pointers (when CALSTK equals RAMEND there are no saved environments).

3.5.13.1 Environment Save Area

The execution of CALL stacks more than just the GOSUB Stack, the FOR/NEXT Stack and the local variables. It creates an area below (in lower memory) the FOR/NEXT Stack to hold information about the environment which is being suspended. This area is called the Environment Save Area or the Subprogram Save Stack.

It is filled by a linked list of information blocks called Environment Save Blocks. Each block may contain a list of addresses to be updated when memory moves, as well as other data. The block begins with a 2 nibble ID followed by a 5 nibble link field which points to the next block in the list. This is followed by a 1 nibble field specifying a number (0 to 15) of 5 nibble update addresses (which will be updated when memory moves), and then that number of update addresses. Any remaining area in the block may be used for arbitrary data and is not updated.

The first save block is created by the mainframe CALL statement. Its ID is 00, and marks the end of the linked list. This block is always 89 nibbles in total length.

At CALLing time, after the mainframe creates its save block, it polls (pCALSV) to give LEX files a chance to add a save block to

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Memory Structure

this area. Each poll handler that has anything to save is expected to create another block (growing into available memory) in the same format.

The save block created by the mainframe has the following contents:

ENVIRONMENT SAVE AREA

MAINFRAME SAVE BLOCK FORMAT

<Low>		LEX ID (00)	2 nibbles	
		Entry length (04F)	3	
Number of addresses to update (A)		1		--+
+-- CURRST saved		5		
PRGMST saved		5		
PRGMEN saved		5		
Addresses	CURREN saved	5		
updated	PCADDR saved	5		
when memory	CNTADR saved	5		
moves	ERRSUB saved	5		
	ERRADR saved	5		
	ONINTR saved	5		
	+-- DATPTR saved	5		
	+-- Offset to previous FORSTK	5		
	Offset to previous GSBSTK	5		
Misc.	Offset to previous ACTIVE	5		
Info	Offset to previous CALSTK	5		
	Parameter count saved	2		
	Offset to previous PRMPTR+2	5		
	+-- Return type	1		--+
<High>				

84 nibs
= 04F hex

LEX ID

For the block created by the mainframe this field is 00. This indicates the end of the linked list and that the suspended FOR/STACK, GOSUB Stack and variables follow immediately. For blocks created by lex files, this field should be filled in with the LEX ID of the file creating it. It serves as a tag field to identify the block later when the return from subprogram causes the Restore CALLing Environment poll (PCALRS).

Entry Length

This field is always 84 (04F hex) for the block created by the mainframe. This number includes everything in the block starting from the next nibble (the update address count nibble) to the end of the block (the return type nibble). This length does not include the LEX ID field or

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

the entry length field itself.

Number of Addresses to Update

For the mainframe, this nibble is always 10 (A hex), reflecting the number of following pointers that require updating when memory moves. Blocks created by LEX files may have from 0 to 15 addresses updated.

Addresses to be Updated

The previous field specifies how many 5 nibble addresses are included here. The 10 address fields in the mainframe block are used to save the following memory pointers for restoration later: CURRST, PRGMST, PRGMEN, CURREN, PCADDR, CNTADR, ERRSUB, ERRADR, ERRSUB, ERRADR, ONINTR and DATPTR. Whenever program memory moves, these addresses stored here will be updated to reflect the new address of the thing they point to.

Miscellaneous Information

After the addresses to be updated described above, the remainder of the block has a format specified individually for that type of block. The block created by the mainframe has the following fields:

Offset to previous FORSTK ... CALSTK

These pointers of the calling program environment are saved as relative addresses. Adding the offset to where it is saved points to the previous pointer.

Parameter Count

One byte field. If zero then currently not in a user-defined function; if nonzero, then represents parameter count - 1 of the user-defined function.

PRMPTR

This is a 5 nibble pointer to the first parameter in the user-defined function's parameter chain.

Return type

If =0, CALL is from a BASIC program.
If =1, CALL is from a Binary program.

3.6 Plug-in ROM and Independent RAM

The format of a plug-in ROM module is the same as for a RAM module configured as an Independent RAM, with the exception of the first eight nibbles of the module which contain the Stand Alone Module ID. Either form of plug-in memory module contains a file chain,

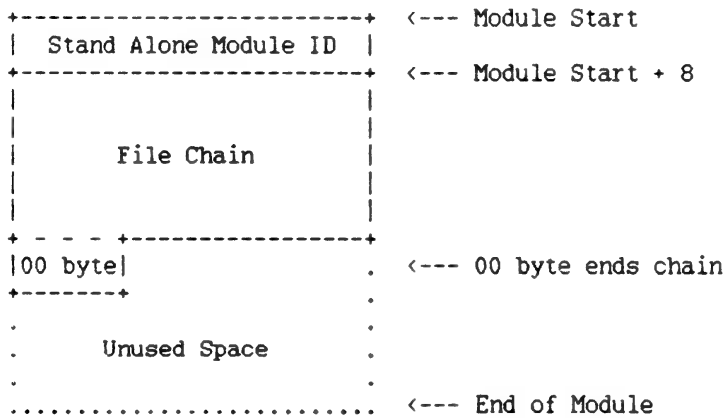
HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

starting in the ninth nibble, that is identical in format to the MAIN file chain.

Throughout the following discussion, the term ROM will be used as a general name for a stand alone memory module, whether it be a plug-in ROM module or an Independent RAM.

3.6.1 Standard Configuration

The general format of every stand alone memory module is as follows:



3.6.2 Stand Alone Module ID

The Stand Alone Module ID field is used to distinguish an Independent RAM from other forms of memory modules. For Independent RAMs, this field has the hex value B3DDDDDE (the B is in the lowest-addressed nibble of the module). For ROMs and all other forms of memory modules, this field may have any value except the IRAM value.

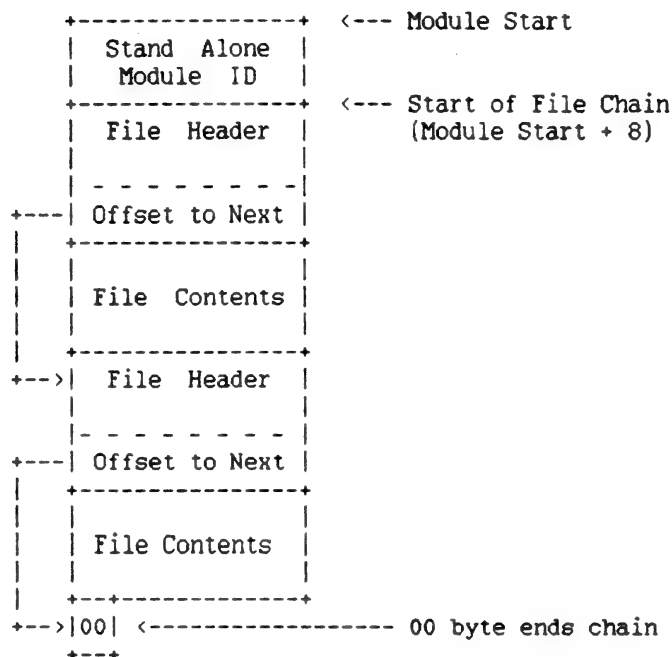
3.6.3 File Chain Layout

Each file entry in the chain begins with a file header which contains the file name and other identifying information about the file. The format of the file header is the same as that used in the MAIN file chain, and is described in the "File System" chapter. As in the MAIN file chain, a stand alone module file chain is terminated by a zero byte in the first character of a file header

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

name field.



3.6.4 Take Over ROM

Take-over ROMs come in two flavors: soft-configured and hard-configured.

3.6.4.1 Hard-Configured Takeover ROM

A hard-configured take-over ROM must be plugged into port 1, where, by virtue of shorting certain lines together, it will disable the system ROMs. This ROM should be hard-configured in the address space occupied by the HP-71 system ROMs, as it is replacing them.

A problem occurs when installing such a ROM: where is the CPU's program counter? This is a problem when 1) the takeover ROM is plugged in, and must resume execution from the HP-71 ROM, and 2) the takeover ROM is unplugged, and HP-71 must resume execution. It is virtually impossible for HP-71 to guarantee the position of the PC, except during deep sleep. During deep sleep, the PC spends most of its time pointing just past the SHUTDOWN in the deep sleep routine. However, the processor does occasionally wake up to

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

process clock system requests and whatever else may request service.

If the hard-configured takeover ROM uses memory in such a way that it is incompatible with the HP-71 operating system, the ROM should perform its own version of cold start when it is plugged in and unplugging it should force the HP-71's built in operating system to perform a coldstart.

A few simple rules will facilitate this:

- 1) HP-71 should be turned off when plugging in a hard-configured takeover ROM.
- 2) The takeover ROM should expect control to be passed to it at the address just past HP-71's deepsleep SHUTDOWN (address = 5E2). This is where the PC is most likely to be.
- 3) The takeover ROM should be at a shutdown when unplugging it.
- 4) The takeover ROM shutdown should position the PC at the HP-71 coldstart code (label CLDST1).
- 5) The takeover ROM should use a different CMOS testword from HP-71, this will cause the built in operating system to coldstart as soon as it is reenabled (at time of next interrupt). In general, the CMOS test word should be unique for each take over ROM and should be used to determine if memory is "okay" for that particular hard configured take over ROM.

It is conceivable that a hard configured takeover ROM might be made compatible with the built-in operating system so that it may be plugged in or removed without loss of memory contents. In this case, the ROM should use the same CMOS test word as the built in operating system.

3.6.4.2 Soft-Configured Takeover ROM

A soft-configured takeover ROM avoids many of the problems of a hard-configured ROM. It is useful for adding subsystems to the HP-71, such as a pocket secretary. It can simply grab control of the machine at an appropriate time, such as Wake-up poll or Powerdown poll. This is essentially a mode, not a new machine.

In general, a soft-configured takeover ROM should not mess with HP-71 operating system RAM. It is an extension of HP-71, and more than likely is interacting with HP-71 code in the system ROMs.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

A major limitation of soft-configured take-over ROMs is that it is very difficult for them to change the system's configuration. Doing a bus reset (unconfigure all chips) will unconfigure itself, making it impossible to execute any more code from the ROM. A soft-configured ROM, barring some very clever programming, will have to live with the HP-71 system configuration.

3.7 Available Memory Management

The term "available memory" refers to the area of RAM between the boundaries pointed to by AVMEMS (available memory start) and AVMEME (available memory end). This region supplies the memory for new allocations on the various system stacks, which cause AVMEME to grow toward AVMEMS. This region also supplies the memory for the system's output buffer, which is used to hold the tokens output by the parsing process and for various other system functions which cause AVMEMS to grow toward AVMEME.

In addition, activities which increase the size of the main RAM file chain (such as creating or enlarging a file in the chain), the size of the system buffer area (creating or enlarging a system buffer), or the size of the Command Stack, will also cause AVMEMS to grow toward AVMEME.

A minimum amount of available memory is therefore necessary for the operating system to function. This minimum amount is 106 bytes, and is referred to as LEEWAY, which is a globally defined symbol in the operating system equate file (see file TI&EQU in Volume III of this document).

Whenever an operation system activity must consume available memory, a check is performed according to the following conventions:

- * If the memory allocation is permanent (that is, after the activity is completed, the memory will remain allocated), then available memory must not dip below LEEWAY. Examples of permanent allocations are creating a system buffer, creating a variable, adding to the GOSUB Stack, FOR/NEXT Stack, or the CALL Stack.
- * If the memory allocation is temporary (that is, after the activity is completed, the memory will be released), then available memory may dip below LEEWAY. Examples of temporary allocations are: parsing or decompiling into the output buffer, expression evaluation using the Math Stack, preparing messages for display, or issuing a poll (which saves 31 bytes on the SAVSTK).

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

When an insufficient memory condition has been detected and reported, the user must be able to perform certain commands, such as CAT, PURGE, COPY or END, in order to release memory in a safe manner so that the system is again usable.

To allow these activities to occur during low memory, the following special cases of LEEWAY checking have been implemented:

- * When a command is added to the Command Stack that causes a dip below LEEWAY, previous commands will be crushed to null, starting with the oldest, until LEEWAY is reached or only 1 command remains.
- * When the statement buffer is expanded to accept the tokenized statement, LEEWAY is not checked.
- * Leeway is not checked when COPY saves its file info on the Save Stack.
- * The poll routine does not check LEEWAY when saving poll info on the Save Stack.

The value of of LEEWAY has been set to allow a file to be copied to an external device. This requires the following amount of memory:

Command Stack to enter COPY command	25 bytes
To move tokenized COPY statement into statement buffer	25 bytes
Save COPY file info on the Save Stack	25 bytes
Issue COPY poll to external device	31 bytes

LEEWAY	= 106 bytes

If a LEX file or other user-supplied code causes the memory available to the operating system to shrink below this minimum, catastrophic failure may occur. For example, if available memory has shrunk so far below LEEWAY that the error message handling routines do not have enough room to build the "Insufficient Memory" error message, the system will loop infinitely attempting to process the message.

See the "Message Handling" chapter for a discussion of the chapter discusses the MEMCKL utility which checks available memory with or without LEEWAY.

3.8 Handling Memory Movement

Whenever file memory is moved due to adding data to or deleting data from the MAIN file chain or an IRAM file chain, the various system pointers which reference the file system and neighboring areas of memory may need to be adjusted. RFADJ is the utility called after such a memory move, to examine these pointers and make

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

the necessary adjustments. There are two major routines which make up RFADJ: RFADJ- (used when memory moves to lower addresses, as with a PURGE of a file [MOVEMU called] and RFADJ+ (used when memory moves to higher addresses [MOVEMD called]).

Entry conditions parallel requirements for calling MOVEUx and MOVEDx (move memory routines): Begin Source, Begin Destination, and End Source, are referred to in this context. Note that the End Source address is the address of the nibble that immediately follows the last nibble in the source block. Therefore, the source block is null when Begin Source equals End Source.

B(A) is assumed to be an offset: Begin source - Begin destination.

Algorithms:

RFADJ- : Save begin source in R0
RFAD-- : Position D1 at AVMEMS ram location

The following entry point can be used by memory movement on plug-ins. It assumes D1 is positioned at a ram location which contains 'AVMEMS' of that plug-in, i.e., the address after the last file in the chain.

RFAD-I : Save begin destination in R1 (R0+B)
D(S) <-- 1 (flags which way mem is moving)
Call RFAD58 (Updates addresses on FOR and
GOSUB Stacks)
Call RFAD97 (Updates addresses in RAM locations
PCADDR-->TMRAD3 - zeroes out those
referencing purged address space)
Goto PCUPD+

RFADJ+ : Save begin source in R0
RFAD++ : Position D1 at AVMEMS ram location

RFAD+I : D(S) <-- 0 (flags which way mem is moving)
Call RFAD58 (Updates addresses on FOR and
GOSUB Stacks)
Call RFAD86 (Updates addresses in RAM locations
PCADDR-->TMRAD3)

PCUPD+ : Updates CURRST-->AVMEMS
.
.
.
PCUPDT : .

Address updating:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Memory Structure

```
If address < End Source
  THEN If address >= Begin Source
    THEN update (add offset).
```

```
Address zeroing: (Done only if D(S)≠0)
  If address < Begin Source
    THEN If address >= Begin Destination
      THEN zero it.
```

The following references are NEVER zeroed:

- 1) Addresses on FOR/NEXT Stack
- 2) CURRST-->AVMEMS

3.8.1 In Configuration Buffer Area

Configuration buffers are only manipulated during execution of the configuration code. Following is a summary of the effects of configuration buffer manipulation on various system pointers.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Memory Structure

HP-71 REFERENCE ADJUSTMENTS -- CONFIGURATION BUFFERS

B ::= Updated only if Begin Source <= address < Begin Dest
A ::= Updated only if Begin Source < address < Begin Dest
U ::= Unconditionally updated (offset always added to pointer)
Z ::= Address set to 0 if Begin Dest <= address < Begin Source
* ::= Not updated

Actions:		ACTION ON CONFIGURATION BUFFERS		
Create	::= Item created			
Expand	::= Buffer expands	C	E	C
Contract	::= Buffer shrinks	r	x	o
		e	p	n
		a	a	t
		t	n	r
		e	d	a
				c
				t
System Pointers:				
MAINST - MAIN File Chain Start		U	U	U
CURRST - Current File Start		B	B	B
PRGMST - Current Program Start		B	B	B
PRGMEN - Current Program End		B	B	B
CURREN - Current File End		B	B	B
MAINEN - MAIN File Chain End		B	B	B
CLCBFR - CALC Mode Buffer Start		B	B	B
RFBFR - CALC Mode Refined Buffer		B	B	B
RAWBFR - CALC Mode Raw Buffer		B	B	B
CLCSTK - CALC Mode Token Stack		B	B	B
SYSEN - System RAM End		B	B	B
OUTBS - Output Buffer Start		B	B	B
AVMEMS - Available Memory Start		B	B	B
AVMEME - Top Math Stack		*	*	*
FORSTK - Top FOR/NEXT Stack		*	*	*
GSBSTK - Top GOSUB Stack		*	*	*
ACTIVE - Active Variable Pointer		*	*	*
CALSTK - CALL Stack		*	*	*
RAMEND - User RAM End		*	*	*

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

Pointers in System Buffers :			
LEX BUFFER Pointers	B	B	B
FIB: File Begin Field	B	B	B
FIB: Data Start Field	B	B	B
Pointers Within Environments:			
FOR/NEXT Stack Addresses	B	B	B
GOSUB Stack Update Addresses	B	B	B
Miscellaneous Pointers:			
PCADDR - Program Ctr at Stmt len	B	B	B
CNTADR - Continue Address	B	B	B
ERRSUB - ON ERROR-GOSUB Rtn Addr	B	B	B
ERRADR - ON ERROR Statement Addr	B	B	B
ONINTR - ON INTRPT Statement Addr	B	B	B
DATPTR - DATA Statement Pointer	B	B	B
TMRAD1 - ON TIMER#1 Statement Addr	B	B	B
TMRAD2 - ON TIMER#2 Statement Addr	B	B	B
TMRAD3 - ON TIMER#3 Statement Addr	B	B	B
Note that these are NEVER UPDATED:			
INBS - Input buffer start	*	*	*
SNAPBF - Snapshot Buffer Addresses	*	*	*
RSTKBF - Rtn Stack Save Buf Adrs	*	*	*

3.8.2 In a File Chain

When file memory moves, system pointers such as CURRST may need to be adjusted. In this case the routine RFADJ (Reference Adjust) must be called to handle the updating of all of these pointers. This routine examines each pointer to determine whether or not it was affected by the memory move; all affected pointers are updated.

RFADJ examines pointers DSPCHX through TMRAD3, CURRST through AVMEMS, all pointers in FIB's, and pointers on the FOR/NEXT Stack,

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

GOSUB Stack, and CALL Stack. Pointers which reference purged address space are zeroed out (this does not include any pointer which pointed at the begin destination of the memory move - For example, if the file following the current file was purged, CURREN would NOT be zeroed out).

When files move to a lower address (as when a file is purged), RFADJ- is called; if files are on a plug-in, RFAD-I is the entry point to use. When files move to a higher address (as when a file expands), RFADJ+ is called; if files are on a plug-in, RFAD+I is the entry point to use.

HP-71 REFERENCE ADJUSTMENTS -- FILE MEMORY MOVES

B ::= Updated only if Begin Source <= address < Begin Dest
A ::= Updated only if Begin Source < address < Begin Dest
U ::= Unconditionally updated (offset always added to pointer)
Z ::= Address set to 0 if Begin Dest <= address < Begin Source
* ::= Not updated

Actions:		ACTION ON FILE= ACTION ON FILE IN MAINFRAME = IN IRAM								
Create	::= Item created	C	P	A	W	=	C	P	A	W
Purge	::= Item purged	r	u	t	i	=	r	u	t	i
At end	::= Movement at end	e	r		t	=	e	r		t
Within	::= Item grows/shrinks in the middle	a	g	e	h	=	a	g	e	h
		t	e	n	i	=	t	e	n	i
		e		d	n	=	e		d	n
-----		-----								
System Pointers:						=				
						=				
						=				
MAINST	- MAIN File Chain Start	*	*	*	*	=	*	*	*	*
CURRST	- Current File Start	*	B	B	B	=	*	B	B	B
PRGMST	- Current Program Start	*	B	B	B	=	*	B	B	B
PRGMEN	- Current Program End	*	B	B	B	=	*	B	B	B
CURREN	- Current File End	*	B	B	B	=	*	B	B	B
MAINEN	- MAIN File Chain End	U	U	U	U	=	*	*	*	*
CLCBFR	- CALC Mode Buffer Start	U	U	U	U	=	*	*	*	*
RENBFR	- CALC Mode Refined Buff	U	U	U	U	=	*	*	*	*
RAUBFR	- CALC Mode Raw Buffer	U	U	U	U	=	*	*	*	*

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Memory Structure

CLCSTK - CALC Mode Token Stack	U	U	U	U	=	*	*	*	*
SYSEN - System RAM End	U	U	U	U	=	*	*	*	*
OUTBS - Output Buffer Start	U	U	U	U	=	*	*	*	*
AVMEMS - Available Memory Start	U	U	U	U	=	*	*	*	*
					=				
AVMEME - Top Math Stack	*	*	*	*	=	*	*	*	*
FORSTK - Top FOR/NEXT Stack	*	*	*	*	=	*	*	*	*
GSEBTK - Top GOSUB Stack	*	*	*	*	=	*	*	*	*
ACTIVE - Active Variable Pointer	*	*	*	*	=	*	*	*	*
CALSTK - CALL Stack	*	*	*	*	=	*	*	*	*
RAMEND - User RAM End	*	*	*	*	=	*	*	*	*
					=				

Pointers in System Buffers :					=				
					=				
LEX BUFFER Pointers	B	BZ	B	B	=	B	BZ	B	B
FIB: File Begin Field	B	BZ	B	B	=	B	BZ	B	B
FIB: Data Start Field	A	A	A	A	=	B	AZ	A	A
					=				

Pointers Within Environments:					=				
					=				
FOR/NEXT Stack Addresses	B	B	B	B	=	B	B	B	B
GOSUB/RETURN Addresses	B	BZ	B	B	=	B	B	B	B
					=				

Miscellaneous Pointers:					=				
					=				
PCADDR - Program Ctr at Stmt len	B	BZ	B	B	=	B	B	B	B
CNTADR - Continue Address	B	BZ	B	B	=	B	B	B	B
ERRSUB - ON ERROR-GOSUB Rtn Addr	B	BZ	B	B	=	B	B	B	B
ERRADR - ON ERROR Stmt Addr	B	BZ	B	B	=	B	B	B	B
ONINTR - ON INTRPT Stmt Addr	B	BZ	B	B	=	B	B	B	B
DATPTR - DATA Statement Pointer	B	BZ	B	B	=	B	B	B	B
TMRAD1 - ON TIMER#1 Stmt Addr	B	BZ	B	B	=	B	B	B	B
TMRAD2 - ON TIMER#2 Stmt Addr	B	BZ	B	B	=	B	B	B	B
TMRAD3 - ON TIMER#3 Stmt Addr	B	BZ	B	B	=	B	B	B	B
					=				

NOTE -- THESE ARE NEVER UPDATED:					=				
					=				
INBS - Input buffer start	*	*	*	*	=	*	*	*	*
SNAPBF - Snapshot Buffer Address	*	*	*	*	=	*	*	*	*
RSTKBF - Rtn Stack Save Buf Addr	*	*	*	*	=	*	*	*	*
					=				

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Memory Structure

3.8.3 In System Buffer Area

When an buffer is created or deallocated, or when an existing buffer is expanded or contracted, pointers are updated to reflect this. All pointers in the RAM map between IOBFEN and AVMEMS, inclusive, are updated by a call to PTRAD2 from within the System buffer code.

HP-71 REFERENCE ADJUSTMENTS -- BUFFERS

B ::= Updated only if Begin Source <= address < Begin Dest
A ::= Updated only if Begin Source < address < Begin Dest
U ::= Unconditionally updated (offset always added to pointer)
Z ::= Address set to 0 if Begin Dest <= address < Begin Source
* ::= Not updated

Actions:

Create ::= Item created

Purge ::= Item purged

At end ::= Movement at end

Within ::= Item grows/shrinks
in the middle

ACTION ON I/O BUFFERS			
C	P	A	W
r	u	t	i
e	r		t
a	g	e	h
t	e	n	i
e		d	n

System Pointers:

MAINST - MAIN File Chain Start

CURRST - Current File Start

PRGMST - Current Program Start

PRGMEN - Current Program End

CURREN - Current File End

MAINEN - MAIN File Chain End

CLCBFR - CALC Mode Buffer Start

RENBFR - CALC Mode Refined Buffer

RAWBFR - CALC Mode Raw Buffer

CLCSTK - CALC Mode Token Stack

SYSEN - System RAM End

OUTBS - Output Buffer Start

*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*
U	U	U	U
U	U	U	U
U	U	U	U
U	U	U	U
U	U	U	U
U	U	U	U

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Memory Structure

AVMEMS - Available Memory Start	U	U	U	U
AVMEME - Top Math Stack	*	*	*	*
FORSTK - Top FOR/NEXT Stack	*	*	*	*
GSBSTK - Top GOSUB Stack	*	*	*	*
ACTIVE - Active Variable Pointer	*	*	*	*
CALSTK - CALL Stack	*	*	*	*
RAMEND - User RAM End	*	*	*	*

Pointers in System Buffers :				
LEX BUFFER Pointers	*	*	*	*
FIB: File Begin Field	*	*	*	*
FIB: Data Start Field	*	*	*	*

Pointers Within Environments:				
FOR/NEXT Stack Addresses	*	*	*	*
GOSUB/RETURN Addresses	*	*	*	*

Miscellaneous Pointers:				
PCADDR - Program Ctr at Stmt len	*	*	*	*
CNTADR - Continue Address	*	*	*	*
ERRSUB - ON ERROR-GOSUB Rtn Addr	*	*	*	*
ERRADR - ON ERROR Statement Addr	*	*	*	*
ONINTR - ON INTRPT Statement Addr	*	*	*	*
DATPTR - DATA Statement Pointer	*	*	*	*
TMRAD1 - ON TIMER#1 Statement Addr	*	*	*	*
TMRAD2 - ON TIMER#2 Statement Addr	*	*	*	*
TMRAD3 - ON TIMER#3 Statement Addr	*	*	*	*

Note that these are NEVER UPDATED:				
INBS - Input buffer start	*	*	*	*
SNAPBF - Snapshot Buffer Addresses	*	*	*	*
RSTKBF - Rtn Stack Save Buf Addr	*	*	*	*

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Control

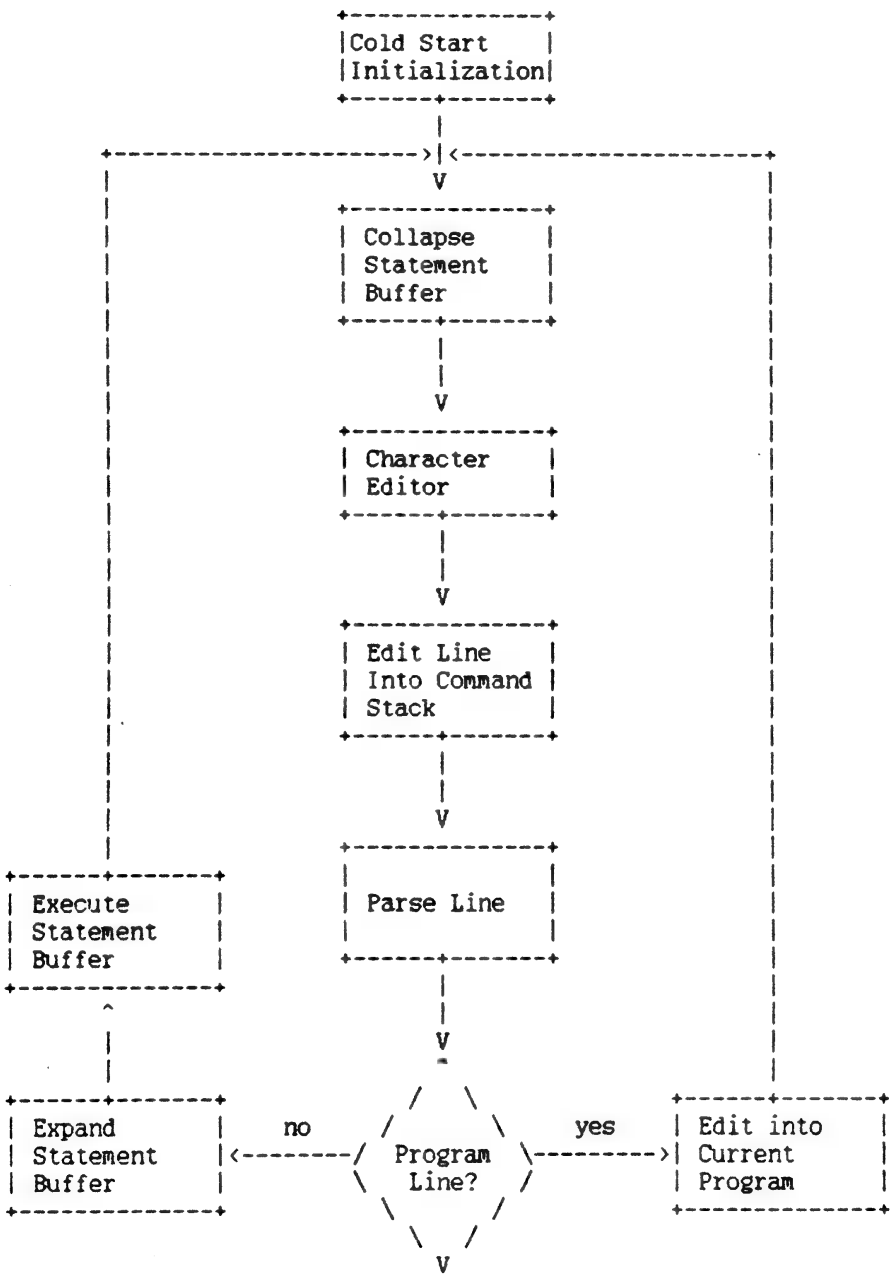
SYSTEM CONTROL	CHAPTER 4
----------------	-----------

This chapter describes the fundamental algorithms which control the behavior of the operating system. The over-all process by which the system repeatedly waits for and then processes the next command, is generally referred to as the "main loop."

The following diagrams and detailed algorithms describe the main loop and its related processes.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Control

4.1 Main Loop Flow Diagram



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Control

4.2 Algorithm

4.2.1 Cold Start

- Enables interrupt system
- Initialize CMOS test word
- Initialize system RAM to zeroes
- Reset display
- Turn display on
- Set display row drivers
- Set display contrast nibble
- Initialize DELAY parameters
- Perform ColdStart configure
- Create Statement Buffer
- Initialize clock system
- Check for low battery
- Initialize flags and traps
- Zero RAM between AVMEMS and RAMEND
- Clear AUTO mode
- Clear program running flag
- Clear don't continue flag
- Initialize IS-TBL table
- Initialize PRINT and DISP position and width
- Initialize ENDLINE string
- Put Coldstart message in display
- Create Workfile
- Create file information buffer
- Initialize random number seed
- Perform coldstart fast poll

4.2.2 Main Loop, Wakeup, Power Off, Deep Sleep

MAINLP: If MakeOff (flMKOF) is set then
 Set TurnOff (flTNOF)
 Clear MakeOff (flMKOF)
 Go to PWROFF
 If TurnOff (flTNOF) is set then
 Go to PWROFF
 If CALC mode (flCALC) is set then
 Give control back to CALC mode w/error
 Fast Poll (pMNLP)
 If in AUTO mode then
 Display Line; goto Wakeup
MAIN05: If CALC mode (flCALC) is set then

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Control

```
        Give control back to CALC mode w/error
        Clear program annunciator & status bit
        Set Dormant flag (fldORM)
        If ATTN key has been pressed then
            Go to ATTNTN
        If Don't Prompt flag (flNOPR) is set then
            Go to WAKEUP
        If scrolling needed (NEEDSC) then
            Allow user to scroll
        If ATTN key has been pressed then
            Go to ATTNTN
        Send prompt string consisting of
            Cursor off, prompt character(">"),
            Cursor on
WAKEUP:  If ATTN key has been pressed then
            Go to ATTNTN
        Clear Don't Continue flag (NoCont)
        Collapse math stack
        Collapse AVMEMS,OUTBS,SYSEN to CLCSTK
        Clear Don't Prompt flag (flNOPR)
        Collapse statement buffer (bSTMT)
        Delete Immediate Execute Key buffer (bIEXKY)
        Set "Dormant" flag (fldORM)
        Call Character Editor
        If Immediate Execute Key then
            Go to IEXKEY
        If its not a cursor up or down key then
            Turn off command stack mode (flCMDS)
        Clear "Dormant" flag (fldORM)
        Clear Attention Flag so HPIL won't abort
        Move cursor to far right of display
        Go to appropriate place to process key
            Endline          (LINEP)
            Attention        (ATTNTN)
            RUN key          (RUNK)
            CONT key         (CONTK)
            SST key          (SST)
            Cursor Up        (CURSUj)
            Cursor Down      (CURSDj)
            Cursor Top       (CURSTj)
            Cursor Bottom    (CURSBj)
            G-Attention      (ATTNTN)
            CALC Mode key    (CALC)
            Off key          (PWROFF)
            Command Stack    (CMDSTK)

ATTNTN:  Flush key buffer
        If line feed (LF) wasn't last character sent to display
            then Call FINLIN to terminate previous display line
        Clear "need to scroll" flag (NOSCRL)
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Control

Clear AUTO mode
Go to MAINLP

PWROFF: Set flPWDN
Call DPS010 to go to DSLEEP
If there is an external command buffer
Go to LINEP+ to process it
If there is an STARTUP buffer
Go to LINEP+ to process it
Go to MAINLP

DSLEEP: Clear =flPWDN flag (indicate that we were not
called from PWROFF).

DPS010: (Entry point for PWROFF).
If ON key down
Set ATTN flag and goto DSP040
If display-clear flag clear then goto DPS030
Send <cursor on>/CR/LF.

DPS030 Send <cursor off>

DPS035: Perform power-down poll.
Set TURNOFF (flTNOF) flag.
Clear MAKEOFF (flMKOF) flag.
Turn off display.
Clear f-g shift status bits.
Clear ATNFLG and ATNDIS.
Turn off timer #3 (Low battery check).
Activate KB row with ATTN key.
SHUTDN.

DPS040: Configure.
Deallocate external command buffer (to give poll
handlers a chance to create one if we were
called by PWROFF).
Check clock system
If ATTN key woke us up, goto DPS200.
If program running and ON TIMER pending
Clear =flTNOF; goto DPS200.
Perform pDSWKN poll (who woke us up??).
If turnoff flag set and ATNFLG clear then
goto DPS035

DPS200: Flush key buffer.
Clear flALRM flag.
=pDSWKY poll
Password processing (does not require password if
password=null or =flTNOF is clear).
If failed to unlock machine (password required but
not correctly given), goto DPS035.
AC/BAT check
RETURN

4.3 Interrupt Handling

The HP-71 CPU has a limited interrupt structure.

4.3.1 Causes of Interrupts

4.3.1.1 Keyboard Interrupts

An interrupt occurs whenever there have been no keys down and a key goes down. If there is already a key down then another key going down will not cause another interrupt. This type of interrupt is maskable. Only key rows activated by the lower 4 bits of the output register cause this type of interrupt. The ON-key does not cause this type of interrupt.

4.3.1.2 ON-Key Interrupt

This type of interrupt occurs when the ON (Attention) key is pressed. This interrupt is non-maskable. The ON-key receives special treatment by the hardware and is scanned during each instruction to check whether this key is down. The content of the output register is unimportant.

4.3.1.3 Module Pulled Interrupts

As a module is being plugged in or pulled out, it will briefly complete a connection which signals the CPU that this is happening. The CPU latches a status bit that indicates that a module has been pulled. This type of interrupt is non-maskable.

4.3.1.4 Other Interrupts

The CPU input register bit 14 is available to all ports. An interrupt occurs if some module pulls on this line. This type of interrupt is closely related to keyboard interrupts. The system interrupt routine has no provisions for processing this type of interrupt except to allow interrupts to be vectored to a specified address. This type of interrupt is maskable.

4.3.2 Interrupt Handling Algorithm

The system interrupt routine starts at address 0000F. The interrupt routine saves the A,B,C,D0,Carry,Hex/Dec Mode and P registers. It then checks for a module pulled interrupt. It then checks if the CMOS test word is intact and performs a COLDSTART if

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

System Control

not. If the interrupt vector address is non-zero it jumps to it. Otherwise it waits approximately 16 milliseconds to debounce the keyboard and performs a keyscan. When the keyscan is completed, all the registers are restored and a return from interrupt is done.

```
    Save C(W) in R4
    Save R4(5-15) and D0 in INTR4
    Save A(W) in INTA
    Save B(W) in INTB
    Save 1 stack level, Pointer, Carry, and Mode in INTM
    If this is a module pulled interrupt
        goto MPI
    If Interrupt Ignore Flag is set
        Clear it and goto RESTORE
    If CMOS test word is invalid
        Perform Cold start
    If VECTOR is non-zero
        Jump to that address
    Wait 8/512ths second to debounce keyboard
    Call KEYSCN
RESTORE:
    Restore Mode, Carry, Pointer and 1 Stack level
    Restore B(W)
    Restore A(W)
    Restore D0
    Restore C and R4
    Return from interrupt
```

4.4 Statement Parse

4.4.1 Initiation

Statement parse is initiated in one of four ways.

Statement parse usually begins when endline is entered from the keyboard. The display buffer moves to the command stack, which becomes the input buffer for parse (i.e., (INBS) is set to point to the entry in the command stack).

Statement parse also begins when the computer turns on and an external command buffer or a startup buffer exists; (INBS) is set to point into that buffer.

Statement parse is also initiated when a direct execute key is pressed; (INBS) is set to point at the key definition in the keys file.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Control

TRANSFORM also initiates statement parse.

In all cases, the output buffer is the destination of the internal token stream as it is generated.

If the input line is a legal program line, the contents of the output buffer is edited into the current program. Memory associated with the output buffer is released.

If the input line is a Calculator BASIC statement (including implied DISP) and computer is not performing a TRANSFORM, the compiled line is moved into the statement buffer and executed. If the computer is performing a TRANSFORM, an input line without a line number will cause a transform failure.

4.4.1.1 External Invoking of Parse

The entry point, LNPEXT, allows parse to be called externally and have control returned to the caller. This entry point will set a flag, flRTN, to indicate external entry. Line parse will alter status bits S0 thru S11 and S13; these status bits should be saved by the caller if necessary. The pointer INBS should point at the start of the line to parse, and OUTBS should point to the start of the output line. The input line must be terminated by a CR (ASCII 13) and be preceded by a 3 nibble line length (similar to buffer format).

If the parser takes an abnormal exit, due to a parse error or insufficient memory, control returns to the caller, with the error in C(A) and the carry set. If the parse was successful, carry is clear.

On return, flRTN should be cleared by the caller. See the LINEP routine for further information.

4.4.2 Statement Parse Algorithm

Algorithm:

Entry point for externally invoking parse (LNPEXT) saves the caller's return stack level in S-R0-2 and sets the system flag flRTN. flRTN flags that all error exits (including MEMERR) will return to the caller with carry set and the error number in C(A). Goto A.

NOTE: Anyone using LNPEXT entry point MUST clear flRTN as soon as it returns to them!

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Control

LINEP: (normal statement parse entry point)
Copy Display Buffer to Command Stack (MAKEBF)
Set INBS to start of input line in command stack
Send Carriage Return & Line Feed (CRLF0F)
(so next character will clear display buffer)

A: Set OUTBS to AVMEMS (Collapses Output buffer)
Point D1 to start of input line, using INBS
Clear S0-S11, S13
Set D(A) = End of Available Memory, using AVMEME
D0 = OUTBS (Output buffer start)
Call Block 1

Retokenize lexeme

If line#

Set S5; Decrement D0 (delete statement
length byte at buffer start); Output line#
Call Block 2

If tEOL

If externally invoked (flRTN set)
THEN error
ELSE clear AUTO flag; delete line

B: Decrement D0
Call Block 1.
Retokenize.

C: If Begin BASIC command (S3=1)
THEN goto I.
ELSE If System Command (S3=0, S0=1)
THEN error

D: If !
THEN parse remark; goto M
ELSE error.

If externally invoked (flRTN set)

THEN error;

Clear AUTO flag

If tEOL (null line)

THEN exit parse

ELSE goto F.

BLOCK 1:

Save D0 (statement length byte) in INADDR;
Increment D0; Clear RESTART flag (S-R1-3);
Clear Err# (S-R1-0); Call NTOKEN;
Set RESTART flag if XWORD or XFN &
save RESTART address (S-R1-2).
Save contents of LEXPTR (position of D1
before NTOKEN call) in STMTD0 - will be
needed to restore input pointer for RESTART.
Clear Middle of IF flag (S9).

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Control

Entry point for variable or tFN after THEN/ELSE:

```
E:  If variable or FN:
      set implied LET error flag.
      If no line# on line
        Clear AUTO flag
F:  If implied LET errors (S10 set)
      Restore D1,D0 from R3; Clear S10
      If not in Middle of IF (S9=0=>try Implied DISP)
        THEN try implied DISP
        ELSE Decrement D0 4 nibbles (tEXTIF & stmt len byte);
              Recover old INADDR from S-R0-0; Call GOSUBP;
      Goto K
If looking at first lexeme on line
  If line# followed by !
    set S5; output line#; save D0 (location of
    statement length byte) in INADDR; increment
    D0; Parse remark; goto M
  If not a terminator (eg not tEOL,@,!,tELSE)
    If legal implied DISP statement followed by
    a terminator
      If no line number on line
        Clear AUTO flag; goto K:
    Restore D1,D0; return
END OF BLOCK 1
```

Block 2 only returns if a label is not found

BLOCK 2:

```
-----
Save D0 (position of statement length byte) in
INADDR; increment D0
If quote
  Set appropriate flag(s);
  Step over it; Call FILEP+
  If legal
    THEN If matching closing quote
      THEN if colon follows
        THEN LEGAL LABEL;
          Output tLBLST & label
          If tEOL follows
            THEN goto N
            ELSE goto L (parse as @)
        ELSE RESPTR; Return
      ELSE RESPTR; Return
    ELSE RESPTR; Return
  If 1st character is letter
    RESPTR; GNXTCR; FILEP1; Goto G
END OF BLOCK 2
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Control

```
H:  If not Calculator BASIC (S0=0)
      THEN If begin BASIC (S3=1)
            THEN error
            ELSE goto D.
I:  If in IF statement (S-R0-3 nonzero)
J:  If not legal after THEN/ELSE (S2=0)
      THEN error
      If pending THEN (S6=1)
        If token is IF token
          THEN error

  If XWORD
    THEN Output 3-byte token
    ELSE Output 1-byte token
  Calculate Parse address
  Clear flags (S0,S8)
  Gosub to Parse routine (CRGJMP)
  If Middle of IF return (Carry Set)
    THEN Extended IF token already output;
      INADDR points to following byte;
      D0 is pointing past that byte
      S9 is set (middle of IF flag)
      S-R0-3 is nonzero (IF in progress)
      If S5=1
        THEN goto C
        ELSE goto H

K:  Normal stmt return (carry clr)
  Get Next Token
  If ELSE
    If no pending THEN (S6=0)
      THEN error
      ELSE Clear S6; Decr D0; Output t@;
        Call STMTLN, UPDIN+; Output tELSE
        Call ELSEP; goto K
  Check legal stmt terminators (@,!,EOL)
  Clear S7
  If @ (Multi-statement line)
L:  THEN Set S7, Output t@
      ELSE If ! (Remark)
        THEN Output t!, Remark; goto M
        ELSE If EOL
M:  THEN Output tEOL
      ELSE Error Exit --> Excessive Chars
N:  Output terminator
  Clear S10 (Implied LET error flag)
  Calculate & write out statement length
  If multi-statement line
    If S5=1
      THEN Call Block 2; Goto B
      ELSE Call Block 1; Goto H
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Control

```
Set AVMEMS to D0
If line# found (S5=1)
  If externally invoked (flRTN set)
    THEN exit with carry clear
    ELSE Edit line into program memory (PEDIT)
      Return to Main Loop
Calculate output buffer length, move to I/O buffer
area; call SYCOLL (Resets AVMEMS,OUTBS to SYSEN)
Execute calculator BASIC Stmt (RUNX+)
```

See the portion of the algorithm handled in IFP
in JP&PR3

NOTES: Line parse only special checks for external invoking
in 4 distinct places.

- 1) eol, 2) line# followed by eol, 3) parse error,
- 4) correctly parsed line about to be edited into
program memory.

Implied DISP is not legal immediately after THEN/ELSE.
Implied DISP is not legal during TRANSFORM.

4.4.3 Errors and Restart

Often when a keyword parse fails, it is because the keyword was not initially recognized. For example: Assume there is a FORM keyword on a plug-in LEX file; FORM takes a single string expression as a mandatory parameter. Further assume the user types in: >10 FORM=1 TO 5

FORM parse fails; a mechanism exists wherein the lexical analyzer is restarted to find FOR parse. This capability is set up in the main parse driver, and implemented in the parse error handler.

4.4.4 Restart Algorithm

```
Algorithm:
  If S4=0
    THEN RESPTR
  If RESTART flag (S-R1-3) set
    THEN goto RESTAR;
    ELSE If previously restarted (S-R1-0 [err#] #0)
      THEN Restore D1 to original error position
        using S-R1-1; Set D0 from S-R1-0;
      If Implied LET error (S10=1)
        Restore D1,D0 from R3; Clear S10;
        If not in middle of IF (S9=0)
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Control

```
      THEN try implied DISP
      ELSE Decrement D0 4 nibbles
        (over tEXTIF & stmt length byte);
        Recover old INADDR from S-R0-0;
        Call GOSUBP;
      Handle as error.
```

4.5 Statement Decompile

4.5.1 Initiation

Statement decompile is called as a subroutine by DCPLIN whenever a BASIC program line is to be displayed for editing. DCPLIN is called by AUTO, FETCH, cursor up, cursor down, cursor top and cursor bottom. LIST and single step (SST) invoke statement decompile directly. The two "standard" entry points are: 1) LDCOMP, which updates CURRL (Current Line) and decompiles the entire line, and 2) LDCM10 (used by LIST), which decompiles the entire line without updating CURRL. The "single step" entry (LDSST1/LDSST2) decompiles only one statement.

4.5.1.1 External Invoking of Decompile

Decompile can be externally invoked, using the LDCEXT entry. This entry sets the flRTN flag, so control returns to the caller in all cases, even if an error occurs. If this error occurred. The flag, flRTN, MUST be cleared by the caller on return.

TRANSFORM utilizes this entry point.

4.5.2 Algorithm

LDCEXT entry: (external invoking of decompile - used by TRANSFORM)
Saves caller's return address in S-R0-2; Sets flRTN so in case of MEMERR will still return. Goto LDCM10.

LDCOMP entry: (cursor up/cursor down)
Update Current Line;

LDCM10 entry: (LIST)
Clear SST (S1) flag;

LIST/SST entry:
D(A)←--AVMEME; D0←--OUTBS; Decompile Line#;
Save desired cursor position in LDCSPC (pointed to by D0);
A: Save address of line length byte (pointed to by D1)

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Control

in INADDR;

SST entry for multi-statement line:

```
Step D1 over statement length byte; Clear S8, S9;
If label declaration (tLBLST)
  Step D1 over tLBLST and 5 nibble chain length;
  Output quote; Call ASCICK; Output quote & colon;
  If at tEOL
    THEN goto OUTEOL;
    ELSE goto A.
If variable (<6A)
  THEN goto LETDC.
If user defined function (tFN)
  THEN goto FNDC.
If remark (t!)
  THEN goto !DC.
Call GTEXTI;
If text not found
  THEN output 'XWORD', followed by ID#;
  Use INADDR to get to end of statement;
  Goto OUTELA;
Output text; Read in 1st 6 nibbles of tokenized
line into A; Copy A into C; Jump to decompile address.
```

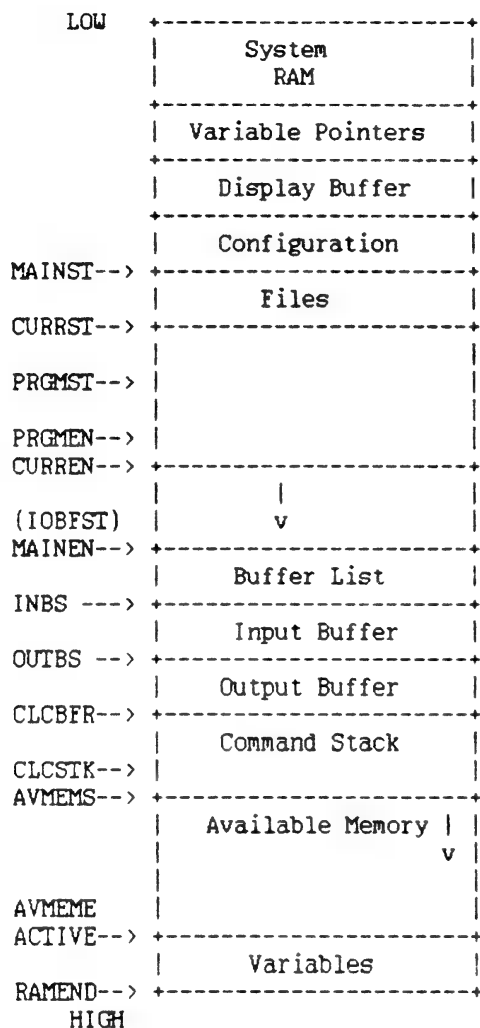
4.5.3 Decompile Routines

For further details on decompile routines and writing decompile routines, see the "Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execute" chapter.

4.6 Program Edit

At edit time, all program execution stacks are collapsed. The FOR/NEXT and GOSUB/RETURN stacks are collapsed. The CALL stack is also collapsed. Only one set of variables exists.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description System Control



4.6.1 Global Assumptions

If PEDITD entry, S8 set indicates the line to PEDIT is null, i.e., the line number followed by EOL.

4.6.2 Program Edit Algorithm

PEDIT: Clear null line flag (S8);
PEDITD: If current file not BASIC or if protected
THEN error;

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
System Control

PEDITM: Zero out all GOTO/GOSUB links;
Update current line;
Collapse stacks;
If null line
 THEN collapse output buffer;
If line exists
 THEN set R3 to line length
 ELSE set R3 to 0;
Call RPLLIN

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
The BASIC Interpreter

THE BASIC INTERPRETER	CHAPTER 5
-----------------------	-----------

5.1 BASIC Interpreter

5.2 Entering the BASIC Interpreter

The BASIC interpreter is entered through two entry points: BSCEXC and BSCEX2. The first entry point is used when executing from the Keyboard. The second entry point allows the "Don't Continue" (NoCont) flag to be set, indicating that execution will halt after the next statement is executed. This entry point is used for Single Step execution, RUN, CONT and CHAIN.

The global flag, PgmRun (S13), is set before entry if a program is executing.

A Fast Poll (pBSCEN) is sent out when entering the BASIC interpreter.

The BASIC interpreter executes a statement at a time, not an entire line. The current BASIC program counter (PCADDR) is updated to the statement length byte of the statement to be executed. Status (S0-11) are cleared. If the begin token of the statement is a BASIC statement token, the execution address is computed and jumped to. Otherwise, the statement is assumed to be an Implied LET statement and Assignment Execute is called as a subroutine.

5.3 Reentering the BASIC Interpreter

Most statements return to the BASIC Interpreter through a direct jump to NXTSTM. NXTSTM computes the address of the next statement, using the current program counter address (PCADDR) and the corresponding statement length. NXTSTM jumps directly to the BASIC Loop (at RUNRTN), with the data pointer (D0) positioned at the next statement to execute (D0 is actually at the statement terminator just prior to the next statement to execute). This mechanism was

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

The BASIC Interpreter

developed to allow execution routines an additional subroutine level, rather than using a hardware return stack level to jump to each routine and having them do a machine code 'RTN'.

Statements that change program flow, such as GOTO, GOSUB, CALL, END SUB, and FN, jump directly back to the BASIC Loop with the data pointer (D0) set at the appropriate "next statement" address.

Error Exits from BASIC (through MFERR or BSERR), return to RUNRT1 with the data pointer (D0) at the statement in error.

RUNRT1 explicitly clears sENDx, a status to indicate an END statement execute, allowing execution routines to use this status internally. NXTSTM explicitly clears this flag.

The Math Stack is collapsed at the end of every statement execute. Since Expression Execute (EXPEXC) does not collapse the Math Stack, this clean up is necessary between statements and eliminates the need for individual execution routines to do it.

Exceptions are checked at the end of every statement. See the section below on Exception Handling.

5.4 Exiting the BASIC Interpreter

A global flag, NoCont (S14), indicates if program or statement execution is Not to Continue. This flag is set several ways: Single Step sets NoCont before the "continue" statement is executed; PAUSE, Ending or Stopping a Program, Error Exit, hitting the ATTN Key, GOTO from the keyboard, also set NoCont. RETURN, END, ENDSUB, ENDDEF executed from the keyboard and returning to program execution set NoCont.

The ERROR exit flag (sERROR) is set when the error message handler jumps to ERRRTN. In all other returns, this flag is cleared.

If execution is to continue, the BASIC Interpreter continues by executing the next statement. If execution is to stop several things are done. The program annunciator is cleared. The filetype of the current file is checked. If the file is non BASIC or a program is not running, all open file buffers are flushed, unless an error occurred (sERROR). The Fast Poll: pBSCex is issued.

Non BASIC file execution that is interrupted due to an error exit are not "SUSPended" like a BASIC program. Responding to the pBSCex poll can change this.

If the current program is BASIC and the current statement is not an

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

The BASIC Interpreter

END or STOP statement (sENDx=0), the continue address (CNTADR) is set at the current D0 and the SUSP annunciator is lit.

The current D0 is the "next statement" to execute if execution is continued. In the case of Errors, the "next statement" is the statement generating the error. IF/THEN execution could pause with the "next statement" at the ELSE clause. If the next statement execution token is "ELSE", a statement skip is done to position the next statement execution past the ELSE clause. For END statement execution, there is no next statement to execute. The continue address has been zeroed and must not be updated.

The current line is computed and updated, to reflect where the program halted.

Statement execution (from the keyboard/statement buffer) halts when End of Line is reached. When beginning to execute the "next statement" of a program, if the next statement address is past the current program end, an END statement is executed.

Except for errors, all exits from the BASIC Interpreter flush open file buffers. This can not be done for an error because an error generated from attempting to flush file buffers would cause an infinite loop. All exits from the BASIC Interpreter issue a Fast Poll (pBSCex) when exiting the BASIC Interpreter and clear the NoCont flag. Control jumps to the Main Loop.

5.5 Exception Handling

Except in the case of an error, execution exceptions are checked at the end of every statement. Exception checking is skipped for errors so timer expiration execution will not continue after an error message is generated.

A global status flag, Except (S12), indicates an exception has occurred. This flag can be set at various times during statement execution, to indicate an exception has occurred and service may be required at the end of statement execution.

An exception is a software interrupt--a condition which will be serviced after execution of the current statement. An exception is ALWAYS set by software, although the software may be setting it because of a hardware condition. The computer's procedure for checking exceptions is as follows:

If no exceptions have occurred (Except is clear), a hardware service request is issued (SREQ?). If no hardware service request results, timers are checked for expiration. If no timers expired, there are no exceptions to service.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

The BASIC Interpreter

If an exception (Except is set) or hardware service request occurs, CKSREQ is called. This routine, explained elsewhere, checks for hardware service requests which can be handled by the mainframe: expiration of any of the three countdown timers. Then, if a hardware service request is still pending OR the software exception flag (Except--S12) is set, a pSREQ poll is issued. This is the opportunity for other device-handling software (HPIL, for example) to do whatever it needs to do. This is also an important spot for any external clock system (pocket secretary, instrument controller, etc.) to schedule alarms.

After CKSREQ, if the exception flag is set, it is cleared and a pEXCPT poll is issued. Unlike pSREQ, which may occur between or during statements, pEXCPT occurs at a well-defined spot, and therefore allows more latitude in what can be done during poll handling. See the poll documentation header for more information. The ATTN/ON Key is checked after this poll.

If a program is running when exceptions are checked, Pending Alarm RAM is checked by calling ALMSRV to see if one of the three BASIC timers has expired. If a timer has expired and the associated ON TIMER address is within the current program scope, the ON TIMER code is executed. Control returns to the BASIC Loop through normal statement execution return at RUNRTN/RUNRT1.

5.5.1 Servicing Clock System Exceptions

Exception handling is one of the prime times to service the clock system. The system provides an external alarm "slot" for use by all applications which need to schedule alarms. The pSREQ and pEXCPT polls provide an opportunity to schedule alarms and to SET UP to process alarms. Although alarms cannot actually be processed during these polls (except for non-disruptive events, like beeping), it is possible to set up a command buffer or some such mechanism for later processing.

See the "Clock System" chapter for details about the clock system.

5.5.2 Algorithm

```
BSCEXC: Clear No Continue of Program flag      (NoCont)
BSCEX2: Place current DO into R0
        Fast poll on entering BASIC interpreter(pBSCen)
        If not running                          (not PgmRun)
            goto BSCK+
BSCXLP: Read & Move past EOL |
        If EOL and not running
            go exit BASIC                        (goto BSCEXT)
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
The BASIC Interpreter

```

    If (multi-statement line)
        go Update PC address          (goto BSCX+)
    If End of current program
        go execute END statement
    Skip line
BSCX+: Save addr statement length byte    (PCADDR)
    Skip statement length byte
    Clear status (S0-S11)
    Read Begin BASIC token
    If not Begin BASIC token range        (BASICS)
        Call Assignment Execute
        Skip to next statement            (NXTSTM)
    else
        Move past BASIC token
        Calculate Execution addr          (EXCADR)
        Jump to Execution routine

```

Statement Execute Return: (from NXTSTM or directly)

```

RUNRT1: Clear END execute flag          (sENDx)
RUNRTN: Clear Error flag                (sERROR)
ERRRTN: Collaspe Math Stack
    If ERROR
        Skip exception checking          (goto 6)
    If no exceptions                    (Except=0)
        If no hardware service request
            If any pending alarm set      (PNDALM)
                Save D0 on stack
                go Process timers          (goto 3)
            go continue                  (goto 6)
    Save D0 on stack
    Check Service requests               (CKSREQ)
    If no exceptions                    (Except=0)
        go Restore D0 and continue        (goto 5)
    Clear Exception Flag                 (Except)
    Fast Poll on Exception               (pExcpt)
    Restore low status from DSPSTA       (USRSTA)
3: If ATTN Key hit                      (CKON)
    Set NoCont flag                     (S14)
    If Program running
        Load mask to check Timer bits
        Read Pending Alarm field
4: If Timer expired                    (Bit 0|1|2 of PNDALM)
    Get Timer Address
    If non-zero Timer address
        Verify address in prgm scope    (SCOPCK)
        If within scope
            Clear timer bit in PNDALM
            Enable another Timer to be serviced
            C <-- ON TIMER address
            Set ONTIMER statement flag

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
The BASIC Interpreter

```
                go process ON TIMER statement
                go Check if any other Timers off      (goto 4)
5: Restore D0 from R0
  Clear Error occured flag                          (sERROR)
6: If Continue
  go process next of statement                      (BSCXLP)
  else
BSCEXT:  Clear PRGM annunciator                      (SflgCp)
        Read filetype                              (RDCHD+)
        If non-BASIC file                          (BASCHK)
          go exit BASIC                            (goto BSCEX+)
        If not running
          go exit BASIC                            (goto BSCEX+)
        else
          If not END/STOP execute                    (sENDx)
            If ELSE
              Skip to End of Line
              Update Continue Address
              Set SUSP Annunc/Flag
              Compute & update current line
BSCEX+:  If not an error
        Flush all open files
        Fast Poll on Exiting BASIC interp          (pBSCex)
        Clear Don't Continue flag
        golang MAIN Loop                          (MAINLP)
```

5.6 Immediate Mode

Whenever a line without a line number preceding it is legally parsed, that line is executed immediately.

The BASIC Interpreter is entered at BSCEXC. The program running flag (PgmRun) is clear.

5.6.1 Statement Buffer

An immediate execute line is moved from the output buffer into the statement buffer before being executed. The statement buffer is always the first buffer in the Buffer chain, ensuring that only movement of mainframe files affects the value of the BASIC program counter.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
The BASIC Interpreter

5.7 Program Execution

Program Execution begins through the RUN Key, RUN statement, CHAIN statement, CONT Key, CONT statement and the SST Key.

Before running a program, several things are done. If a filename is specified in the RUN statement, the Current File pointers are changed to point to the file. In the case of CHAIN, the current file is purged.

If the filetype is neither BASIC nor binary, a poll is issued (pRUNft) allowing a Lex File to take over the RUN/CONT/CHAIN statement.

Except for continuing or single stepping at a valid continue address, program scope is recomputed and reset. All labels and user defined functions are chained. In case any of the direct execute keys (RUN, CONT, SST) were hit within Auto Mode, AUTO Mode is cleared.

If the program file is empty, control returns to the Main Loop.

In the case of RUN or CHAIN, all BASIC stacks are collapsed. For RUN, the Assign Table and all FIB entries are deleted.

For CONT and SST, if the continue address (CNTADR) is non-zero, execution is continued at this address. Otherwise, CONT and SST begin execution at the first statement of the program, after collapsing stacks, deleting the Assign Table, and deleting all FIB entries (acts as a RUN). A CONT execution collapses the Statement Buffer to prevent a subsequent "Return to Keyboard" in a paused program from returning incorrectly to the Statement Buffer containing "CONT".

The suspend annunciator is cleared, the program running flag is set, along with the PRGM annunciator.

If a binary program is to be run, a poll is issued (pRUNnB), indicating beginning execution of a non-BASIC file. The binary file type is passed. On return from the poll, the binary code is branched to by pushing its address on the hardware return stack and doing a machine code 'RTN'. The binary program exits by branching to the EXITRN entry point in the RUN statement code; this clears flags and exits through BASIC.

If a BASIC program is to be run, the BASIC interpreter is entered at BSCEX2.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
The BASIC Interpreter

5.8 TRACE Mode

TRACE mode can be used to help to debug a program and is entered and exited by executing the TRACE statement.

The nibble TRACEM in the system RAM indicates the trace mode:

TRACEM	Meaning
0	Not in trace mode at all.
2	Only in trace flow mode
4	Trace all variable assignments
6	In both trace flow and trace variables

The status bit 15 is used as trace flag. When TRACEM = 0, S15= 0. When TRACEM # 0, S15= 1. Trace mode is a global status.

Variable assignment will be traced when run through the STORE entry point at the assignment routine. S-R1-2 in statement scratch RAM must contain the address of variable token in the assignment statement. If the the content of the S-R1-2 is zero, the assignment will not be traced.

5.9 Global Assumptions

Several flags have global meaning during BASIC Interpreter execution:

Except	(S12)	Exception has occurred
PgmRun	(S13)	Program Running
NoCont	(S14)	No Continue of execution
Trace	(S15)	TRACE Mode active

On entering the BASIC Interpreter: PgmRun (S13) is set if program execution is to begin, NoCont (S14) is set if execution is to halt after the next statement is executed.

On reentering the BASIC Interpreter: NoCont (S14) is set if execution is to halt, D0 points at "next statement" to execute (at the EOL or @ of the statement just executed), sENDx is clear, unless an END or STOP statement. NXTSTM and RUNRT1 will clear this flag.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

LANGUAGE EXTENSION AND BINARY FILES	CHAPTER 6
-------------------------------------	-----------

This chapter discusses the Language Extension (LEX) and Binary (BIN) file types, which are useful in writing and distributing software for the HP-71.

The LEX file type is the more powerful of the two, for it extends the HP-71 BASIC language. The operating system automatically incorporates each LEX file in memory into the lexical scanning process of the interpreter. In this way the LEX file may add statements, functions, and other keywords to the HP-71 operating system. A LEX file may also implement sophisticated capabilities by responding to the various polls issued by the operating system.

The BIN file type may contain a main program written in HP-71 assembly language. A binary main program can be invoked directly through the RUN and CALL statements.

The BIN file type may contain one or more subprograms in machine language, as opposed to subprograms stored in a BASIC file, which are stored in tokenized form and are interpreted rather than executed directly by the CPU. BIN file subprograms can be CALLED from BASIC in the same manner as BASIC subprograms, and are used when the higher speed of assembly language is needed, or special access to system resources is required and not accessible through BASIC.

6.1 LEX File Structure

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

After the file header is the following information:

LEX ID	1 byte
Lowest Token #	1 byte
Highest Token #	1 byte
Next LEX Table Link	5 nibbles
Speed Table Exists?	1 nibble \
Optional Speed Table	78 nibbles > 1 nibble if no
Speed Table Exists?	1 nibble / SPEED table
TEXT Table Offset	4 nibbles
Message Table Offset	4 nibbles
POLL Handler Offset	5 nibbles
MAIN Table	9 * # keywords (nibbles)
TEXT Table	3 * # keywords + 2 * total # chars + 3 (nibbles)

Message Table
Poll Handler Code
Execution Code
Optional Next LEX Table

LEX ID: 1 byte This identifies the LEX file. An XFN (external function) or XWORD (any other external keyword) is completely specified by the LEX ID and the TOKEN#; these two bytes are included in the tokenization of an XWORD or XFN. LEX IDs are assigned according to a procedure outlined in the "HP-71 Resource Allocation" chapter.

LOWEST TOKEN#: 1 byte Lowest token number in this LEX table.

HIGHEST TOKEN#: 1 byte Highest token number in this LEX table.

NEXT LEX TABLE LINK: 5 nibbles Offset to another LEX table, allowing tables to be linked together within one file for easy distribution. 00000 if no link.

SPEED TABLE: 1 nibble or 80 nibbles In a LEX file with many keywords, a speed table is used to speed up searching of the text table; for each letter, A-Z, is an offset into the text table, pointing to the keywords beginning with that letter.

In a LEX file with few keywords, the speed table is omitted to save space. If the speed table is to be omitted, the single nibble "F" is placed here.

If the speed table is to be included, the format is as follows (shown here in HP-71 Assembler input format):

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

```
NIBHEX 0
CON(3) <aaa>
CON(3) <bbb>
CON(3) <ccc>
CON(3) <ddd>
CON(3) <eee>
CON(3) <fff>
CON(3) <ggg>
CON(3) <hhh>
CON(3) <iii>
CON(3) <jjj>
CON(3) <kkk>
CON(3) <lll>
CON(3) <mmm>
CON(3) <nnn>
CON(3) <ooo>
CON(3) <ppp>
CON(3) <qqq>
CON(3) <rrr>
CON(3) <sss>
CON(3) <ttt>
CON(3) <uuu>
CON(3) <vvv>
CON(3) <www>
CON(3) <xxx>
CON(3) <yyy>
CON(3) <zzz>
NIBHEX 0
```

The 0-nibble at either end serves to identify the presence of the speed table whether the code is looking for it from above or below. (Similarly, the single F-nibble identifies the absence of the speed table whether the code is looking for it from above or below.)

The quantities <aaa>, <bbb>, <ccc>, et cetera are offsets into the text table. The text table is maintained in approximately alphabetized form (see TEXT TABLE below for more detail), and the 3-nibble quantities in the speed table identify the position of each alphabetic-character's first entry RELATIVE to the start of the text table.

EXAMPLE:

If the first entry starting with the letter "P" is at address 126 (decimal) relative to the start of the text table, the line appearing as "CON(3) <ppp>" above would actually be "CON(3) 126".

If there are no keywords beginning with a particular letter, the 3-nibble offset for that letter should be the size of the entire

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

text table.

EXAMPLE: If the text table is 459 (decimal) nibbles long and there are no keywords beginning with Q, the line appearing as "CON(3) <qqq>" above would actually be "CON(3) 459".

TEXT TABLE OFFSET: 4 nibbles Offset from current location to the second nibble of the text table (start of first text string). If the beginning of the text table is labeled "TxTbSt", an assembly-language psuedo-op to properly fill this location would be:

CON(4) (TxTbSt)+1-(*)

MESSAGE TABLE OFFSET: 4 nibbles Offset from current location to the beginning of the message tables. The message table must be structured to work with the message-handling system described in the "Message Handling" chapter. If there is no message table, the value should be zero.

POLL HANDLER OFFSET: 5 nibbles Offset from current location to the poll handler for this LEX file. If there is no poll handler, this should point to an RTNSXM instruction. Since the RTNSXM instruction is a "00", setting this field to "00000" will point it at itself, which will conveniently turn out to be an RTNSXM instruction.

MAIN TABLE: 9 * (# of keywords) nibbles The Main Table contains information needed to run or to decompile every token in the LEX file. The entries are in token number order. The first table entry corresponds to the lowest token # in the LEX file, the second table entry corresponds to the next token #, et cetera.

Each main table entry takes 9 nibbles and is formatted as follows:

TEXT TABLE OFFSET: 3 nibbles This is the position of the corresponding text in the text table for this keyword, relative to the start of the text table. This points at the START of the text table entry--the nibble count, which is one nibble before the start of the actual text (see description of TEXT table below).

EXECUTION ADDRESS: 5 nibbles Offset relative to current location of start of execution code for this keyword. The corresponding parse address for the token is 5 nibbles above the start of the execution code. The corresponding decompile address for the token is 10 nibbles above the start of the execution code.

CHARACTERIZATION NIBBLE: 1 nibble The characterization nibble

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

categorizes a token during statement parse. If the keyword is a function (string or numeric), this nibble is always a hex "F". Otherwise, the four bits of this nibble mean the following:

- bit 0: Calculator BASIC (Legal from the keyboard)
- bit 1: 0 (unused)
- bit 2: Legal after THEN/ELSE
- bit 3: Begin BASIC (Programmable)

Some examples follow:

For keywords which are programmable, legal after THEN/ELSE, and legally executed from the keyboard, the characterization nibble is "D"; an example is the DISP keyword.

For keywords which are used strictly as intermediate keywords (such as PORT in the mainframe), the characterization nibble is "0".

Non-programmable commands (like FREE and EDIT) which are legal after THEN/ELSE should have a characterization nibble of "5"; note that a keyword which is Calculator BASIC, but not Begin BASIC, is interpreted as non-programmable.

On the other hand, a keyword which is Begin BASIC but not Calculator BASIC, is not executable from the keyboard, but only makes sense within the context of a program; the DATA keyword, which has a characterization of "8", is an example of such a keyword.

In all cases, bit 1 of the characterization is unused.

TEXT TABLE: $3 * (\# \text{ of keywords}) + 2 * (\text{total } \# \text{ chars}) + 3 \text{ nibbles}$

Strictly speaking, the text table does not have to reside immediately after the main table. It can reside anywhere since its address is specified in the header. The text table contains the text representation of all keywords in the LEX file, and is used by the parse and the decompile drivers.

Entries in the Text Table are in alphabetical order with one important difference: a shorter keyword which comprises the first part of a longer keyword, occurs AFTER the longer keyword. In other words, the keyword "ABC" must appear after the keyword "ABCD". If this is not done, the parse driver (which scans the text table linearly from beginning to end) will never find the keyword "ABCD" because it will match on the keyword "ABC" first. (Equivalently, for purposes of sorting the keyword list, the keywords can be considered to be padded with "FF"s out to eight bytes.)

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

The entry for each keyword in the text table has the following format:

(SIZE OF TEXT - 1) IN NIBS: 1 nibble If the text is 2 chars (4 nibs), this field = "3". If the text is 3 chars (6 nibs), this field = "5". And so on. Needless to say, the maximum value for this field is "F", implying that the maximum length of a keyword is 8 characters.

TEXT: 2-8 bytes (as specified above) Text of keyword in ASCII.
Note that keywords must be at least two characters long, since one character keywords would conflict with variable names.

TOKEN #: 1 byte
Token # of this keyword.

The Text Table is terminated with the nibbles "1FF".

EVERYTHING ELSE: This ends the list of required components of a LEX file. All that is needed now is the following:

- 1) MESSAGE TABLE If there is a message table for this LEX file, its address is specified in the header. The message table must conform to the standard message table format; the first byte contains the lowest message#, and the second byte contains the highest message#.

When calling the mainframe message routines (BSERR and MFWRN), a message within this table is specified by the LEX ID# in C[3-2] and the message number in C[B].

See the "Message Handling" chapter for further details.

- 2) POLL HANDLER Offset to the poll handler's address is specified in the header. See the section on polling for further details.
- 3) STATEMENT/COMMAND/FUNCTION EXECUTION CODE The execution code of the statement, command, or function. Statement execution entry points are preceded by decompile and parse addresses; non-programmable statement execution entry points are preceded by a parse address only; function execution entry points are preceded by a parameter count and description.

6.1.1 How it All Works

The SPEED Table, MAIN table and TEXT table are the tools with which the BASIC language is extended. The mainframe keeps a directory of all the LEX files in the machine, and refers to this directory at

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Language Extension and Binary Files

parse, decompile, and execution time. See the LEX Entry Buffer section under the "Table Formats" chapter for details.

6.1.1.1 Parsing

When the lexical analyzer (NTOKEN) is trying to tokenize text, it searches the LEX file text tables for a matching string. If there are a lot of keywords in the LEX file, the presence of an optional speed table speeds this searching.

Once a matching string has been found, the lexical analyzer reads the token number associated with the keyword. This token number serves as an index into the main table. The main table provides the execution address.

For a statement, the code at the execution address is immediately preceded by a 5 nibble offset to the corresponding parse routine, so that the parse driver is able to find the parse routine for a particular statement.

For a function, the execution code is immediately preceded by the parameter count and parameter descriptors; these are used by the expression parser to parse the function.

6.1.1.2 Decompile

When decompiling, the decompile driver has a token number and a LEX ID number. The LEX ID number and token number locate the proper LEX file; the relative token number serves as an index into the main table. From the main table the decompile driver fetches the following:

- 1) The location of the text table entry for the text of the keyword, and
- 2) The execution address. For a statement, ten nibbles prior to the execution address is the five nibble offset to the corresponding decompile routine; this is used by the decompile driver to invoke the decompile routine for a particular statement.

For a function, the expression decompiler uses the parameter count and parameter descriptors which immediately precede the execution address to decompile the function.

6.1.1.3 Execution

When executing an external statement or function, the LEX ID and token number are used to locate the proper LEX file. The relative token numbers serves as an index into the Main table. The execution address is calculated and jumped to, beginning execution

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Language Extension and Binary Files

of the keyword.

6.1.2 How to Create a LEX File

The HP-71 provides no mechanism to create a LEX file other than to copy it from an external device or to POKE it into a file chain. A number of tools have been used by the HP-71 software development team to assist in creating LEX files. They are described below.

6.1.2.1 HP-71 Assembler

An assembler is obviously the most important tool. The HP-71 assembler is available both in the HP-71 Assembler/FORTH ROM, as well as in a special set of programs which run on the HP200 series machines.

Note that assembly language examples given in this section are in the proper format for the assembler which was used by the HP-71 mainframe software development team.

6.1.3 Symbolic Referencing

Following are copies of the mainframe and built-in XWORD tables which comprise every keyword token in the mainframe; these files were used to generate all the necessary tables. Note that in the first table all the token names are given as starting with 't', indicating one-byte tokens. In the second table (as with all LEX files), all the token names begin with 'x', indicating these are not complete tokens, but only the first byte of a three-byte token. We discuss later how to build the symbolic for the complete three-byte token.

6.1.3.1 Mainframe Tokens

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

```
***** RTNSXM ***** MAINTS ***** 00
***** ***** **
*      ^      ^      ^      ^      ^      ^
*  File  Msg   Poll  EOF   TblNam TblLnk ROM#
*
*
** *****
** *****
*^      ^      ^      ^      ^
*T      T      BLSC   E      T      C
*o      e      eeya   x      o      o
*k      x      ggsl   e      k      m
*e      t      iatc   c      e      m
*n      nle    u      n      e
*      mB      t      n
*      BA A    i      n      t
*      AfCS   o      a
*      StmI   n      m
*      ledC   e
*      Cr     A
*           d
*           d
*           r
*
00 FN      FN-GO      FN (lex only)
00 GO
01          TRMNTR    Dummy Fill
02          BLDNUM tINT12 12-Digit Integer
03          BLDNUM tINT11 11-Digit Integer
04          BLDNUM tINT10 10-Digit Integer
05          BLDNUM tINT9  9-Digit Integer
06          BLDNUM tINT8  8-Digit Integer
07          BLDNUM tINT7  7-Digit Integer
08          BLDNUM tINT6  6-Digit Integer
09          BLDNUM tINT5  5-Digit Integer
0A          BLDNUM tINT4  4-Digit Integer
0B          BLDNUM tINT3  3-Digit Integer
0C          BLDNUM tINT2  2-Digit Integer
0D          TRMNTR     [Unused]
0E          TRMNTR tLBLRF Label Reference
0F          TRMNTR tLINE Line Number
10          TRMNTR tBIG  Constant Too Big
11          TRMNTR tSMALL Constant Too Small
12          BLDNUM tFLT12 12-Digit Float
13          BLDNUM tFLT11 11-Digit Float
14          BLDNUM tFLT10 10-Digit Float
15          BLDNUM tFLT9  9-Digit Float
16          BLDNUM tFLT8  8-Digit Float
17          BLDNUM tFLT7  7-Digit Float
18          BLDNUM tFLT6  6-Digit Float
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

19	BLDNUM	tFLT5	5-Digit Float
1A	BLDNUM	tFLT4	4-Digit Float
1B	BLDNUM	tFLT3	3-Digit Float
1C	BLDNUM	tFLT2	2-Digit Float
1D	BLDNUM	tFLT1	1-Digit Float
1E	TRMNTN		[Unused]
1F	TRMNTN		[Unused]
20	TRMNTN		[Unused]
21	TRMNTN	a!	(!)
22	STRLIT	a"	(") (String Delimiter)
23	TRMNTN		(#)
24	TRMNTN	a\$	(\$)
25	TRMNTN		(%)
26	TRMNTN		(&)
27	STRLIT	a'	(') (String Delimiter)
28	TRMNTN		(
29	TRMNTN)
2A	TRMNTN		(*)
2B	TRMNTN		(+)
2C	TRMNTN		(,)
2D	STRING	tSVAR	String Variable (-)
2E	TRMNTN	a.	(.)
2F	TRMNTN		(/)
30	ONEDGT	a0	0 (Digit)
31	ONEDGT	a1	1 (Digit)
32	ONEDGT	a2	2 (Digit)
33	ONEDGT	a3	3 (Digit)
34	ONEDGT	a4	4 (Digit)
35	ONEDGT	a5	5 (Digit)
36	ONEDGT	a6	6 (Digit)
37	ONEDGT	a7	7 (Digit)
38	ONEDGT	a8	8 (Digit)
39	ONEDGT	a9	9 (Digit)
3A	TRMNTN		(:)
3B	TRMNTN		(;)
3C	TRMNTN		(<)
3D	TRMNTN		CALC MODE ASNMNT OPRTR (=)
3E	TRMNTN		(>)
3F	TRMNTN		(?)
40	TRMNTN		()
41	STATIC		A (Static Variable)
42	STATIC		B (Static Variable)
43	STATIC		C (Static Variable)
44	STATIC		D (Static Variable)
45	STATIC		E (Static Variable)
46	STATIC		F (Static Variable)
47	STATIC		G (Static Variable)
48	STATIC		H (Static Variable)
49	STATIC		I (Static Variable)
4A	STATIC		J (Static Variable)
4B	STATIC		K (Static Variable)

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

4C	STATIC	L (Static Variable)
4D	STATIC	M (Static Variable)
4E	STATIC	N (Static Variable)
4F	STATIC	O (Static Variable)
50	STATIC	P (Static Variable)
51	STATIC	Q (Static Variable)
52	STATIC	R (Static Variable)
53	STATIC	S (Static Variable)
54	STATIC	T (Static Variable)
55	STATIC	U (Static Variable)
56	STATIC	V (Static Variable)
57	STATIC	W (Static Variable)
58	STATIC	X (Static Variable)
59	STATIC	Y (Static Variable)
5A	STATIC tZ	Z (Static Variable)
5B	TRMNTN	([)
5C	TRMNTN	(\)
5D	TRMNTN	(])
5E	TRMNTN	(^)
5F	TRMNTN	()
60	DYNAMIC tADIG0	Dynamic Variable 0
61	DYNAMIC tADIG1	Dynamic Variable 1
62	DYNAMIC tADIG2	Dynamic Variable 2
63	DYNAMIC tADIG3	Dynamic Variable 3
64	DYNAMIC tADIG4	Dynamic Variable 4
65	DYNAMIC tADIG5	Dynamic Variable 5
66	DYNAMIC tADIG6	Dynamic Variable 6
67	DYNAMIC tADIG7	Dynamic Variable 7
68	DYNAMIC tADIG8	Dynamic Variable 8
69	DYNAMIC tADIG9	Dynamic Variable 9
6A IP	1111 IP	tIP IP
6B FP	1111 FP	tFP FP
6C MAXREAL	1111 MAXRL	tMAXRL MAXREAL
6D RMD	1111 RMD	tRMD RMD
6E RAD	1111 RAD	tRAD RAD
6F DEG	1111 DEG	tDEG DEG
70 INF	1111 INF	tINF INF
71 EPS	1111 EPS	tEPS EPS
72 CEIL	1111 CEIL	tCEIL CEIL
73 KEY\$	1111 KEY\$	tKEY\$ KEY\$
74 MOD	1111 MOD	tMOD MOD
75 ERRL	1111 ERRL	tERRL ERRL
76 ERRN	1111 ERRN	tERRN ERRN
77 DATE	1111 DATE	tDATE DATE
78 DATE\$	1111 DATE\$	tDATE\$ DATE\$
79 PI	1111 PI	tPI PI
7A	1111 CMLPX	tCMLPX CMLPX
7B TIME	1111 TIME	tTIME TIME
7C	FN	tFN FN
7D	ARRAY	tARRAY ARRAY
7E	DMARRY	tDMYAR Dummy array

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

7F RES	1111 RES	tRES	RES
80	0000 INVLUT	t^	^ (INVOLUTION)
81 NOT	0000 NOT	tNOT	NOT
82	0000 MINUS	t-	- (Unary)
83	0000 MULTPY	t*	*
84	0000 DIVIDE	t/	/
85	0000 PERCNT	t%	%
86 DIV	0000 DIV	tDIV	DIV
87	0000 PLUS	t+	+
88			[Unused]
89	0000 CONCAT	t&	& (CONCATENATE)
8A	0000 COMPAR	tRELOP	Relational operators
8B AND	0000 AND	tAND	AND
8C EXOR	0000 EXOR	tEXOR	EXOR
8D OR	0000 OR	tOR	OR
8E	EXPR		[Unused]
8F	EXPR		[Unused]
90 LOG	1111 LOG	tLOG	LOG
91 LN	1111 LOG	tLN	LN
92 SQR	1111 SQR	tSQR	SQR
93 LOG10	1111 LOG10	tLOG10	LOG10
94 EXP	1111 EXP	tEXP	EXP
95 TIME\$	1111 TIME\$	tTIME\$	TIME\$
96 SIN	1111 SIN	tSIN	SIN
97 COS	1111 COS	tCOS	COS
98 TAN	1111 TAN	tTAN	TAN
99 ASIN	1111 ASIN	tASIN	ASIN
9A ACOS	1111 ACOS	tACOS	ACOS
9B ATAN	1111 ATAN	tATAN	ATAN
9C INT	1111 INT	tINT	INT
9D MEAN	1111 MEAN	tMEAN	MEAN
9E SDEV	1111 SDEV	tSDEV	SDEV
9F PREDV	1111 PREDV	tPREDV	PREDV
A0 RND	1111 RND	tRND	RND
A1 SGN	1111 SGN	tSGN	SGN
A2 ABS	1111 ABS	tABS	ABS
A3 NUM	1111 NUM	tNUM	NUM
A4 CHR\$	1111 CHR\$	tCHR\$	CHR\$
A5 VAL	1111 VAL	tVAL	VAL
A6 STR\$	1111 STR\$	tSTR\$	STR\$ (formerly VAL\$)
A7	1111 SUB\$	tISUB\$	SUB\$ (implied)
A8 FACT	1111 FACT	tFACT	FACT
A9 LEN	1111 LEN	tLEN	LEN
AA	1111 LPRP	tLPRP	LPRP ()
AB UPRC\$	1111 UPRC\$	tUPRC\$	UPRC\$
AC MIN	1111 MIN	tMIN	MIN
AD MAX	1111 MAX	tMAX	MAX
AE IVL	1111 IVL	tIVL	IVL
AF OVF	1111 OVF	tOVF	OVF
B0 UNF	1111 UNF	tUNF	UNF
B1 DVZ	1111 DVZ	tDVZ	DVZ

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

B2 INX	1111 INX	tINX	INX
B3	1111 XFN	tXFN	XFN
B4	1111 XFN	tFFN	Funny Function
B4		LASTFN	Last Function
B5 COPY	1101 COPY	tCOPY	COPY
B6 LR	1101 LR	tLR	LR
B7 DELETE	0111 D'LTE	tDELET	DELETE
B8 EDIT	0111 EDIT	tEDIT	EDIT
B9 DEF	1101 DEF	tDEF	DEF
BA	0000 ENDDF	tENDDF	END DEF (parsed by ENDP)
BB LIST	1101 LIST	tLIST	LIST
BC REAL	1101 REAL	tREAL	REAL
BD NAME	1101 NAME	tNAME	NAME
BE DESTROY	1101 DSTROY	tDSTRY	DESTROY
BF LINPUT	1101 LINPUT	tLINPT	LINPUT
C0 LET	1101 LET	tLET	LET
C1 SUB	1000 SUB	tSUB	SUB
C2	0000 ENDSUB	tENDSB	END SUB (parsed by ENDP)
C3 FOR	1001 FOR	tFOR	FOR
C4 NEXT	1001 NEXT	tNEXT	NEXT
C4		tLIIRL	LITERAL (Literal label or file name)
C5 DISP	1101 DISP	tDISP	DISP
C6 DATA	1000 DATA	tDATA	DATA
C7 READ	1101 READ	tREAD	READ
C8 FETCH	0111 FETCH	tFETCH	FETCH
C9 INPUT	1101 INPUT	tINPUT	INPUT
CA INTEGER	1101 INTEGR	tINTEG	INTEGER
CB SHORT	1101 SHORT	tSHORT	SHORT
CC DIM	1101 DIM	tDIM	DIM
CD PRINT	1101 PRINT	tPRINT	PRINT
CE STAT	1101 STAT	tSTAT	STAT
CF KEYS	0000	tKEYS	KEYS
D0 CARD	0000	tCARD	CARD
D1 PORT	0000	tPORT	PORT
D2 MAIN	0000	tMAIN	MAIN
D3 DEGREES	1101 DEGREE	tDEGRE	DEGREES
D4 RADIANS	1101 RADIAN	tRDIAN	RADIANS
D5 ADD	1101 ADD	tADD	ADD
D6 DELAY	1101 DELAY	tDELAY	DELAY
D7 PAUSE	1100 PAUSE	tPAUSE	PAUSE
D8 WAIT	1101 WAIT	tWAIT	WAIT
D9 STOP	1101 STOP	tSTOP	STOP
DA END	1101 END	tEND	END
DB RETURN	1101 RETURN	tRETRN	RETURN
DC GOSUB	1101 GOSUB	tGOSUB	GOSUB
DD GOTO	1101 GOTO	tGOTO	GOTO
DE RESTORE	1101 RESTOR	tRESTR	RESTORE
DE		tRFILE	Run file specified in RUNP
DF IF	1101 IF	tIF	IF
E0 ON	1101 ON	ton	ON
E0		tCREF	Call by reference separator

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

E1 OFF	1101 OFF	tOFF	OFF
E1		tCVAL	Call by value separator
E2 USER	1101 USER	tUSER	USER
E2		tCOLON	HPIL colon token
E3 ERROR	0000 NXTSTM	tERROR	ERROR
E4 TIMER	0000 NXTSTM	tTIMER	TIMER
E5 KEY	1101 KEY	tKEY	KEY
E6 REM	1101 REM	tREM	REM
E7 IS	0000 NXTSTM	tIS	IS
E8 BEEP	1101 BEEP	tBEEP	BEEP
E9 BASE	NXTSTM	tBASE	BASE
EA TRACE	1101 TRACE	tTRACE	TRACE
EB PURGE	1101 PURGE	tpURGE	PURGE
EC CAT	1101 CAT	tCAT	CAT
ED OPTION	1101 OPTION	tOPT'N	OPTION
EE AUTO	0111 AUTO	tAUTO	AUTO
EF	1101 XWORD	tXWORD	XWORD
F0	0000 TRMNTR	tEOL	<eol>
F1	0000 TRMNTR	tCOMMA	COMMA
F2	0000 TRMNTR	tSEMIC	SEMICOLON
F2		tIN	tIN (for CALL)
F3 TO	0000	tTO	TO
F3		tPRMST	PRMST (Start of Parm list-SUB, CALL)
F4 THEN	0000 TRMNTR	tTHEN	THEN
F4		tEXTIF	Extended If
F4		t	(Continuation)
F5 ELSE	0000 ELSE	tELSE	ELSE
F6 STEP	0000 LABEL	tSTEP	STEP
F6		tLBLST	Label Statement
F7 TAB	0000 NXTSTM	tTAB	TAB
F8 ALL	0000 NXTSTM	tALL	ALL
F8		tPRMEN	PRMEN (End of Parm list-SUB)
F9 CALL	1101 CALL	tCALL	CALL
FA CFLAG	1101 CFLAG	tCFLAG	CFLAG
FB SFLAG	1101 SFLAG	tSFLAG	SFLAG
FC	BANG	t!	Comment
FD USING	0000 NXTSTM	tUSING	USING
FE RUN	1101 RUN	tRUN	RUN
FF IMAGE	1000 IMAGE	tIMAGE	IMAGE

The following is the "built-in XWORD" table (LEX ID 01):

```

***** RTNSXM xrm01s MAINTS 01
***** ***** **
*
* File Msg Poll EOF TblNam TblLnk ROM#
*
*
** ***** ***** ***** *****
** ***** ***** ***** *****

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

*^	^	^^^^	^	^	^
*T	T	BLSC	E	T	C
*o	e	eeYa	x	o	o
*k	h	ggsl	e	k	m
*e	t	iatc	c	e	m
*n		nle	u	n	e
*		mB	t		n
*		BA A	i	n	t
*		AfCS	o	a	
*		StmI	n	m	
*		IedC		e	
*		Cr	A		
*			d		
*			d		
*			r		
*					
01	ACS	1111	ACOS		ACS
02	ADDR\$	1111	ADDR\$		ADDR\$
03	ADJABS	1101	ADJAAA		ADJABS
04	ADJUST	1101	ADJNNN		ADJUST
05	AF	1111	AF		AF
06	ANGLE	1111	ANGLE	xANGLE	ANGLE (function and middle word)
07	ASN	1111	ASIN		ASN
08	ASSIGN	1101	ASSIGN		ASSIGN
09	ATN	1111	ATAN		ATN
0A	BYE	1101	BYE		BYE
0B	CAT\$	1111	CAT\$		CAT\$
0C	STD	1101	STD		STD
0D	FIX	1101	DSPF		FIX
0E	SCI	1101	DSPF		SCI
0F	ENG	1101	DSPF		ENG
10	CHARSET	1101	CHARST		CHARSET
11	CHAIN	1101	CHAIN		CHAIN
12	CHARSET\$	1111	CHRST\$		CHARSET\$
13	CLAIM	0111	NASSAU		CLAIM (PORT)
14	CLASS	1111	CLASS		CLASS
15	CLOCK	0000		xCLOCK	(RESET) CLOCK
16	CLSTAT	1101	CLSTAT		CLSTAT
17	CONTRAST	1101	CNTRST		CONTRAST
18	CONT	0111	CONT		CONT
19	CORR	1111	CORR		CORR
1A	PLIST	1101	PLIST		PLIST
1B	CREATE	1101	CREATE		CREATE
1C	ZERO	0000		xZERO	ZERO
1D	DEFAULT	1101	DEFALT		DEFAULT
1E	DROP	1101	DROP		DROP
1F	DTH\$	1111	HEX\$		DTH\$
20	ENDLINE	1101	ENDLIN		ENDLINE
21	ERRM\$	1111	ERRM\$		ERRM\$
22	VER\$	1111	VER\$		VER\$

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

23 EXACT	1101 EXACTT	EXACT
24 EXPM1	1111 EXPM1	EXPM1
25 EXPONENT	1111 EXPON	EXPONENT
26 EXTEND	0000 xEXTND	EXTEND
27 FLAG	1111 FLAG	FLAG
28 FLOOR	1111 INT	FLOOR (Same as INT)
29 FLOW	0000 xFLOW	(TRACE) FLOW
2A FREE	0111 FRPORT	FREE (PORT)
2B GDISP	1101 GDISP	GDISP
2C GDISP\$	1111 GDISP\$	GDISP\$
2D HTD	1111 HXDEC	HTD
2E INTO	0000 xINTO	INTO
2F KEYDEF\$	1111 KEYDEF	KEYDEF\$
30 KEYDOWN	1111 KEYDWN	KEYDOWN
31 LC	1101 FLIP	LC
32 LGT	1111 LOG10	LGT
33 LOCK	1101 LOCK	LOCK
34 LOGP1	1111 LOGP1	LOGP1
35 WIDTH	1101 WIDTH	WIDTH
36 MATH	0000 xMATH	MATH
37 MEAN	1111 MEAN	MEAN (Duplicate of Built-in)
38 MEM	1111 MEM	MEM
39 MERGE	1101 MERGE	MERGE
3A MINREAL	1111 MINRL	MINREAL
3B NAN	1111 NAN	NAN
3C NEAR	0000 xNEAR	NEAR
3D NEG	0000 xNEG	NEG
3E PCRD	0000 xPCRD	PCRD
3F PEEK\$	1111 PEEK\$	PEEK\$
40 POKE	1101 POKE	POKE
41 POP	1101 POP	POP
42 POS	1111 POS xPOS	POS
43 PRIVATE	1101 PRIVAT	PRIVATE
44 PROTECT	1101 PROTCT	PROTECT
45 PUT	1101 PUT	PUT
46 PWIDTH	1101 PWIDTX	PWIDTH
47 RANDOMIZ	1101 RANDOM	RANDOMIZ(E)
48 RED	1111 RED	RED
49 RENAME	1101 RENAME	RENAME
4A RENUMBER	1101 RENUM	RENUMBER
4B RESET	1101 RESET	RESET [CLOCK]
4C ROUND	0000 xROUND	ROUND
4D SDEV	1111 SDEV	SDEV (Duplicate of Built-in)
4E WINDOW	1101 WINDOW	WINDOW
4F SECURE	1101 SECURE	SECURE
50 DISP\$	1111 DSP\$	DISP\$
51 SETDATE	1101 SETDAT	SETDATE
52 SETTIME	1101 SETTİM	SETTIME
53 SHOW	0111 SHOW	SHOW (PORT)
54 SQRT	1111 SQR	SQRT
55 STARTUP	1101 STRTUP	STARTUP

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

56 TOTAL	1111	TOTAL	TOTAL
57 TRANSFOR	1101	TRSFMX	TRANSFORM
58 TRAP	1111	TRAP	TRAP
59 UNPROTEC	1101	UNPROT	UNPROTEC(T)
5A UNSECURE	1101	UNSECR	UNSECURE
5B VARS	0000	xVARS	(TRACE) VARS

6.1.3.2 Other Mainframe Symbolics

Existing symbolics for all the mainframe operators are defined as follows:

t%	EQU	#85
t&	EQU	#89
t*	EQU	#83
t+	EQU	#87
t-	EQU	#82
t/	EQU	#84
tAND	EQU	#8B
tDIV	EQU	#86
tEXOR	EQU	#8C
tNOT	EQU	#81
tOR	EQU	#8D
t^	EQU	#80

There are no existing symbolics for the relational operators, which are 3 nibbles long. However, each relational operator has for its first byte tRELOP (8A). The third nibble is a bit map:

Relop	Bit#
----	----
<	1
=	2
>	3
?	4

Symbolics could be defined as follows:

t<	EQU	(#1)~(tRELOP)
t=	EQU	(#2)~(tRELOP)
t>	EQU	(#4)~(tRELOP)
t?	EQU	(#8)~(tRELOP)
t<=	EQU	(#3)~(tRELOP)
t>=	EQU	(#6)~(tRELOP)
t#	EQU	(#5)~(tRELOP)

The following symbolics are available for loading up single characters of ascii. Symbolics for ascii are certainly not necessary, since:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

LC(2) =a! is equivalent to LCASC \!\

But here they are anyway:

a!	EQU	#21
a"	EQU	#22
a\$	EQU	#24
a'	EQU	#27
a.	EQU	#2E
a0	EQU	#30
a1	EQU	#31
a2	EQU	#32
a3	EQU	#33
a4	EQU	#34
a5	EQU	#35
a6	EQU	#36
a7	EQU	#37
a8	EQU	#38
a9	EQU	#39

Note that if a symbolic is defined to be N nibbles long, and N+X nibbles are referenced, then the upper X nibbles are zeroes. For example:

LC(5) =t<
is equivalent to: LCHEX 0018A

6.1.3.3 Building Symbolic Tokens For a LEX File

Given a one-byte token, xTOKEN, in a LEX whose ID# is FE, you could do the following to build the symbolic representation for the complete three-byte token:

```
tTOKEN EQU (xTOKEN)~(#FE)~(txWORD)
```

This builds tTOKEN by concatenating three bytes of information. The low byte is the XWORD token, the middle byte is the LEX ID, and the high byte is the token number in the table.

If xTOKEN were a function name, you would replace txWORD above with tXFN. Analogously, if xTOKEN were a funny function, you would use tFFN.

6.2 Lexical Analysis, Parse, Execute

A language extension file contains tables used by the parse, decompile, and execution routines to recognize and execute external statements and functions. The TEXT table holds the ASCII string and

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Language Extension and Binary Files

associated token for each new or extended keyword. The optional SPEED table allows rapid searching of the TEXT table when a large number of keywords exists within the LEX file.

The message table within a language extension file contains messages related to routines and functions within the file. These messages may be error, warning, or system messages. See the "Message Handling" chapter for details.

The parse, decompile, and execution routines for external keywords and functions reside in the language extension file.

When searching for keywords, LEX files are searched first. This allows a BASIC statement to be extended beyond its definition in the mainframe. Correspondingly, LEX file functions can override main machine functions. New statements and functions can also be added in a LEX file.

As long as it contains all the necessary elements in the header, a LEX file may omit certain tables described here if its purpose does not require them. In particular, a LEX file may omit the message table if it's not needed. Or, as in the case of a foreign language translator, it may consist entirely of a message table which overrides mainframe messages (together with a poll handler which intercepts the pERR poll to do this). For details of foreign language message tables, see the chapter on "Message Handling."

6.3 LEX IDs and Entry #s

The token associated with an external keyword indicates that the keyword is either an XWORD (external BASIC keyword) or an XFN (external function). The lexical analyzer returns this token, along with the LEX ID (0-255) and the Entry # (0-255).

The LEX ID and entry# are stored in HEX. The LEX ID is used to locate the LEX file independently of what port it is plugged into. The entry# is the keyword# or function# used as the offset into the LEX file's main table and text table. For an external statement, the offset into the main table is used to obtain the parse, decompile, and execution addresses for the keyword; for an external function, the offset is used to obtain the number and type of parameters and the execution address. The relative offset into the text table is used to obtain the ASCII text associated with the statement or function stored in the text table; this text is used to decompile the external keyword.

254 external LEX IDs are allowed. LEX ID 0 and 1 are reserved for the mainframe. 255 internal keywords and functions are allowed per LEX file. If a language extension requires more than 255 keywords,

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Language Extension and Binary Files

then more than one language extension file must be used.

6.3.1 LEX ID Allocation

LEX IDs and entry# ranges are allocated by Hewlett-Packard. See the chapter "HP-71 Resource Allocation" for information on current resource allocations and the procedure for getting a token range officially allocated.

LEX IDs 92, 93 and 94 have been allocated as temporary/scratch IDs that can be used by LEX file developers who want a safe ID to experiment with without fear of interfering with LEX files written and distributed by Hewlett-Packard or other software developers.

6.3.2 Range of Entry Numbers

A LEX file may contain a contiguous range of entry numbers, allowing libraries of keywords to be distributed in logical groups. The format of the LEX file allows the range of entry numbers to be specified during creation.

6.3.3 Merging LEX Files

LEX files may be merged together for single file distribution of several LEX files. An internal LEX file chain exists within the LEX file structure.

6.4 Referencing Mainframe Entry Points

If HP's internally developed HP-71 linker is to be used after a file is assembled, entry points which are referenced external to the LEX file must always be preceded by '='. For example, GOSBVL=OUTBYT. Note that this is not true when using the FORTH/Assembler ROM, which does not use a linker.

In either case, all references to mainframe entry points must be absolute (GOVLNG or GOSBVL or LC(5)) since a LEX file may move in memory, thus prohibiting relative references.

In the interest of saving code, if a mainframe entry point is to be referenced several times from a LEX file, it is shorter to have only one external reference in the module to that entry point, with shorter relative jumps within the module to the point of external reference:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

```
GOSUB outbyt
.
.
GOSUB outbyt
.
.
GOTO outbyt
.
.
outbyt GOVLNG =OUTBYT
```

6.4.1 LEX Files and Memory Movement

Any LEX file which is likely to reside in RAM (system or IRAM) faces a problem when invoking certain mainframe utilities which can cause files to move. For example, the utility to purge a file (PRGFMF) causes all subsequent files in a file chain to move to a lower address. In general, utilities which cause files to move are those which call some entry point in either the MOVEDM or MOVEUM routines; the other entry points in these routines are MOVED0, MOVEDA, MOVED1, MOVED2, MOVED3, MOVEDD, MOVEU0, MOVEUA, MOVEU1, MOVEU2, MOVEU3, and MOVEU4. Therefore, a given utility can be identified as one which causes memory to move by looking at its documentation header in Volume II of the IDS, and examining which routines it calls.

The danger of executing code in RAM, such as in a LEX file, is that it may invoke a system utility which moves the code, invalidating the return address on the CPU return stack and sending the machine to never-never land. To remedy the problem, a system utility has been created to allow calling mainframe utilities from movable code. The utility, MGOSUB, places the return address on the system GOSUB stack, where it will be updated if memory moves.

Because any unprotected LEX file in ROM can be copied to RAM, the above also applies to LEX files in ROM. However, if a LEX file in ROM is protected against being copied to RAM, then it does not need to be concerned with memory movement. There are two ways to guard against this: 1) Make the file Private, or 2) Give the LEX file a name with at least one lower case character. Of these two options, the first is probably preferable.

6.4.2 MGOSUB Utility

This utility allows movable code (code running in RAM) to call utilities which may move it (such as the utility to purge a file). Rather than leaving the return address of the calling code on the CPU return stack, it places the return address on the BASIC GOSUB stack, where it is updated whenever memory is moved.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

The MGOSUB utility is invoked as follows:

```
GOSBVL =MGOSUB
CON(5) <addr of target subroutine>
.. <code continues here> ..
```

The call to MGOSUB is transparent with regard to all registers, carry, SB, XM, and status bits. That is, entry conditions will be faithfully transmitted from caller to subroutine, and exit conditions will be faithfully transmitted from subroutine to caller. There is a price for this, however: the MGOSUB code uses SCRATCH RAM for temporary storage before and after the call to the target subroutine. This means that SCRATCH is not a safe place to keep things during the MGOSUB call, and that it cannot be used to pass data to or from the subroutine. Obviously, subroutines called via MGOSUB also pay an overhead in execution time.

6.5 Referencing Addresses in a LEX File

All references within a LEX file must be relative. If a table contained in a LEX file must be referenced, a way to get the current absolute address of the table is as follows:

	GOSUB	GIADDR	Push address of table onto stack
TABLE	NIBASC	\HELLO\	
	NIBHEX	FF	
GIADDR	C=	RSTK	Recall address of table
	.		Code continues

6.6 External Lexical Analysis

Entry #0 in the Main Table of a LEX file contains the execution address of an external lexical analyzer or a system override.

An external lexical analyzer can be used to handle cases that cannot be handled by standard mainframe scanning techniques. If the token associated with a text item in the TEXT table is #00, an external lexical analyzer will be invoked. The external lexical analyzer will interpret the text using non-standard techniques and return a non-zero token to the mainframe lexical analyzer. Care must be taken to jump back to an appropriate reentry in the mainframe.

6.7 Entry and Display of External Keywords

When an external keyword is keyed in, the LEX file containing the keyword should exist. If the LEX file is in the machine during decompile, then upon decompiling the keyword the corresponding ASCII name is displayed. If the LEX file is not present during decompile, then one of the following is displayed:

```
XWORD 11leee  
XFN11leee
```

XFN indicates an external function; XWORD indicates some other external keyword. The first 3 digits (111) are the LEX ID in decimal. Leading zeroes are suppressed. The last 3 digits (eee) are the keyword entry # in decimal. Three digits are always displayed. The LEX ID and entry# are stored in hexadecimal and displayed in decimal. The decimal display of LEX IDs corresponds to those displayed in error messages.

When an external statement is decompiled without the corresponding LEX file plugged in, only the XWORD text itself is decompiled; any text which would normally follow the XWORD is not displayed. An expression with an XFN from a missing LEX file is displayed normally, except that the ASCII function name is replaced with the XFN11leee notation; all parameters are displayed normally. Funny functions are an exception to this rule; their parameters are not displayed.

When a missing LEX file has added a new device type, the device type is decompiled as "external".

Note that in all cases, once the missing LEX file is plugged back in, decompiling resumes normally.

6.8 Short Keywords

If a short keyword in a LEX file is wholly contained within the first characters of a longer keyword in the same LEX file, special attention is required. The longer keyword should always precede the shorter keyword in the table, otherwise the longer keyword will NEVER be found.

Also, if a keyword exists in a LEX file that is wholly contained in the first characters of a longer keyword in the main machine or another LEX file, then the longer keyword will not be found unless the parse of the shorter keyword fails. To illustrate the two points made above:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

FORM in LEX File
FO in LEX File

FOR in Main

If FO had preceded FORM in the LEX file above, then the FORM keyword would never be found.

Also note that only if FO parse fails, will the machine ever try FOR parse; this capability to try another parse routine once the parse of an external statement fails is provided through the RESTART mechanism.

Finally, assume the user types in the following:

>10 FORM=1 TO 5

Assume that FORM parse requires a string expression. FORM parse will fail; through the RESTART mechanism the FOR keyword in the mainframe table will be found next, and that parse will be successful. The Restart portion of line parse continues searching for a keyword if a LEX file returns an error condition from one of its parse routines. This ensures that longer keywords in other LEX files and in the mainframe are found.

The last example above illustrates that the RESTART mechanism continues the search in another LEX file, or if there aren't any more, into the mainframe. RESTART does not continue in the same table; this is why it's so important to put a longer keyword (FORM) prior to a shorter keyword (FO) when they occur in the same LEX file.

Parse routines that look for a particular keyword may have trouble using the lexical analyzer (NTOKEN) if a LEX file is present containing a shorter keyword than the one being searched for. For example, if a given parse routine requires the FOR keyword as an intermediate keyword, but FO is present in a LEX file, then NTOKEN will return tFO, not tFOR.

Using the WRDSCN utility gets you around this problem. WRDSCN was designed especially for searching all possible LEX files until a keyword that YOU specify is found. WRDSCN calls NTOKEN to find a lexeme. When NTOKEN returns a lexeme, then WRDSCN checks if it is one of the keywords that you have designated. If it is, WRDSCN returns that keyword; otherwise, it restarts the lexical analyzer, so that NTOKEN continues searching LEX files. Ultimately, WRDSCN either returns one of the keywords you have designated or indicates that the ascii pointed to by D1 does not contain any of the keywords you have specified (as indicated by LEX files present in the machine). See IDS Volume II for further details of WRDSCN.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Language Extension and Binary Files

6.9 Line Number References Within a Statement

Any statement which controls program flow using line number references, has a 5 nibble relative address field following tLINE#, so that the address can be compiled; note that commands such as LIST, which may contain line number references, would not have such relative offset fields, since LIST has nothing to do with controlling program flow. External statements containing line number references must exercise care when executing a line number reference.

A program can be edited or renumbered without a LEX file being present. But, if the LEX file is missing at the time the program is modified, any compiled addresses in the XWORD statements of that LEX file will not be cleared. Subsequent execution of such XWORD statements using this compiled address could result in an invalid branch.

There is an external entry in the Mainframe GOTO/GOSUB execution code. If the sXWORD status is set, the compiled line number address will be ignored and the line number will always be searched for, guaranteeing correct statement branching. See the GOTO documentation in Volume II of the IDS for details.

6.9.1 References Within an "Interrupt" Statement

A statement that branches to a line number due to an interrupt must execute special code to handle TRACE FLOW. Examples of interrupt statements are ON TIMER, ON ERROR and ON INTR.

Since the "TRACE FROM" address is not the preceding statement in sequential statement execution, the ONTIMR code must be duplicated to compute and trace the FROM address. The sXWORD flag must be set prior to the GOTO+ jump to guarantee all line number references are recomputed.

See the ONTIMR documentation in Volume II of the IDS for details.

6.10 Polling

Polling is performed from many places in the HP-71 operating system to allow a LEX file to perform special processing when appropriate. During a poll, a one byte process number is passed to each LEX file; this identifies the reason the system is performing a poll.

Each LEX file has an opportunity to respond to a poll. The location

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

of the poll handling code is identified by an offset-to-poll-handler which exists in each LEX file header. When a LEX file poll handler is polled (given control) it determines if it wants to respond to the process based on the process number. Response comes in several flavors:

- 1 - LEX file "handles" poll. The LEX file performs some processing and then returns with XM=0 and carry clear, indicating that the polling process should terminate.
- 2 - LEX file detects error (Slow Poll ONLY). The LEX file detects an error condition and returns with carry set, which terminates polling. An error identification is passed back in the C-register.
- 3 - None of the above. Many polls are NOT looking for a specific "handler", but are simply offering an opportunity for a LEX file to do some processing. For example, the pSREQ poll should never be "handled", but it allows an opportunity for a LEX file to handle whatever service requests it knows how to handle.

There are two kinds of polling: Fast and Slow. Their entry points are FPOLL and POLL, respectively. In both cases, the process number must immediately follow the call.

```
GOSBVL =FPOLL      GOSBVL =POLL
CON(2) =pPOLL#    or  CON(2) =pPOLL#
```

For both types of polling, XM can be set by the responding LEX file to indicate whether or not the poll was 'handled'. This is desirable if only one LEX file can respond to a particular poll; XM=0 on return to the system terminates the polling operation. In some cases it will be desirable for multiple LEX files to respond to a single poll; in this case responding LEX files should NOT set XM to 0.

The return requirements for a poll are indicated in the documentation for each separate poll, and can be found in the IDS Volume II under the individual poll name - pXXXXX.

6.10.1 Fast Poll

A fast poll is relatively fast and uses no extra memory. It is used when:

- 1) Execution speed is important, and/or
- 2) Little information is to be passed to the handler, and/or
- 3) There is little available memory or the memory may be in a strange state (e.g., pointers not valid).

The carry is set at entry to the LEX file poll handler, so fast polls

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

are easy to detect. Typically, fast polls are used for low-level system polls, indicating a state within the machine, with no specific information to pass.

The process number is passed in B(A). D(A) should not be destroyed by a LEX file, since it is used as a pointer into the LEX file entry buffer during the polling process. However, if a LEX file is going to handle the process and exit with XM=0 (ensuring polling will stop), it is acceptable to destroy D(A). The poll handler is executing two stack levels deeper than the calling code.

Fast poll does nothing with R0-R4 and the status bits. Depending on the application, any or all of the above may be used to pass data to or from the handler. Information cannot be passed to or from poll handlers in A-D, D0, D1 or P. For specifics on register usage and availability, see the individual poll documentation.

6.10.1.1 Fast Poll Example

A typical fast poll may look like the following:

```
GOSBVL =FPOLL
CON(2) =pPOLL#      Process #
.
.
```

Often, when a fast poll is issued, no distinction is made as to whether or not the poll was handled; in such cases it is not necessary to check XM.

6.10.2 Slow Poll

A slow poll allows passing of more information to poll handlers than does a fast poll. In addition, it saves stack levels and the contents of some registers in RAM, allowing recursive polling (a poll handler may perform a poll).

The advantages of slow poll over fast poll are:

- 1) Allows passing data to poll handlers in A,D,D0 and D1.
- 2) Handler can perform an error exit which will terminate the poll.
- 3) Stack levels are saved in RAM, so handler can
 - a) Use more stack levels, and
 - b) Call POLL itself.
- 4) Address of caller is saved on the GOSUB stack where it will be updated if memory moves.

The disadvantages of slow poll compared to fast poll are:

- 1) It's slower.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

- 2) It requires enough memory and valid pointers to establish a save area in RAM.

As with fast poll, slow poll does nothing with R0-R4 and the status bits. Unlike fast poll, A, D, D0 and D1 can be used to pass data to the handlers. The contents of these registers are restored to their original entry values upon entry to each poll handler.

If a LEX file responds by "handling" the poll or performing an error return, most of the registers are returned to the caller as they were left by the handler. If no LEX file handles the poll, A,D,D0 and D1 are restored to their entry values upon return to the calling code.

6.10.2.1 Slow Poll Example

A typical slow poll may look like the following:

```
GOSBVL =POLL
CON(2) =pPOLL#      Process#
GOC   Err           Error occured during handling?
?XM=0
GOYES OKAY          Process handled without error?
* Process not handled at all
LC(4) =eXXYY        Load up appropriate err#
Err   GOVLNG =BSERR  Error# loaded up
OKAY   .
      .
      .
```

6.10.2.2 Save Stack Slow Poll Information

The save stack resides between the math stack and the FOR-NEXT stack. The SAVSTK pointer (same as FORSTK) points to the bottom of the save stack area. The following information is kept on the save stack during a slow poll:

Register A	16 nibbles	Low Memory
Register D	16	
Data Pointer D1	5	
Data Pointer D0	5	
Poll#	5	
Return Level 2	5	
Return Level 3	5	
Rel Pos in LEX Buffer	5	High

SAVSTK-->

In addition to this save information, the calling return address is pushed on the BASIC GOSUB stack. This adds 6 nibbles to the stack pointed to by GSBSTK.

The total memory used by POLL is 68 nibbles (44 hex).

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

If a responder to a slow poll "takes-over" the poll and does not return to the caller, the POLL save information must be deleted. The math stack pointer should be collapsed to the FOR stack pointer. The mainframe routine =COLLAP will do this.

6.10.3 POLL Subroutine Level Usage

A handler for a fast poll is two subroutine levels deeper than the caller of the poll.

Because of subroutine level saving, a handler for a slow poll is one level shallower than the caller.

6.10.4 How to Answer a Poll

Each LEX file determines which poll process numbers it will respond to. As mentioned earlier, response may consist of handling, not handling, or returning an error. In each case, the availability of registers is clearly spelled out in the documentation for the individual poll.

The type of response is indicated by the poll handler in the state of the carry and the XM bit:

Handled: XM=0, carry clear.

Not handled: XM=1 (RTNSXM instruction), carry clear.

Error exit: (meaningful for POLL only, FPOLL ignores this):
Carry set.
Error number in C(3-0).

Each poll issued from the mainframe is documented to indicate entry and exit conditions for the poll. It is important that a responding LEX file follow the conventions indicated by the documentation.

6.10.5 Responding to a Poll from Binary

If a binary routine responds to a slow poll and does both of the following:

1. Indicates "no response" (XM=1) so the poll information is restored
2. Calls a BASIC subprogram during the poll

then the poll information and poll return address must be preserved during the CALL to BASIC. The return address to poll must be saved

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

on the GOSUB stack, and the FORSTK pointer must be set over the poll save area. See the subsection on "Responding to POLL and Invoking BASIC" below for code examples.

6.10.6 Take-over Poll

If the handler of a slow poll "takes-over" by not returning to the operating system POLL routine, it should collapse the math stack to the FOR Stack to delete the saved poll information. The mainframe routine COLLAP will do this. In addition, the mainframe routine POPUPD should be called to pop the poll issuer's return address off the GOSUB stack.

6.10.7 Polling during Parse or Decompile

Any LEX file issuing a slow poll during parse or decompile must use the POLLD+ entry point. This entry adjusts the end of available memory value in D(A) to reflect the memory used by POLL.

AVMEMS (available memory start) must be set to the value in D0 to save data already written to the output buffer; this can be accomplished by calling AVS=D0. On return from poll, D(A) must be reset to the new available memory end. The routine D=AVME will do this.

Sample code:

GOSBVL =AVS=D0	Set AVMEMS D0
GOSBVL =POLLD+	Issue Poll
CON(2) =pPOLL	
GOSBVL =D=AVME	Set D = AVMEME

6.10.8 Polling from a LEX File in RAM

Polling from code which is executing in RAM can be tricky, since a poll handler may cause memory to move. If a poll handler can cause memory to move, a slow poll must be performed. Slow poll saves the address of the caller in a place where it will be updated if memory moves. Fast poll does not.

Poll (slow or fast) must be invoked DIRECTLY from a LEX file. The utility, MGOSUB cannot be used.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Language Extension and Binary Files

6.10.9 Summary of Poll Function Codes

The list of process numbers (poll function codes) and their meanings is maintained in the "HP-71 Resource Allocation" chapter. All polls issued by the mainframe are grouped within common categories (e.g., filetype polls, parse polls, card reader polls, etc.). System polls (those which identify a state of the system, such as going-to-sleep, waking-up, etc.) are assigned numbers in the upper range of possible process numbers (from 255 downward). Other polls are assigned process numbers upward from zero. As new process numbers are added for non-mainframe use, they will be assigned sequentially from the highest existing assigned process number.

It is this process number which is passed in the B-register to poll handlers in all LEX files.

See the "HP-71 Resource Allocation" chapter for a one line description of all system polls. See the POLL category in Volume II of the IDS for detailed information about individual polls.

6.10.10 Special Mainframe Polls

6.10.10.1 Pointer and Buffer "Clean-Up"

Whenever execution stacks are collapsed, the mainframe issues a fast poll, referred to as the zero program poll (pZERPG), to collapse any buffers and zero any pointers associated with program information. This happens whenever RUN, EDIT, or END are executed, or whenever the current file is modified or purged (any time the mainframe entry points CLRSTK, CLPSTK, or ZERPGM are called, this poll goes out).

A LEX file which uses a system buffer for a given application may want to answer the poll so that it can collapse or deallocate its buffer. The Math ROM, for example, keeps a copy of the math stack in its system buffer, so when the Zero Program poll (pZERPG) goes out, it responds by deallocating the buffer since the math stack no longer exists.

6.11 BIN Main Programs

A binary main program is a program written in HP-71 assembler language and invoked through the RUN statement. A binary main program can also be CALLED as a subprogram with no parameters.

Execution begins two nibbles past "20" (the equivalent to the EOL

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

byte preceding the first statement of a BASIC program). Since common statements and utilities are used for both BASIC and BIN files, this "20" guarantees the same "start of file" length for both file types.

6.11.1 Ending a Binary Program

When execution of a binary program is complete, the code should GOVLNG =ENDBIN. This mainframe system entry point will "END" a binary program invoked through RUN/CALL. This entry point is part of the BASIC END statement execution. Stacks are collapsed, all open files are closed, the program running flag (PgmRun), the PRGM annunciator, and the status bits 0-11 are cleared, and pBSCex poll is issued. Control returns to the calling program or, to MAINLP if the binary program was invoked from the keyboard.

6.12 BIN Subprograms

A BIN subprogram is a subprogram written in HP-71 assembly code, with the tokenized BASIC SUB statement at the start of the code. The SUB statement is tokenized exactly like it is in a BASIC statement, except no line number is required. This tokenization allows binary subprograms to be CALLED just like BASIC subprograms.

Binary subprograms are used instead of BASIC subprograms to gain execution speed or system access not available to BASIC.

A BIN file containing only subprograms must have as its first command (preceding the first SUB statement): GOVLNG =ENDBIN. This guarantees standard handling of invoking RUN on a file containing nothing but subprograms - a NOP occurs.

For information on chaining of subprograms in a BIN file, see section on BIN files in the "File System" chapter.

See the section on SUB tokenization in the "Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution" chapter.

6.13 BIN Error Exit

Invoking some mainframe routines from binary may result in a non-returning error exit through the mainframe message handler. The message driver jumps directly to ERRRTN at the end of the BASIC interpreter loop.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Language Extension and Binary Files

When an error occurs, BASIC program execution suspends. If the current program file type is not BASIC, the program is halted, but not suspended (the SUSP annunciator is not on so the program cannot be continued). The assumption made for suspending a BASIC program is that from the current D0 setting, the error line# can be found. For an error exit within a binary program, the D0 setting is meaningless; this is why the line# reported on an error within a BIN file is "~~".

If you want to cause a binary program or subprogram to suspend, respond to the pBSCex poll, which goes out each time the BASIC interpreter is exited; If the current file type is BIN and an error occurred (sERROR set), then you may want to set the SUSP annunciator and update CNTADR to point to the binary code to CONTINUE at. See the pBSCex and PRUNnB poll documentation for further information.

6.14 Invoking BASIC from Binary

Binary programs and subprograms can be invoked through the RUN and CALL statements of BASIC. Provided the binary program or subprogram is formatted properly, invoking it is transparent to the user.

Likewise, it is possible to invoke BASIC from HP-71 assembly code. The entry point CALBIN is called. The PgmRun (S13) must be set before the call. Following the GOSBVL =CALBIN is the tokenized form of the BASIC CALL statement to the subprogram. The line length of the CALL statement starts the tokenization. See the section on CALL tokenization in the "Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution" chapter.

Following the tokenized CALL statement is the next assembler instruction to be executed after the subprogram is ended.

6.14.1 Responding to POLL and Invoking BASIC

If a binary routine responds to a slow poll and does both the following:

1. Indicates "no response" (XM=1), so the poll information is restored and the poll continues
2. Calls a BASIC subprogram from within the poll handler

then the POLL information and poll return address must be preserved during the CALL to BASIC. The return address to POLL must be saved on the GOSUB stack, the FORSTK pointer must be set over the poll save area.

C=RSTK

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Language Extension and Binary Files

A=C	A	
GOSBVL =PSHUPD		Push return address on GOSUB stack
C=0	A	
LC(2) =1POLSV		Length of POLL Save area
D1=(5) =FORSTK		
A=DAT1	A	Current FORSTK position
A=A-C	A	Move FORSTK over Poll save area
DAT1=A	A	
ST=1	PgmRun	Set prog running flag
GOSBVL =CALBIN		CALL BASIC
.....		

On return from the BASIC subprogram, FORSTK must be readjusted and the POLL return address restored:

C=0	A	
LC(2) =1POLSV		
D1=(5) =FORSTK		
A=DAT1	A	Current FORSTK value
A=A+C	A	Adjust back
DAT1=A	A	
GOSBVL =POPUPD		Pop return address off stack
C=D	A	
RSTK=C		Restore to stack
C=-C-1	A	Clear carry
RTNSXM		Return "not handled"

STATEMENT PARSE, DECOMPILE, AND EXECUTION

CHAPTER 7

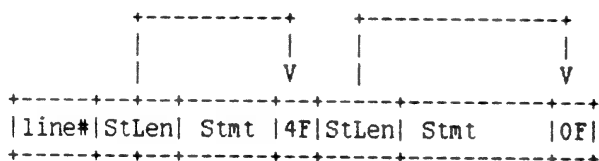
7.1 Writing a Parse Routine

7.1.1 Statement Tokenization

Statement tokenization involves the calling of parse utilities to interpret the incoming ASCII stream as BASIC, and to convert and output it as a token stream. A BASIC program line begins with a line number and terminates with an End of Line token (tEOL). A program line may contain multiple statements. Subsequent statements in a multi-statement line are preceded by an @ (t@) token. Following each line number or @ token is a statement length byte. This statement length is a relative offset to the next terminating token (tEOL or t@). Statements within a BASIC file are chained together using these relative offsets.

In the following examples, assume that low memory is on the left and higher memory on the right.

7.1.1.1 Program Line



```
line#      = Line number of program line
            4 nibble BCD encoding
```

StLen = Statement length
1 byte offset to the end of the statement
Adding the address of the byte to the contents of the
byte yields a pointer to @ (4F) or Endline (0F)

Stmt = Tokenized statement

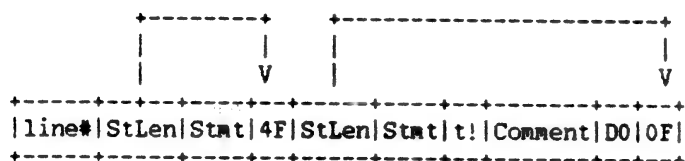
Note that encoding of immediate execute lines is exactly as above,

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

EXCEPT no line number is tokenized.

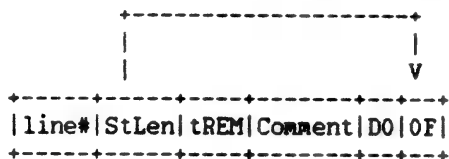
7.1.1.2 Program Line with Comment

Tokenization of a comment following a statement, using !, is included within the tokenization of the last statement. Therefore, the Statement Length byte preceding that last statement is an offset to Endline (0F):



Note that ! is tokenized as CF, and that the comment itself is always followed by D0, then 0F (tEOL).

The tokenization for a comment at the beginning of a line (using REM or !) is analogous to that shown above; the comment is always immediately followed by D0. REM is tokenized as follows:



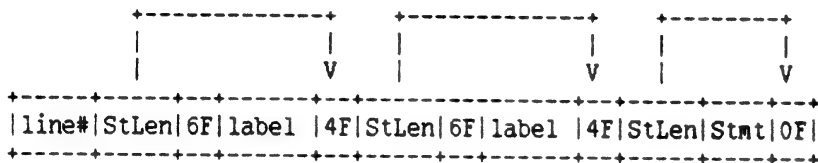
The tokenization for ! at the beginning of a line is the same as above, only substitute t! for tREM.

7.1.1.3 Program Line Containing Labels

Label identifiers are allowed within program lines. A label identifier is tokenized as a separate statement within the line. The Statement Length byte is an offset past the label tokenization, pointing to either @ (4F) or Endline (0F). A label is up to 8 characters of uppercase letters and digits, starting with a letter. A label token (tLBLST = 6F) precedes the ASCII label name.

(

```
100 "ABC":'TEST1': GOSUB 525
```



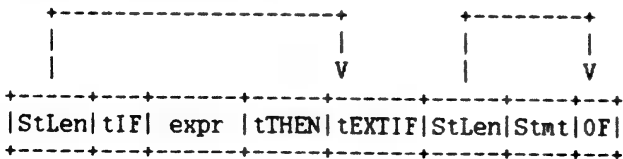
Tokenization of a multi-statement line, with a single label name following the first statement:

	+-----+	+-----+	+-----+	+-----+
		V		V
	+-----+	+-----+	+-----+	+-----+
+-----+ line# StLen Stmt 4F StLen 6F label 4F StLen Stmt 0F +-----+				

7.1.2.1 IF...THEN...ELSE

```
IF A THEN 100 ELSE LABEL1
```

IF <expr> THEN PURGE



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

IF <expr> THEN 100

```

+-----+
|                                             |
|                                             |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|StLen|tIF|  expr  |tTHEN|tLINE#|0010|0F|
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+

```

IF <expr> THEN <string expression>

```

+-----+
|                                             |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|StLen|tIF|  expr |tTHEN|tLRLRF|string expr|OF|
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+

```

IF <expr> THEN PURGE ELSE "ABC"

```

+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|               |               |               |               |
|               |               |               |               |
|               |               |               |               |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|StLen|tIF|expr|tTHEN|tEXTIF|StLen|Stmt|4F| (continued below)

```

```

+-----+
|               |
+-----+-----+
|StLen|tELSE|tLBLRF|strg expr|OF|
+-----+-----+

```

So far only label references which are string expressions have been shown; also legal are 'literal' label references. They are tokenized with a tLITRL (4C) preceding them.

IF <expr> THEN ABC

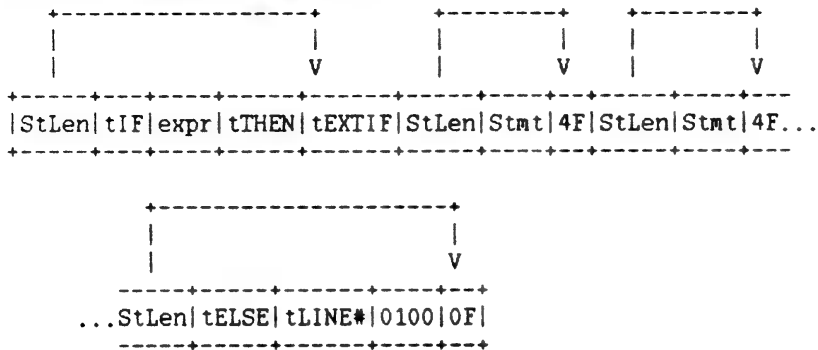
```

+-----+
|                                             |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|StLen|tIF|expr|tTHEN|tLBLRF|tLITRL|ascii label|OF|
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

IF <expr> THEN A=B @ RETURN ELSE 10



7.1.2.2 CALL

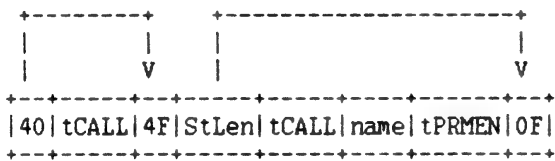
The simplified tokenization of CALL is as follows:

tCALL [<name> [tPRMST<parm list>] tPRMEN [tIN<file name>]]

The simplest form of the CALL statement takes no parameters. The multi-statement line:

CALL @ CALL <subprogram name>

would be tokenized as follows:



Note that the statement length of the first statement is only 4 nibbles.

Next, look at the tokenization of the CALL statement with parameter passing.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

CALL <name>(PV,PR,#5)

would be tokenized as follows (assuming PV is a pass by value & PR represents a variable which will be passed by reference):

```

+-----+
|                                             |
+-----+-----+
|StLen|tCALL|name|tPRMST|PV|tCVAL|PR|tCREF|t#|53|tCREF|tPRMEN|OF|
+-----+-----+

```

Note in this example that each parameter is followed by a 1-byte token, indicating whether it is a pass by value (tCVAL) or a pass by reference (tCREF). Channel numbers are encoded somewhat non-intuitively as a pass by reference. Any parameter list of a CALL statement is preceded by tPRMST (Parameter Start); the list is terminated by tPRMEN (Parameter End). Every CALL statement (except the one with no subprogram name or parameters given) is terminated by tPRMEN.

This example illustrates the tokenization of a CALL which specifies a file.

CALL <name> IN <file name> @ CALL <name>(PV) IN <file name>

```

+-----+
|                                             |
+-----+-----+
|StLen|tCALL|name|tPRMEN|tIN|file name|4F|...
+-----+-----+

```

```

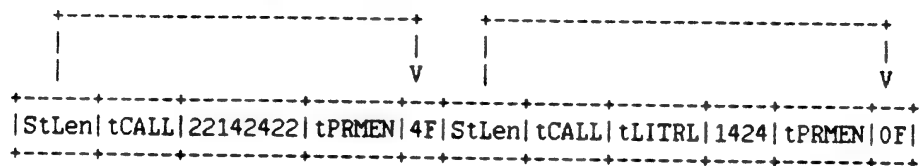
+-----+
|                                             |
+-----+-----+
... |StLen|tCALL|name|tPRMST|PV|tCVAL|tPRMEN|tIN|file name|OF|
+-----+-----+

```

When the subprogram name is specified as a string variable or quoted string, it is tokenized either as the variable or in ascii (quotes included). However, when the subprogram name is given as an unquoted string it is tokenized with a preceding byte: tLITRL. For example:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

CALL "AB" @ CALL AB



7.1.2.3 SUB

The tokenization of the SUB statement is similar in many ways to that of CALL; however, CALL does not output comma tokens between parameters, whereas SUB does. Also, the SUB statement has two 5-nibble fields which are used for chaining. The first field immediately follows tSUB, and the second field immediately precedes either t@ or tEOL (depending on which token follows the SUB statement).

If the SUB statement is followed by !, then the second field immediately FOLLOWS the tokenization of the comment.

The tokenization is as follows:

tSUB<xxxxx><name> [tPRMST <parm list>] tPRMEN [t! comment] <xxxxx>

Note that in all cases, the subprogram name in a SUB statement is preceded by tLITRL. Following are some examples of the tokenization of SUB.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

SUB <name> ! comment

```

+-----+
|                                             |
+-----+
|StLen|tSUB|xxxxx|tLITRL|name|tPRMEN|t!|comment|D0|OF|xxxxx|OF|
+-----+

```

SUB <name> (PV,#5) @ BEEP

```

+-----+
|                                             |
+-----+
|StLen|tSUB|xxxxx|tLITRL|name|tPRMST|PV|tCOMMA|t#|53|tPRMEN|...
+-----+

...-----+
      |      |
      V      V
+-----+
...|xxxxx|4F|StLen|tBEEP|OF|
+-----+

```

7.1.2.4 IMAGE

Parsing of an image string is performed at the time the USING statement is executed.

There are no special considerations for parsing the IMAGE keyword, on the level of the BASIC interpreter. An IMAGE statement is tokenized as follows:

```

+-----+
|                                             |
+-----+
|line#|StLen|tIMAGE|image string|D0|OF|
+-----+

```

Similarly, a USING statement (for example, DISP USING "<image string>", or DISP USING <line#>), is tokenized with the image string as an expression, or a tLINE# token to reference the IMAGE statement.

Parsing of the image string must be performed at the time the USING statement is executed, since the image string expression can be

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

changed during execution (consider DISP USING S\$; <output list>). IMAGE syntax is of a peculiar design -- that is, its rules are not governed by the BASIC interpreter. In addition, image parsing is inextricably linked to its execution. For these reasons, image parsing is entirely separate from BASIC interpreting. For a detailed description of the tokenization of image strings, see IDS Volume III, module MB&IMG.

7.1.3 Global Assumptions

Status bits:

- S4 - No Restore of Input Pointer
Used by error handler to determine if RESPTR should be called for correct cursor position.
- S5 - Line Number on Line
Program line, as opposed to immediate execute line.
- S6 - Pending THEN
Within the scope of an IF-THEN clause, and ELSE has not yet been encountered (ELSE is a legal terminator at this point; IF is not legal).
- S10 - Implied LET Error
Used by error handler to determine if statement parsed was being interpreted as an Implied LET (If S9 is set, then attempt to parse as label, else attempt to parse as implied DISP).

flRTN- System flag indicating that parse is externally invoked.

Registers

D(A) End of Available Memory; used to check against when outputting tokens.

Statement Scratch Ram:

- S-R0-2 When flRTN is set (indicates parse is externally invoked), this RAM location contains the address to return to.
- S-R0-3 IF Statement in progress. All statements following THEN and preceding Endline are in this realm. Set if nonzero.

STIMD0 RESTART Input Pointer

When the RESTART flag is set, the position of D1 prior to the call to the lexical analyzer (contents of LEXPTR) is saved. D1 is restored from this ram location prior to restarting the lexical analyzer.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

S-R1-0 Original Error Number

If a keyword is to be restarted and has not been previously restarted, then this is where the error number is saved. When a keyword has not been restarted previously, this location is zero.

S-R1-1 Original Error Position

At the same time Original Error Number is saved, the error position address is saved.

S-R1-2 RESTART Address

Each time the lexical analyzer is called to evaluate a lexeme at the beginning of a statement (or immediately after THEN or ELSE), its restart address is saved. If the RESTART flag is set, then the error handler restarts the lexical analyzer with this address.

S-R1-3 RESTART Flag

If the lexeme at the beginning of a statement is an XWORD or XFN, this flag is set; otherwise it is cleared. Set if nonzero.

7.1.4 Entry Conditions from Line Parse Driver

D1 points to the first character following the keyword. D0 points into the output buffer, past the statement length byte and the keyword token. Status bits 0, 8, 9, and 10 are clear.

7.1.5 Exit Conditions

All parse routines which do not error exit, must return with carry clear. Carry set is reserved for 'middle of IF' return.

D1 should be pointing past the last legal character or keyword accepted as part of the legal parse, but no farther. In many cases this requires a RESPTR to be done before returning - this can be accomplished by ending a parse routine with: GOVLNG =RESPTR. For example, if an optional keyword is searched for with NTOKEN but not found, D1 must be backed up. Note that if GNXTCR had been called instead of NTOKEN, this wouldn't be necessary since GNXTCR does not move D1 past any non-blank character.

D(A) should still hold the End of Available Memory.

Whenever information is output to the Output Buffer (at the D0 pointer) through the OUTxxx utilities, available memory is checked to make sure there is enough memory to write out the information. If there is not enough memory, an "Insufficient Memory" error is generated.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

If the Parser was invoked externally, the Message Driver returns to the caller, instead of taking a hardwired exit.

7.1.6 Parse Errors

The following entry points already exist for parse errors. If S4=1, D1 is expected to be pointing at the input in error; otherwise RESPTR will be called to position D1 at the previous input, assumed to be the error.

SYNTXc	Syntax	
IVEXPe	Invalid Expression	
IVPARE	Invalid Parameter	*
MSPARE	Missing Parameter	*
IVVARE	Invalid Variable	
ILCNTc	Illegal Context	
EXCHRe	Excess Characters	
QUOEXc	Quote Expected	
PRNEXc) Expected	
FSPECc	Invalid Filespec	

* If IVPARE is used, and there is no remaining input in statement (after optional RESPTR, D1 points at @, !, ELSE, or EOL), then MSPARE is issued.

If it is necessary to generate a parse error other than one listed above, load the low 4 nibbles of D0 with the error number and GOVLNG =PARERR.

NOTE: For MOST parse error exits, S10 should be clear; S10 is the implied LET error flag.

If more details are needed to generate specific parse errors, see the chapter, "Message Handling", or the header for the MFERR* routine.

7.1.6.1 Relinquishing Error Handling

In some cases it is desirable for a LEX file parse routine to not report its error message and position, but to give control BACK to the mainframe and let the mainframe report the error. An example of such a case is as follows:

Consider the mainframe routine ON TIMER; further consider what happens when the user has HPIL plugged in, and incorrect syntax is used with this statement. For example:

ON TIMER %1,1 GOSUB 50

Here's the scenario: ON INTR (an HPIL statement) errors out in the normal way (causing its error information to be saved); the

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

parse is restarted, ON TIMER also errors, and the error information generated by HPIL is restored and reported to the user, resulting in some obscure message like

HPIL ERR: Invalid Parm,
with the cursor flashing on TIMER. Obviously, this is less than desirable.

By using the REST* entry point, the LEX file error is forever forgotten, and the mainframe-generated error is the one reported (or any parse error previously or subsequently reported in the 'normal' way).

In short, this entry point enables language extensions to suppress their particular error message/error position, providing it is KNOWN that a parse routine exists in the mainframe which will gain control when the parse is restarted and which has the capability of giving a more coherent error message.

To use this feature when a parse error is detected, simply do a GOVLNG =REST*.

7.1.7 Expression Tokenization

Expressions specified in statements are converted to RPN (postfix notation) by the expression parser and are stored in this format. In this form, the expression is a series of tokens. The tokens are described next.

7.1.7.1 Constants

Single-digit constants are tokenized as the ASCII character code for that digit. ("0" thru "9")

Integer constants (2-12 digits) are tokenized by a byte which identifies the number of digits in the constant followed by a nibble for each of the digits. The digits are stored least significant digit first.

Floating point constants (1-12 digits) are tokenized by a byte which identifies the number of digits in the mantissa of the constant followed by a nibble for each of the digits. The digits are stored least significant digit first. Following this is a 3 nibble 9's complement exponent.

String constants (single or double quoted strings) are tokenized as the opening quote with the enclosed characters following and are terminated with a matching closing quote.

7.1.7.2 Variables

Variables are tokenized in one to three bytes as follows:

[t\$] [tADIGx] Alpha

Where the t\$ token is present if its a string variable, the

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

tADIGx token is present if the variable has a digit character after the letter and alpha is always present and encoded as the ASCII code for that letter. There are ten possible tADIGx tokens (tADIG0 - tADIG9) corresponding to the ten possible digits.

7.1.7.3 Operators

Operators (monadic and dyadic) are tokenized with a single byte except for the relational operators which have a nibble following the first byte to identify the specific relation.

7.1.7.4 Functions

Functions are divided into four groups:

Mainframe functions -- These are tokenized as a single byte.

XFN's -- These are tokenized as an tXFN token followed by a byte identifying the LEX ID and another byte specifying the entry number within that ID. Following these three bytes is a nibble which says how many parameters this function reference actually has.

Arrays -- The tokenization of arrays is a hybrid of variable and XFN tokenization. A TARRAY token is followed by one to three bytes that describe the name of the array (same as for variables) and this is followed by a nibble describing the number of subscripts.

Funny Functions -- This type is used for functions which defynormal rules for parse or execution. The tokenization is described in the next section.

Following any parameterless function a tLPRP token may be present to preserve a "()" which followed the function.

Any token other than those above signals the end of the expression.

7.1.8 Funny Function Parse

The lexical analyzer (NTOKEN) finds the keyword corresponding to the FFN in a lex table. It detects that its token number is 00. It jumps to the "execution address" of token 00. This routine figures out what token should be returned by looking at the letters of the text (or maybe some pointer the lexical analyzer passes to it) and leaves that in A(5-0) in the form:

```

          5 4 3 2 1 0
A:  +-----+-----+-----+
    |               | Fn# | Id | tFFN |

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

+-----+-----+-----+

It also loads B(A) with the address of a routine (in that lex file) which knows how to parse that FFN. This will be called by the expression parser if indeed the expression parser was the one who called NTOKEN. It should set status bits to look like a parameterless function (S0-S3 clear).

It then returns. This is actually the return from NTOKEN.

If it wasn't the expression parser who called NTOKEN then the entry returned simply looks like a function and the parse routine can give the same parse error that it would give if any other function was found. CALC mode has a specific trap for the tFFN token and disallows it.

The expression parser eventually sees the tFFN token and jumps to the address returned in B(A). Before jumping, it compiles the 8 nibbles in A(7-0). This leaves room for the length byte to be filled in. D0 (the output pointer) points past these eight nibbles, ready for the FFN parse to take over. D1 (the input pointer) points wherever it was left by the lexical analyzer override routine described above. D(A) points to the parse stack. This stack must be preserved. It extends from D(A) to AVMEME. The FFN parse routine must respect the register usage of the expression parser.

If the expression parser must be reentered to parse an expression within the FFN, AVMEME must be moved up to "protect" the parse stack. This implies that the stack length must be saved so that AVMEME can be set back to its original value. In order to be able to fill in the FFN length when it is done parsing it, D0 should be saved also. One subroutine level should also be saved to prevent overflowing the stack. If these three items (parse stack length, D0 pointing past the length byte and one return stack level) are saved on the parse stack before moving AVMEME to protect the stack, then unlimited nesting of FFNs is possible.

The net effect of the FFN parser is to parse a "parameterless" function. This implies that no parameters precede the function in the RPN stream of tokens. Once the FFN has been completely parsed, control should be passed back to the expression parser in the state where an operand has just been found (P1-10). It should return to SE1-10 if the FFN returns a string result. This pushes a "Primary" on the parse stack and scans for another token. In either case it should do a RTNSXM to indicate that this is a value expression. The expression parser continues, trying to work this primary into the expression.

The CALL statement expects the expression parser to set the RAM nibble at PRMCNT to a non-zero value if the expression contains any

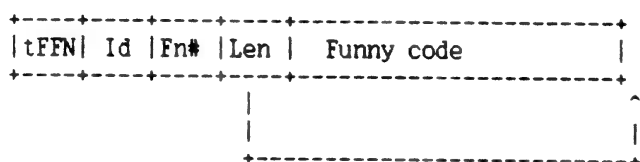
HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

function that can possibly cause another call statement to be executed. In the mainframe, only user-defined functions can cause this to happen. It is conceivable that a funny function could perform a CALL on its own. In this case, the PRMCNT nibble should be set to prevent a problem with call. There is no problem if the expression parser is used recursively since if the expression which is a parameter to the funny function contains a user-defined function, that "copy" of the expression parser will set the PRMCNT nibble and it will remain set for the duration.

The only acceptable error exit in the process described above is the case of insufficient memory to continue normally; the routines must return in all other cases.

7.1.8.1 Funny Function Tokenization

The "Funny Function" token (FFN) lies just within the range of built-in functions. This token (tFFN) is encoded as follows:



First comes the tFFN token followed by the Lex Id and the function number, just as in XFN. Following this, there is a length byte. This byte, when added to its own address points to the first nibble of code not contained in the FFN.

7.1.9 Polling during Parse

A statement issuing a poll (slow poll) during parse must use the POLLD+ entry point. This adjusts the end of available memory value in D(A) to reflect the save area and GOSUB stack level used by poll.

AVMEMS (available memory start) must be set to the value in D0 in order to preserve data already written to the output buffer; this can be done by calling AVS=D0. On return from the poll, the calling routine must reset D(A) to available memory end. The routine D=AVME does this.

Sample code:

GOSBVL =AVS=D0	Set AVMEMS D0
GOSBVL =POLLD+	
CON(2) =pPOLL#	Issue poll
GOSBVL =D=AVME	Set D(A) = AVMEME

7.2 Writing a Decompile Routine

7.2.1 Global Assumptions

- INADDR - Contains pointer to statement length byte of statement currently being decompiled.
- LDCSPC - Contains pointer to desired cursor position in decompiled line (immediately following line number).
- sSSTdc - SST Flag (S1) - Set ONLY by Single Step to decompile only a statement not the entire line.
- S12-S15 - Global System Flags - Except (S12), PgmRun (S13), NoCont (S14), Trace (S15)
- flRTN - System flag which indicates that decompile was externally invoked.
- S-R0-2 - When flRTN is set, this RAM location contains the address to return to.
- R3 - Used by LIST; not available to decompile routines

7.2.2 Entry Conditions from Line Decompile

- D1 points into the token stream. D1 is past the keyword token; A and C contain the next token.
- D0 points into the output buffer, past the decompiled line number, keyword, and a blank.
- D(A) contains the End of Available memory; used to check against by the output routines. This value should remain untouched.

7.2.3 Decompile Utilities

For output utilities, see "How To Write a Parse Routine."

GTEXT1 - Given a token, outputs the corresponding text. Includes numerous entry conditions and entry points which provides for outputting leading and/or trailing blanks.

EOLDC - Checks for statement terminators: t@, t!, tEOL

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

- EOLXC* - Calls EOLDC above; if statement terminator found, does not return - handles rest of statement by going to OUTELA. If no statement terminator found, returns to caller with carry clear.
- VARDC - Decompile variables
- LIN#DC - Decompile and outputs a line number, suppressing leading zeros.
- ASCICK - Copies ascii characters from input stream to output buffer, until encountering a non-ascii character.
- EXPRDC - Decompile expression pointed to by D1.
- FILDC - Decompile file specifier
- ARYDC - Decompile array which was compiled by ARRYCK.
- LABLDC - Assumes D1 is at tLBLRF (label reference token), steps over tLBLRF. If label is a literal, outputs it within quotes; otherwise, the string expression is decompiled. Returns with carry clear.
- SKIPDC - Useful if an unrecognized XWORD is encountered; skips D1 to the end of the statement and goes to OUTELA (see below).

7.2.4 Exit Conditions

When the token stream has been exhausted, exit through either OUTEL1 (D1 points to statement terminator) or OUTELA (D1 points to statement terminator and A(B) contains it).

D(A) points to the end of available memory.

7.2.5 Existing Multi-use Decompile Routines

Any keywords which have no parse to speak of (STOP and RETURN are good examples), can use OUTELA as their decompile routine.

Any keywords which have an optional expression list, delimited with compiled commas and/or semi-colons may use DROPDC as their decompile routine. Note that this can be used even if no delimiters are compiled between expressions: the expression list is still output with comma delimiters.

Any keywords which have a mandatory expression list may use FIXDC

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

as their decompile routine. Again, delimiters need not be compiled between expressions; comma and semi-colon delimiters are acceptable and will be decompiled.

7.2.6 Funny Function Decompile

When expression decompile sees a tFFN token, it outputs a nullop and it looks up the execution address of the FFN. If the FFN can't be found (ie the lex file is missing) it pretends the token is a tXFN and outputs XFNllleee, where lll is the LEX ID (leading zeroes suppressed), and eee is the entry#. It skips over the FFN by adding the FFN length. No attempt is made to decompile the FFNs parameters.

The decompile handler for this FFN is pointed to by a relative address immediately above the execution address. The FFN decompile handler should decompile the FFN as only it knows how. This decompile cannot leave unquoted characters greater than 127 in the buffer since this would mess up the decompiler when it is resumed.

If the FFN contains an expression, it will have to preserve some information to be able to call expression decompile; it will have to steal some available memory at AVMEME to preserve the pointers which are critical to the expression decompile which is in progress. It will also have to save one stack level.

Once the entire FFN has been decompiled, control should be passed back to the main expression decompile loop (via a GOVLNG =EXDCLP). The expression decompile should continue normally looking at the rest of the expression. The text that has been generated will be treated as a parameterless function with a very long name.

7.2.7 Polling during Decompile

A statement issuing a poll (slow poll) during decompile must use the POLLD+ entry point. This adjusts the end of available memory value in D(A) to reflect the save area and GOSUB stack level used by poll.

AVMEMS (available memory start) must be set to the value in D0 in order to preserve data already written to the output buffer; this can be done by calling AVS=D0. On return from the poll, the calling routine must reset D(A) to the current value of available memory end. The routine D=AVME will do this.

Sample code:

GOSBVL =AVS=D0	Set AVMEM at D0
GOSBVL =POLLD+	Issue poll
CON(2) =pPOLL#	

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

GOSBVL =D=AVME Set D AVMEM

7.3 Statement Execution

7.3.1 Entry Conditions

The program counter (D0) is positioned past the begin BASIC token. PCADDR has been updated and points at the statement length byte for the statement.

7.3.2 Global Assumptions

Several flags have global meaning during statement execution:

Except	(S12)	Exception has occurred
PgmRun	(S13)	Program Running
NoCont	(S14)	No Continue of execution
Trace	(S15)	TRACE Mode active

PgmRun (S13) is set if a program is executing. NoCont (S14) is set if execution is to halt after the next statement is executed. Single step execution sets this flag.

7.3.3 Exit Conditions

When the execution associated with a given statement is complete, control must be turned over to the run loop. This is done by exiting through NXTSTM or RUNRTN.

NXTSTM - Skips over statement preceded by current PCADDR. The statement following will be the next one to execute.

NXTST2 - D0 points to statement length byte of statement to skip over.

RUNRTN - D0 points to statement terminator (t@,tEOL,tELSE) preceding next statement to execute. Be sure sENDx (S1) is clear.

RUNRT1 - D0 points to statement terminator (t@,tEOL,tELSE) preceding the next statement to execute. sENDx is explicitly cleared.

7.3.4 Error Exits through MFERR/BSERR

Error exits from statements and functions require only four things:

- 1) S13 is set when appropriate (indicates program running)
- 2) PCADDR is accurate
- 3) The error number is loaded in C.
- 4) P is set appropriately to select options (set ERRN, display error prefix, etc.). See MFERR* documentation or the "Message Handling" chapter for details.

Entry points MFERR and BSERR are used for processing errors generated in the BASIC operating system. MFERR requires that the error number is loaded in C(B); this error exit can be used for mainframe generated errors (LEX file #00). However, BSERR requires that the error number is loaded in C(3-0), specifying both the LEX ID number and the message number. It is acceptable to use BSERR for mainframe-generated errors, as long as C(3-2) is filled with zeros.

7.3.5 Use of Available Memory by Statements

The execution of statements often requires the usurping of available memory. There are some restrictions on how much of available memory may be allocated and for how long. Refer to the section Available Memory Management in the "Memory Structure" chapter for details.

7.3.6 Statement Execution Utilities

FSPECx - Evaluates file specifiers; will poll for any not recognized by mainframe.

FILXQ^ - Evaluates mainframe file specifiers and dedicated device specifiers. Currently accepted device names are PORT, MAIN, CARD, and PCRD.

EXPEXC - Evaluates expression pointed to by D0. Evaluated expression on stack. See EXPEXC documentation for details.

FINDF - Given a file specifier returned from FSPECx or FILXQ^, searches for the given file. Indicates upon exit, whether or not file found. If file found, provides information on where. Numerous entry points.

EOLXCK - Given a token in A(B), returns with carry set if it is a statement terminator: tEOL, t@, t!, tELSE.

7.4 Expression Execution

7.4.1 Entry Conditions to Expression Execute

D0 is the interpreter's program counter; it must point to the first token of the expression when expression execution is called. D1 is the active stack pointer for the operand stack during execution.

Several entry points are available:

- EXPEX- collapses the math stack, but leaves status bits alone.
- EXPEX+ saves the caller's status bits, and reads MTHSTK to position the stack pointer.
- EXPEXC leaves status bits alone, and reads MTHSTK to position the stack pointer. EXPEX1 is another name for this entry point.
- EXPR assumes the stack pointer is already positioned.

7.4.2 Math Stack Usage and Format

The math stack grows from high addresses to low. The stack item at the lowest address is said to be on top of the math stack. MTHSTK is updated only upon termination of expression execution, or for special cases such as user-defined function execution.

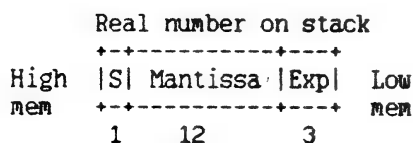
7.4.3 Data Types on the Stack

There are four kinds of objects that exist on the math stack under normal circumstances:

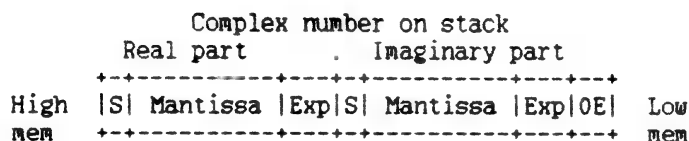
- Real numbers
- Complex numbers
- Strings
- Array descriptors

Real numbers exist on the math stack in standard floating-point form. They can be identified by a legal BCD digit on top of the stack.

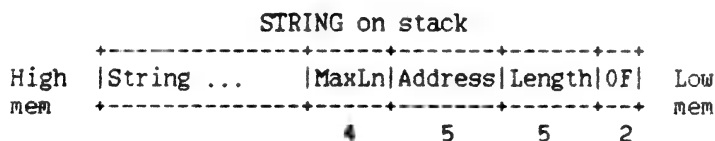
HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution



Complex numbers consist of an E-digit on top of the stack, with a zero-digit just below it. This is the complex stack signature. Below the stack signature are two standard floating-point numbers: the imaginary part on top of the real part.

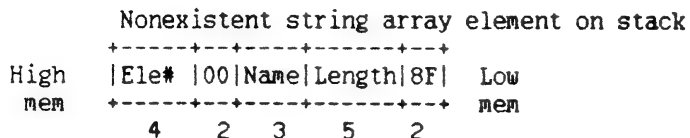


Strings have an F0 stack signature. Below the signature is a five-nibble field giving the length of the string in nibbles. Then come nine nibbles which can normally be ignored; they contain destination information for string assignment if they contain anything useful at all. This information includes the maximum string length and the address of the destination. Hence, a string stack header consists of 16 nibbles; the ASCII text of the string lies under the header, with the first character of the string toward the bottom of the stack, and the last character next to the header.

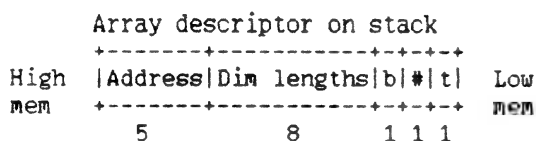


A string may have another representation on the stack if it was created by pushing an element of a nonexistent string array. In this case, the tag is a F8 instead of F0. The length field will indicate a null string. The name of the variable referenced and the element number will be filled in. This is treated as a null string by system routines. This item is 16 nibbles in length with the following format:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution



Any other object on the stack must be an array descriptor, with its offset field changed to the absolute address of the array's data area.



b=Option base , t=Type

7.4.4 Expression Execution Utilities

Utilities exist for popping and type-checking arguments, along with reentry points for pushing results.

POP1N and POP2N are used for popping numeric arguments. Attempting to pop a string or an array descriptor with these routines causes an error to occur. If the carry is set upon return from these routines, the arguments are complex.

MPOP1N and MPOP2N establish the math modes, pop arguments, and test for exceptional inputs before returning. These utilities all leave the stack pointer (D1) positioned for placing a standard floating-point number back on the stack.

POP1S tests for a string on the stack. Attempting to pop a number or array descriptor with this routine causes an error to occur. Upon return, the string length is left in the lower 5 nibbles of the A-register, with the stack pointer (D1) at the topmost character of the string text.

REVPOP has the same exit conditions as POP1S, but the string is reversed before returning. REV\$ is a string reversal routine, which returns with the stack pointer unaltered.

7.4.5 Function Returns

Reentry points are called function returns. The mainframe code has established function returns for real numbers only. FNRTN1 assumes the PC is still in D0, and the result is in C. FNRTN2 assumes the PC has been moved to A, with the result in C. These two function returns are for placing new items, such as constants, on the stack; a stack collision check is performed. These returns are generally NOT used for functions which have arguments, since the stack pointer is usually already where it needs to be upon return. FNRTN3 assumes the PC is in A, and the result is in C. FNRTN4 assumes the PC is back in D0, and the result is in C. A typical numeric function will be implemented with a call to a POP routine, calls to appropriate math routines, and a jump to an appropriate FNRTN (usually FNRTN4). If a function places its result on the stack itself (as do most string functions), EXPR is the appropriate return; this begins processing of the next token.

7.5 Implementation of Function Execution

7.5.1 Entry Point

The execution address should be marked as an entry point to allow the loader to fill in lex tables. Immediately above the entry point is the range of valid argument counts.

Above this is a string of nibbles describing each parameter. Each nibble should have the 8's bit set if a numeric parameter is allowed. The 4's bit should be set if a string parameter is allowed. The 2's bit should be set if an array parameter is required. The 1's bit is not defined but should be zero. One nibble is required for each possible parameter.

The minimum argument count (0-F) is specified first, followed by the maximum argument count (0-F).

For example:

NIBHEX 8	3rd parameter numeric (if present)
NIBHEX 8	2nd parameter numeric
NIBHEX 4	1st parameter string
NIBHEX 23	Argument count range (min=2,max=3)
=SUBST\$ P=C 15	Load actual number of parms in P
?P= 2	Check if only 2 parms
GOYES SUBST2	

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

where 2 is the minimum argument count and 3 is the maximum argument count. All XFNS have a 7 nibble tokenization, the last nibble of which is the actual number of parameters passed to the function. If the function has a variable number of parameters, the execution code for the function can find the actual number of parameters by looking at the sign field of the C register. If a function has a fixed number of parameters, it may assume that the proper number of parameters are on the stack.

Four hardware stack levels are available for function execution. A complete list of RAM that is available to and restricted from function execute is in the "Memory Structure" chapter.

7.5.2 Entry Conditions

The current program counter location is contained in D0 and has been updated past the tokens that specify the function. The 'B' field of the B register contains the table entry number to the function execution code.

The arithmetic stack expands from the end of available memory (AVMEME) toward lower memory making use of available memory. At the time of the function call, D1 points to the "top" of the stack.

If the stack grows as a result of the function call, a check should be made to prevent the stack from exceeding available memory, by comparing the stack pointer with AVMEMS. No LEEWAY need be maintained during expression execution, ie. all of available memory is truly available.

7.5.3 Exit Conditions

The program counter is stored in D0. The stack pointer is stored in D1. Other than these data pointers, the function need not preserve any CPU registers (working, scratch, or status). See the section on function returns under expression execution for information on how to resume the expression interpreter once the function's execution has completed.

7.5.4 Error Exits through MFERR/BSERR

Error exits from statements and functions require only four things:

- 1) S13 is set when appropriate (indicates program running)
- 2) PCADDR is accurate
- 3) The error number is loaded in C.
- 4) P is set appropriately to select options (set ERRN, display error prefix, etc.). See MFERR* documentation or the "Message

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution

Handling" chapter for details.
Entry points MFERR and BSERR are used for processing errors generated in the BASIC operating system. MFERR requires that the error number is loaded in C(B); this error exit can be used for mainframe generated errors (LEX file #00). However, BSERR requires that the error number is loaded in C(3-0), specifying both the LEX ID number and the message number. It is acceptable to use BSERR for mainframe-generated errors, as long as C(3-2) is filled with zeros.

7.5.5 "Funny" Functions

The execution address of tFFN is exactly the same as tXFN. This will cause the execution address of that particular FFN to be called. One peculiar side effect of using XFN execute to get to the execution address is that the program counter (D0) will have been moved to point past the first nibble of the length byte. The first nibble of the length byte will have been read into C(S) since XFN thought it was reading a parameter count. The FFN execute should merely move D0 one nibble farther to finish skipping the length byte.

The FFN should do what it has to in order to leave exactly one item on the stack. It should not alter what was already on the stack--this is the nature of parameterless functions.

Once it has its value pushed on the stack, it should jump to EXPR, or use any of the normal entry points.

BASIC FILE CONSIDERATIONS	CHAPTER 8
---------------------------	-----------

When extending system capability through BASIC, there are several items to keep in mind.

8.1 ROM Generation

Before a BASIC file is RUN, the system chains together all its labels, subprograms, and user-defined functions. Also, any line number references are compiled as they are encountered in the running program. If a file in ROM is not already chained or does not have its line number references compiled, then at the time it's invoked an error will result as the system attempts to write to ROM. There are several ways to avoid this unpleasant situation.

8.1.1 Chaining a BASIC File

There are three ways to chain a file:

- 1) COPY it. The destination file will be chained.
- 2) RUN it.
- 3) TRANSFORM it into TEXT, and then back into BASIC.

Keep in mind that any time a file is modified, it is no longer chained.

8.1.2 Compiling Line Number References

To compile all line number references in the current file, simply execute:

```
RENUMBER 1,1,1,1
```

This statement acts as a NOP, except for the fact that it compiles line number references (No line numbers are changed).

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
BASIC File Considerations

8.2 BASIC Application Standards

8.2.1 Preserving The Main Environment

When the user runs a BASIC file to perform a given application, every effort should be made to preserve as much of the user's environment as possible. This includes variables, user flags, display format, etc. To further this end, we suggest that any BASIC application program which may destroy or use BASIC variables, should save the user environment via a CALL statement.

For example, say there is an application program, PLOT, which by necessity must use BASIC variables. If the first line of PLOT is as follows, then the user's variables will remain intact:

```
10 CALL PLOT @ SUB PLOT
```

Now the user can safely invoke PLOT by simply saying:
> RUN PLOT

8.3 BASIC Packing Techniques

With some forethought, you can use features of the HP-71 BASIC interpreter to minimize the amount of memory that your BASIC programs require. Listed below are our suggestions, along with the actual memory savings.

- 1) Don't use GOTO immediately after THEN or ELSE:

```
Change:  
10 IF FLAG(X) THEN GOTO 100  
To:  
10 IF FLAG(X) THEN 100  
This saves three bytes.
```

- 2) Check for a null string using the LEN function:

```
Change:  
10 IF A$#"" THEN .....  
To:  
20 IF LEN(A$) THEN ....  
This saves three bytes.
```

- 3) Instead of using THEN and ELSE to make one of two assignments

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
BASIC File Considerations

to a variable, do one assignment followed by a conditional to determine if the other assignment should be done:

Change:

```
10 IF X THEN K=L ELSE K=P
```

To:

```
10 K=P @ IF X THEN K=L
```

This saves three bytes.

- 4) Instead of testing a flag to determine if a variable (or value) should be incremented, just add the flag value:

Change:

```
10 IF FLAG(X) THEN K=K+1
```

To:

```
10 K=K+FLAG(X)
```

This saves five bytes.

Change:

```
20 IF NOT FLAG(X) THEN K=K+1
```

To:

```
20 K=K+NOT FLAG(X)
```

This also saves five bytes

- 5) Use single character alpha variables, instead of alpha-digit variables. There is a one byte savings for each occurrence.
- 6) Concatenate a statement to the previous one, instead of using a new line number. There is a two byte savings for each concatenated statement.

8.4 Version Number

It is strongly recommended that each BASIC software application respond to the VER\$ poll to indicate the version of the software.

This requires a LEX file to be included with no keywords, but the appropriate code to indicate the proper VER\$. The last LEX ID for Custom Products - Special (244) is used as the LEX ID for VER\$ response of BASIC applications. This LEX ID may be used for words by a particular custom application, without conflict.

The VER\$ string should indicate the application name, using 3 or less characters, followed by a colon and a single letter. The single letter indicates the specific version number. The letter "A" is the first released version.

The following examples show VER\$ strings for three HP71 BASIC applications:

VER\$ String	Application Pac
--------------	-----------------

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
BASIC File Considerations

```
-----  
CIR:A      HP71 Circuit Analysis Pac - Version A  
FIN:A      HP71 Finance Pac - Version A  
SUR:A      HP71 Surveying Pac - Version A
```

The LEX file containing the VER\$ should be the first file in the ROM and have a name representing the application. It is suggested that the file be protected from being copied. This can be accomplished either by designating the file as Private, or by ensuring that the file name has some lower case characters. The latter can be done by poking into the file name field of the file header:

```
10 DIM F$,N$,A$[5]  INTEGER N  
20 DISP "Set name to lower case"  
30 INPUT "Old filename: ";F$  
40 INPUT "New name: ",F$;N$  
50 A$=ADDR$(F$)  
60 N$=(N$&"   ")[1,8]  
70 FOR I=1 TO 8  
80 N=NUM(N$[I])  
90 POKE A$,DTH$(N)[5]&DTH$(N)[4,4]  
100 A$=DTH$(HTD(A$)+2)  
110 NEXT I  
120 DISP "Done with name change"
```

The following examples show the names of the LEX files containing the VER\$ for three BASIC application pacs:

VER\$ LEX File Name	Application Pac
-----	-----
Circuit	HP71 Circuit Analysis
Finance	HP71 Finance
SurveyV	HP71 Surveying

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Utilities

UTILITIES	CHAPTER 9
-----------	-----------

This chapter provides a brief overview of some operating system entry points which are useful for external software development.

9.1 Decompile Utilities

Entry	Description
GTEXT1	Given a token, outputs the corresponding text. Includes numerous entry conditions and entry points which provides for outputting leading and/or trailing blanks.
EOLDC	Checks for statement terminators: t@, t!, tEOL.
EOLXC*	Calls EOLDC above; if statement terminator found, does not return, but handles rest of statement by going to OUTELA. If no statement terminator found, returns to caller with carry clear.
VARDC	Decompiles variables.
LIN#DC	Decompiles and outputs a line number, suppressing leading zeros.
ASCICK	Copies characters from input stream to output buffer, until encountering a character with high bit set.
EXPRDC	Decompiles expression pointed to by D1.
FILDC*	Decompiles file specifier.
ARYDC	Decompiles array which was compiled by ARRYCK.
LABLDC	Assuming D1 is at tLBLRF (label reference token), steps over tLBLRF. If label is a literal, outputs it within quotes; otherwise decompiles string expression. Returns with carry clear.
SKIPDC	Useful if an unrecognized XWORD is encountered; skips D1 to the end of the statement and goes to OUTELA (see below).

9.2 Display and Keyboard Control Utilities

9.2.1 Display Control

The LCD display and all associated HP-IL "DISPLAY IS" devices may be controlled by sending characters to the DSPCHA/DSPCHC routine. In general, these characters are processed as if they are being passed on to some external display device but the processing is actually performed by the HP-71 CPU. This includes insert mode, processing escape sequences and in general all necessary maintenance of the display buffer and status information.

The display buffer is controlled by sending characters as described above but the actual LCD is generally not affected by these characters. It is only updated when the BLDDSP routine is called. At that time the display buffer and status information is used to decide which bits of the LCD should be on. It also controls the left and right arrows that indicate whether the buffer extends past either end of the window.

9.2.1.1 Carriage Return and Line Feed

When a carriage return is sent to the display (via DSPCHA) it will cause BLDDSP to be called automatically. If the display needs to be updated to reflect the current display then BLDDSP must be called explicitly. In general calling BLDDSP doesn't take long if the LCD already reflects the display buffer since a status bit (Exact) is cleared whenever anything is done to the display buffer that might alter the LCD bit pattern that would be built. BLDDSP returns immediately if that bit indicates that the display is already built correctly.

When a carriage return is sent to the display, the cursor (and FIRSTC) should be reset to zero. What actually happens is that a flag is set so that when the next character is sent to the display these values will be reset before the character is processed. This allows the information needed to properly build and scroll the display to be preserved until it is no longer needed.

The character scroll rate is checked when a carriage return is received. If it is zero, then the first character in the display is moved so that the last character in the buffer will fit in the display. If the scroll rate is infinite, then the display is built starting at the first character in the buffer (pointed to by FIRSTC). In all other cases, the display is built starting where

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Utilities

FIRSTC points (usually zero) and then the character scroll delay is performed, then the FIRSTC is incremented and the display rebuilt. This is repeated until all characters in the display buffer have been viewed.

When a line feed is sent to the display, the buffer should be cleared. What actually happens is that a flag is set so that when the next character is sent to the display the buffer is cleared before then character is processed. This allows the characters in the display buffer to be scrolled through the display even though the display has technically been cleared.

The display delay is triggered whenever a line feed character is sent to the display unless the cursor is on (CurOff clear) or the delay suppress bit (XDelay) is set.

9.2.1.2 Display Escape Code Sequences

The HP-71 display accepts the following escape sequences:

- Esc Q -- Insert cursor
- Esc N -- Insert cursor (with wrap)
- Esc R -- Replace cursor
- Esc C -- Cursor right
- Esc D -- Cursor left
- Esc H -- Home cursor
- Esc J -- Clear Display (Treated same as ESC K)
- Esc M -- Delete through end of line
- Esc > -- Cursor on
- Esc < -- Cursor off
- Esc E -- Reset display
- Esc P -- Delete char
- Esc O -- Delete char (with wrap)
- Esc % <col> <row> -- Set cursor position absolute
- Esc Ctrl-C -- Cursor far right
- Esc Ctrl-D -- Cursor far left

9.2.1.3 Scrolling The Display

Once characters have been sent to the display buffer it is frequently necessary to allow the user to scroll the contents of the buffer using the cursor keys. The SCRLLR routine does this. It will watch the keyboard and cause the display to scroll whenever one of the scrolling keys is hit. It will return when the user presses a key other than a scrolling key. It will also time out after ten minutes if no key has been pressed.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Utilities

9.2.1.4 Setting The Bit Pattern In The Display

The actual bit pattern in the display is normally set by BLDDSP to reflect the display buffer. However, at a lower level, the BLDBIT routine may be used to set the bit pattern according to some other buffer. This is used to implement the "VIEW" and "ERRM" keys.

9.2.2 Keyboard Interface

Keyboard scanning is performed by KEYSCN. This routine is called by the interrupt routine but may be called from anywhere. If it is called too often key bouncing may result. To prevent this, the entry point DEBNCE can be used to cause a specified wait before performing the keyscan.

When KEYSCN finds keys newly down it adds to the queue of keys in the keyboard buffer. This buffer holds up to 15 keys. If the buffer is full then the new keys are discarded.

The POPBUF routine should be used to remove keys from the buffer. This routine sets up the buffer so that repeating keys can work.

9.2.3 Summary

Entry	Description
BLDDSP	Build LCD pattern from display buffer.
BLDBIT	Build LCD from specified buffer.
DEBNCE	Debounce key before keyscan.
DSPCHA	Send character in A(B) to display buffer.
DSPCHC	Send character in C(B) to display buffer.
DSPRST	Reset display.
KEYSCN	Keyboard scanning.
POPBUF	Remove keys from buffer.

9.3 Expression Execution Utilities

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Utilities

9.3.1 Utilities for Pushing Items Onto Math Stack

Entry	Description
EXPEXC	The normal entry point for expression execution. Evaluates an expression by processing the tokenized stream. The value(s) are left on the stack when done.
FNRTN1	Resumes expression execution after pushing a value onto the stack. Related entry points are FNRTN2, FNRTN3, and FNRTN4. Further described in the "Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution" chapter.
BF2STK	Adds a string to the stack from a string of characters in memory.
STKCHR	Creates a string on the stack one character at a time. It works with ADHEAD to build a proper stack item.
ADHEAD	Adds the proper string header to a string that has been placed on the the stack by STKCHR.

9.3.2 Utilities for Popping Items Off Math Stack

The following utilities are used for popping numeric or string arguments off the MATH Stack, and for checking their type.

Entry	Description
POP1N	Pops a numeric argument. If item is a string or a dope vector, a fatal error occurs. If the carry is set upon return, the argument is complex.
POP2N	Pops two numeric arguments. If either item is a string or a dope vector, a fatal error occurs. If the carry is set upon return, the arguments are complex (coerced to match each other if necessary).
MPOP1N	Similar to POP1N, but establishes the math modes, pops an argument, and tests for an exceptional value before returning. Leaves the stack pointer (D1) positioned for placing a standard floating-point number back on the stack.
MPOP2N	Similar to POP2N, but establishes the math modes, pops arguments, and tests for an exceptional values before returning. Leaves the stack pointer (D1) positioned for placing a standard floating-point number back on

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Utilities

the stack.

- POP1S Tests for a string on the stack. Attempting to pop a number or dope vector with this routine results in a fatal error. Upon return, the string length is left in the CPU, with the stack pointer at the topmost (lowest address) character of the string text.
- REVPOP Has the same exit conditions as POP1S, but the string is reversed before returning.
- REV\$ Reverses character order of a string on the stack. Returns with the MATH Stack pointer unaltered.
- POPMTH Moves the stack pointer past one item on the stack. This item may be string, real, complex, etc.

9.4 File I/O Utilities

The following utilities are used to create files, open files, read or write arbitrary data to or from files, and to close files. For further information on file access, see the "File System" chapter in this volume and the "File Utilities" chapter in Volume II of this document.

Entry	Description
CLOSEF	Close an open file.
CRTF	Create a file of arbitrary type, in mainframe or on mass medium. Does not open file.
FIBADR	Fetches the address of an open file's FIB into register D0.
FINDF	Find a file in memory given its name and memory device type.
FSPECx	Evaluate (execute) a tokenized file specification to determine the file name and device type.
MVMEM+	Expand or contract the contents of a file in memory. May be used to delete a file from the file chain.
OPENF	Open a file given its name and device type.
PRGFMF	Purge a file in memory.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Utilities

PURGEF	Purge a file in memory or on mass medium.
RDBYTA	Read a byte from an opened byte-oriented file. See also WRBYTC.
READNB	Read an arbitrary number of nibbles from an opened file of any file type. See also WRITNB.
RPLLIN	Replace, delete, or insert a line or stretch of any number of nibs in a memory file.
WRBYTC	Write a byte to an opened byte-oriented file. See also RDBYTA.
WRITNB	Write an arbitrary number of nibbles to an opened file of any type.

9.5 Flag Utilities

Entry	Description
UPDANN	Update annunciators according to user and system flags.
SFLAGC	Clear a system flag and update annunciators.
SFLAGS	Set a system flag and update annunciators.
SFLAG?	Test a system flag.
SFLAGT	Toggle a system flag.
RNDAHx	Pop, round, convert real argument to hex integer.

9.6 Math Utilities

What follows is a brief description of some built-in HP-71 math routines that may prove useful. The routines are grouped by category.

9.6.1 Numeric Comparison

Entry	Description
TST15	Compare two 15-digit arguments.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Utilities

9.6.2 Trig Routines

Entry	Description
ARG15	Compute angle of pair (x,y) of 15-digit arguments.
SIN15	Sine of a 15-Digit argument.
COS15	Cosine of a 15-Digit argument.
TAN15	Tangent of a 15-Digit argument.

9.6.3 Inverse Trig Routines

Entry	Description
ASIN15	Arcsine of a 15-digit argument.
ACOS15	Arccosine of a 15-digit argument.
ATAN15	Arctangent of a 15-digit argument.

9.6.4 Arithmetic & Square Root

Entry	Description
ADDONE	Add one (x+1) to a 15-digit argument.
SUBONE	Subtract one (x-1) from a 15-digit argument.
1/X15	Invert (1/x) a 15-digit argument.
AD2-15	Add two 15-digit arguments.
AD15S	Add two 15-digit arguments, preserving SB & XM.
SB15S	Subtract two 15-digit arguments, preserving SB & XM.
MP2-15	Multiply two 15-digit arguments.
DV2-15	Divide two 15-digit arguments.
SQR15	Square Root of a 15-digit argument.
SQRSAV	Square Root of a 15-digit argument, preserving SB & XM.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Utilities

9.6.5 Integer-Fraction Functions

Entry	Description
CLRFRC	Clear the fractional part.
INFR15	Locate decimal point.

9.6.6 Logarithmic Functions

Entry	Description
LN15	Natural Logarithm ($\ln(x)$) of a 15-digit argument.
LN1+15	$\ln(1+x)$ of a 15-digit argument (LOGP1 in HP-71 BASIC).
LGT15	Log base 10 of a 15-digit argument (LOG10 in HP-71 BASIC).

9.6.7 Exponential & Involution

Entry	Description
EXP15	e^x of a 15-digit argument (EXP(x) in HP-71 BASIC).
EX-115	$[e^x - 1]$ of a 15-digit argument (EXPM1(x) in HP-71 BASIC).
YX2-15	Involution of a 15-digit argument (power function y^x in HP-71 BASIC).
EX15	Exponent value of a 15-digit argument (EXPONENT(2x) in HP-71 BASIC).

9.6.8 Conversion Between 15-forms and 12-forms

Entry	Description
SPLITA	Split (unpack) 12-form in A into (A,B).
SPLITC	Split (unpack) 12-form in C into (C,D).
SPLITAC	Split 12-forms in A & C into (A,B) & (C,D).
SPLTAX	Split 12-form in A, replace signaling NaN, and set XM.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Utilities

uRES12 Pack 15-form math result into a 12-form, consulting
 rounding modes & TRAP values.

uRES12 Variation of uRES12 preserving D1.

uRND>P Round 15-form to p digit 15 form.

9.6.9 Pop, Test, Prepare 1 Argument

Entry	Description
ARGPR+	Read user modes, fall into ARGPRP.
ARGPRP	Pop real, detect nonfiniteness, split & normalize.
ARGSTA	Read user modes, fall into AGRST-.
ARGST-	Pop real, error for NaN, detect nonfiniteness.
POP1R	Pop real, error for complex.

9.6.10 Scratch Math Stack

Entry	Description
RCSCR	Pop 15-digit value into (C,D) from top of stack.
RCLW1	Recall 15-digit value into (A,B) from top of stack.
RCLW2	Recall 15-digit value from 1 below top of stack.
RCLW3	Recall 15-digit value from 2 below top of stack.
RCL*	Recall 15-digit value from P below top of stack.
SISCR	Push 15-digit value in A/B onto top of stack.

9.6.11 Factorial

Entry	Description
FCSTRT	Factorial for finite 15-digit nonnegative integer.

9.6.12 Statistical Utilities

Entry	Description
-------	-------------

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Utilities

GETSA Get starting address of current STAT array, test number
 of variables and length of array.

VARNBR Pop 1 real argument and fall into VARNB-.

VARNB- Convert, round to hex integer, create NaN for invalid
 variable number.

9.6.13 Miscellaneous Math Utilities

Entry	Description
BIASA+	Bias (or unbiased) the exponent of a 15-digit argument into (A,B).
BIASC+	Bias (or Unbias) the exponent of 15-digit argument into (C,D).
CLASSA	Classify argument into one of 12 pigeonholes.
DBLSUB	Double precision fixed-point subtract: (A,C), (B,D).
DBLPI4	Create 31-digit (double precision) PI/4 in (B,D).
EX15M	Fetch exponent of a 15-digit argument.
FINITA	Test for a finite number.
FINITC	Test for a finite number.
FLIP8	Toggle status bit S8.
FLIP10	Toggle status bit S10.
FLIP11	Toggle status bit S11.
GETCON	Fetch constant from Numeric Constant Table located at TRC90.
GETVAL	Fetch constant from constant table at arbitrary address.
HNDLFL	Set exception flags.
HTRAP	Consult TRAP values.
INVNaN	Exit code for an IVL operation.
MAKE1	Create 12-dig value '1' in C and compare with B.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Utilities

MESSG	Send out warning messages.
MSN15	Select most significant NaN in 2-Argument function.
ORGSB	Set Sticky Bit (SB) if s5=1.
ORXM	Set External Module Missing bit (XM) if s9=1.
ORSB	Set Sticky Bit (SB) if s7=1.
PI/2	Create 15-digit PI/2 in (C,D).
SAVGSB	Save Sticky Bit (SB) in s5.
SAVEXM	Save External Module Missing bit (XM) in s9, and Sticky Bit (SB) in s7.
SAVESB	Save Sticky Bit (SB) in s7.
SHFLAC	Double precision left shift (A,C).
SHFRAC	Double precision right shift (A,C).
SHFRBD	Double precision right shift (B,D).
TWO*	Double precision doubler.
XYEX	Exchange (A,B) with (C,D).

9.7 Parse Utilities

9.7.1 Parse Input Utilities

Entry	Description
GNXTCR	Skips over any blanks, returns the first non-blank character in A(B); leaves D1 at the first non-blank character. In the case where D1 already points at a non-blank character at the time GNXTCR is called, D1 is not moved.
NTOKEN	Skips over any blanks, and returns the tokenization of what follows in register A. D1 is past what was tokenized. LEXPTR contains the value of D1 (past any blanks) prior to the call.
RESPTR	Restores D1 from the value saved in LEXPTR by NTOKEN.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Utilities

WRDSCN Parses current input characters into a token and checks for a match with one of a given table of tokens. If a match is found, the token is output and control is passed to the corresponding address specified in the table. This is an appropriate routine to use if the presence of any number of keywords is legitimate at this point in the input stream. For example, OPTION parse, which allows only BASE, ROUND, or ANGLE as following keywords:

```
GOSUB WRDSCN
CON(2) = tBASE           Goto FIXP if tBASE found
REL(3) = FIXP
CON(2) = tANGLE          Goto OPTP10 if tANGLE found
REL(3) = OPTP10
CON(2) = tROUND          Goto OPTP20 if tROUND found
REL(3) = OPTP20
CON(2) = 0               Terminates table
*
GONC OPTP30              Returns here with carry clr if
                          nothing in table found
```

This utility should be used to guarantee a specific keyword is found by the lexical analyzer. Since WRDSCN automatically restarts the lexical analyzer, this prevents a shorter keyword in another LEX file from being returned instead.

9.7.2 Parse/Decompile Output Utilities

Often it is necessary to output characters or tokens to the output buffer, or just to skip D0 (output pointer) over a certain number of nibbles while checking for sufficient memory. There are numerous utilities to do this. In addition to the entry point names given below, each utility (except OUTNIB) has additional entry points to output from register C instead of A.

Entry	Description
OUTNIB	Outputs a single nibble from the low nib of C.
OUT1TK	Outputs a byte from A(B). Alternate entry point OUTBYT outputs a byte from C(B).
OUT2TK	Outputs two bytes from the lower 4 nibbles of A. Alternate entry point OUT2TC outputs from C.
OUT3TK	Outputs three bytes from the lower 6 nibbles of A. Alternate entry point OUT3TC outputs from C.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Utilities

OUTNBS Outputs n nibbles from the lower n nibbles of A. P must be set to n-1. Alternate entry point OUTNBC outputs from C.

9.7.3 Parse General Utilities

Entry	Description
FSPECp	Parses and outputs valid file specifier.
FILEP	Parses valid file name. If it is a string expression, then it is tokenized and written to output buffer. If it is a literal, the file name is returned in A with C(S) set for WP (word through pointer) write of the file name characters.
EXPPAR	Parses expression; returns information on whether expression was valid and whether it was string or numeric. If it was valid, calls NTOKEN on whatever followed the expression and returns.
NUMCK	Parses valid numeric expression; has numerous entry points.
STRGCK	Parses valid string expression.
CATCHR	Categorizes character in A(B) (or character pointed to by D1) as (a) digit, (b) letter, (c) special character [*,+,-,.,/,], or (d) other.
CNVWUC	Converts next 8 characters in input buffer to uppercase. There are multiple entry points, including one to skip over preceding blanks.
COMCK	Sees if next token is tCOMMA.
LBLINP	Parses line number or label.
EOLCK	Checks for statement terminator: t@, t!, tEOL.
ARRYCK	Verifies array subscripts; allows one or two subscripts. Number of subscripts returned in B(A).
SPLVRP	Parses and outputs simple variable, or error exits.
NXTP	Parses and outputs simple numeric variable, or error exits.
OUTVAR	Given a variable token in A, outputs the variable.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Utilities

9.8 Statement Execution Utilities

Entry	Description
FSPECx	Evaluates file specifiers; will POLL for any not recognized by mainframe.
FILXQ^	Evaluates mainframe file specifiers and dedicated device specifiers; devices currently accepted are PORT, MAIN, CARD, PCRD.
EXPEXC	Evaluates expression pointed to by D0. Upon exit, evaluated expression is on the stack. See EXPEXC documentation for details.
FINDF	Given a file specifier returned from FSPECx or FILXQ^, searches for the given file. Indicates upon exit, whether or not file found. If file found, provides information on where. Numerous entry points.
EOLXCK	Given a token in A(B), returns with carry set if it is a statement terminator: tEOL, t@, t!, tELSE.

9.8.1 Utilities for PRINT class statements

PRINT and DISP statements are very similar. The mainframe may be extended to allow other statements of the same class, such as OUTPUT. What these statements have in common is that they take an expression list and output ASCII strings to a device. The way the system works is that a nibble of RAM (STMIR0(0)) is set to a digit that identifies the type of the statement. This nibble is used to determine the current information on how to output to the proper device.

The CKINFO routine looks at this nibble and sets up in statement scratch RAM all the information required. For DISP and PRINT this information includes the address of a handler routine for that device, a pointer to the relevant position/width counters, and the endline string. Other parts of statement scratch may be used to hold other information necessary for the handler. The handler is a routine that is capable of sending a block of characters to the output device. Immediately above the handler code is a 5 nibble relative offset to a routine that should be called once the entire statement has been finished--this allows for necessary cleanup, ect.

Thus, execution of statements of the PRINT class is divided into

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Utilities

three parts:

PART1: Set STMTRO(0) to the statement type and call CKINFO to set up for parts 2 and 3.

PART2: This is the handler that knows how to send a block of characters to a device.

PART3: This is the clean up routine that is called at the end of the entire statement.

The at STMTRO nibble is preserved throughout the execution of the statement. Even if the user changes the PRINTER IS assignment in the middle of a PRINT statement (via a multi-line user-defined function) this nibble will still say that it is a PRINT statement. If a multi-line user-defined function is referenced within an expression to be output, CKINFO will recalculate all the information pertinent to the current statement. This insures that the output always get sent to the right place in the right format.

To implement a new statement of the PRINT class, it is necessary to be allocated a unique statement type to be filled in STMTRO(0). The CKINFO routine polls (pPRTCL) to find a routine to fill in statement scratch area with the appropriate information. This poll must be handled. The PRINT statement causes a different poll (pPRTIS) which determines the PRINTER IS device if any.

9.9 System Buffer Utilities

Entry	Description
I/OFND	Given a buffer ID, returns pointer to that buffer.
I/OALL	Given a buffer ID and desired buffer length, either expands or contracts existing buffer or creates buffer of the specified length and ID.
I/OEXP	Expands buffer by a specified number of nibbles.
I/OCON	Shrinks buffer by a specified number of nibbles.
I/OCOL	Shrinks buffer to length zero.
I/ODAL	Deletes (deallocates) specified buffer.
I/ORES	Sets high bit of buffer ID to preserve buffer during pCONF.
IOFSCR	Finds available scratch buffer ID.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Utilities

9.10 Variable Storage Utilities

To process an assignment statement, expression execute (routine EXPEXC) is called to evaluate the destination variable to the left of the equal sign. If the destination is legal, certain information must be saved away such that it can be retrieved after expression execute has been called to evaluate the expression to the right of the equal sign. The utility DEST saves this information away in Statement Scratch RAM so that when EXPEXC is called it will be preserved and updated if memory moves (see description of DEST below).

Following expression execute, the B register looks like:

```
B:  +-----+-----+-----+-----+
    |t|2nd Index|1st Index|Address|
    +-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

t = type (= C minus actual type)

- 2 -- Integer
- 1 -- Short
- 0 -- Real
- F -- Complex short
- E -- Complex
- D -- String
- 8 -- Nonexistent numeric array
- C -- Nonexistent string array

2nd Index = Second index of substring function (string only)

1st Index = First index of substring function (string only)

Address = Variable address if variable exists (high nibble will be nonzero).
= Variable name if variable does not exist (3-digit format with 00 in nibbles 3 and 4).
= 00000 if an out-of-bound array element has been specified.

Other destination information resides in function scratch following expression execute. F-R1-0 contains the element number computed by the array reference. This is used by TRACE. F-R1-3 contains the subscript count used in a reference to a nonexistent array. This is used when an implicit array declaration is recognized.

Since strings may be stored directly into substrings, the stack header for the actual strings must sometimes carry destination

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Utilities

information. The substring function maintains the destination information kept in the B-register and in function scratch with this stack header information. See the section on "Data Types" in the "Internal Data Representation" chapter.

9.10.1 Summary

Entry	Description
DEST	Stores destination variable information in the following areas of Statement Scratch RAM: S-R0-0 = Variable address or name S-R0-1 = First substring parameter S-R0-2 = Second substring parameter S-R0-3 = Variable type S-R1-0 = Array element number S-R1-1 = Maximum string length S-R1-3 = Subscript count
STORE	Takes information placed in statement scratch and uses it to store a value from the top of the math stack into a variable. It will create the variable if necessary.
ADDRSS	Very low level routine that scans a variable chain to find the address of a variable. Alternative entry point is ADRS40.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Message Handling

MESSAGE HANDLING	CHAPTER 10
------------------	------------

This chapter describes, in five sections:

- 1) BASIC keywords involving messages
- 2) Details on using the message handling routine to generate errors, warnings or system messages.
- 3) Insufficient Memory Error.
- 4) Conventions for Foreign Language message translation.
- 5) Construction of message tables, as found in LEX files.

Except for two subsections ("BASIC Keywords Involving Messages", and "BASIC Error Trapping", below), the discussion in this chapter is from the viewpoint of assembly language. The options discussed are ones an assembly language routine may select when calling the message handling routines. Subsection "BASIC error trapping" discusses error trapping at the BASIC language level.

10.1 BASIC Keywords Involving Messages

10.1.1 ERRN

The function ERRN returns the number of the last error or warning detected by the computer. Assembly language routines which call the message handler determine if ERRN is set or not.

10.1.2 ERRL

The function ERRL returns the number of the last line in which an error or warning occurred; if it occurred in a non-BASIC program, ERRL returns zero. Assembly language routines which call the message handler determine if ERRL is set or not.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Message Handling

10.1.3 ERRM\$

The function **ERRM\$** returns the last error or warning message, as a string. **ERRM\$** is derived from the value of **ERRN**.

If **ERRN** is an error number from a LEX file, and that LEX file is removed from the computer, **ERRM\$** will return the null string (until **ERRN** is again changed); this is because the **ERRM\$** searches the LEX file message table for the message.

The keystroke **[g][ERRM]** displays the last error or warning message as long as a key is held down. The message is built in the same manner as **ERRM\$**.

10.1.4 MSG\$ Function

The BASIC keyword **MSG\$** has been implemented in LEX file #82 of the User's Library. Its usage is similar to **ERRM\$**, except that it accepts an argument (a decimal message number). E.g., **MSG\$(255131)** returns message number 131 from LEX file 255. Its purpose is twofold:

- 1) Whereas **ERRM\$** returns the last error or warning message, **MSG\$** returns any standard message from any message table.
- 2) Through the use of the **pTRANS** poll ("translate"), it substitutes a foreign language translation of the desired message, if a language translator LEX file is present in the computer.

MSG\$ allows a BASIC user to build custom messages from any message tables. In addition, the translation capability provides a powerful tool for BASIC application packs which accept commands in any language. An excellent example is the HP-71 Text Editor, a BASIC program which stores all its commands and responses, along with its help catalog, in a message table. User input (commands and responses) are compared to entries in the message table, using **MSG\$**, allowing a language translator LEX file to drive the Text Editor in any language.

MSG\$ uses the message building utility **TBMSG\$** in the message handler. When constructing message tables, take into consideration the use of **MSG\$** to display each message. More details are provided in the sections "Foreign Language Translators", and "Message Table Construction".

10.2 Message Handling

The message handling routine displays any standard message, including errors, warnings and system messages. Standard messages are found in tables and identified by a four digit hex number -- a two-digit LEX ID and a two-digit message ID number. In this chapter, the term "message number" usually refers to the complete four-digit constant; "message ID number" refers to the two-digit constant identifying the message within the LEX table.

The mainframe contains one message table. Each external LEX file may contain an associated message table.

The message handler is designed as a utility for any application, whether a LEX file used to extend the BASIC library, or a take-over subsystem (such as FORTH) with a distinct message style.

In its most powerful form, the message handling routine can be used as an error or warning utility, performing certain housekeeping functions such as:

- updating ERRN and ERRL
- checking if ON ERROR is in effect (errors only)
- sounding a beep
- re-displaying a parse error with the cursor
 positioned at the error

In its simplest form, the message handling routine can be used to build any message from "building block" words. These building blocks can be found in any LEX file, including the mainframe (LEX #00), the local LEX file, or a different LEX file entirely. Through the use of these building blocks, a message may be made to look like an error or warning, even if not treated that way by the message routines. See the section entitled "Foreign Language Translators", for details.

10.2.1 Message Types

The message handler allows several options, including message type, text insertion, storage of ERRN and ERRL, display delay, checking ON ERROR, and beep.

The four message types:

- 1) an error message

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

- 2) a memory error ("Insufficient Memory")
- 3) a warning message
- or 4) a system message (text only).

The calling routine determines the message type by selecting the proper entry point and entry conditions into the handling routine. The calling routine is responsible for distinguishing between errors and warnings, such as in the case of DEFAULT OFF.

The distinguishing features of each type are as follows. Entry points are discussed in the next subsection.

10.2.1.1 Effects of Error Messages

Handling the message as an error has these effects (in this order):

- 1. Sends out a pERROR poll
- 2. If eMEM message, process Memory Error
- 3. Sets ERRN and ERRL if option selected
- 4. If ON ERROR in effect, branch to ONERR
- 5. Displays prefix "ERR:" if option selected
- 6. Disallows text insertion when sending message (*)
- 7. Sounds beep
- 8. If parse error, re-displays input line

Because of steps 4, 6 and 7, selecting the error message type is most useful for BASIC operating system errors. That is, a system such as FORTH may want to avoid those effects.

*Note: a special entry point allows text insertion in error messages, if necessary. See subsection "Entry point MFERsp", below.

10.2.1.2 Effects of Memory Error Messages

Memory error messages are a subset of error messages, but because of their insidious nature (i.e., a MEMERR can occur during any low-level utility), they have separate processing:

- 1. Sends out pMEM poll
- 2. Recovers available memory (at least LEeway)
- 3. Sets ERRN and ERRL if option selected
- 4. If ON ERROR in effect, branch to ONERR
- 5. Displays prefix "ERR:" if option selected
- 6. Disallows text insertion when sending message
- 7. Sounds beep

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

See section entitled "Insufficient Memory Error" for more details on memory errors.

10.2.1.3 Effects of Warning Messages

Handling messages as warnings has these effects (in this order):

1. Sends out pWARN poll
2. Checks Quiet (flag -1), if selected, exits if set
3. If eMEM message, process Memory Error
4. Sets ERRN and ERRL if option selected
5. Does NOT check ON ERROR!
6. Displays prefix "WRN:" if option selected
7. Displays msg, with text insertions if appropriate
8. Observes display delay, if option selected
9. Sounds beep, if option selected

10.2.1.4 Effects of System Messages

The term "system message" refers to any message which is displayed without an "ERR:" or "WRN:" prefix, and doesn't branch to ON ERROR. The system message facility allows building and displaying messages for the user's information without invoking the housekeeping functions of the error routines. A system message may be built to look like an error or warning, if desired. To display a system message, the message handling routine is used as if a warning were being displayed, with the appropriate options selected:

1. Sends out pWARN poll
2. Checks Quiet (flag -1), if selected, exits if set
3. If eMEM message, processes Memory Error
4. Sets ERRN and ERRL if option selected
5. Does NOT check ON ERROR!
6. Does NOT display "WRN:" prefix (by definition)
7. Displays msg, with text insertions if appropriate
8. Observes display delay, if option selected
9. Sounds beep, if option selected

10.2.1.5 Text Insertion

One option that warnings and system messages have is to insert text at certain points in certain messages. Normally, this option is not allowed for error messages, as explained in subsection "ERRN and ERRL Considerations".

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

Text insertion points are fixed; only certain messages allow them, and these are known by the calling routine. That is, you cannot insert text except at specific points in known messages. See section "Message Table Construction" for details on constructing a message to allow text insertion.

Text insertions are in the form of digits or ASCII characters, allowing dynamic message building. Consider the case of mainframe message number 88, used by TRANSFORM execution. The message in the table looks like:

TFM WRN L{6}:{5}

where {6} and {5} indicate two types of insertion points:

- {6} specifies digits or ASCII as passed by the calling routine (with no trailing space).
- {5} specifies insertion of an entire message from a LEX table, whose number is passed by the calling routine.

When the TRANSFORM execution routine calls the message handler to display this message, it might pass, say, line number 145 for the first insertion, and message number 0051 (LEX ID #00, message number 81 in decimal) for the second insertion. When displayed, the message would look like this:

TFM WRN L145:Invalid Parm

10.2.1.6 ERRN and ERRL Considerations

Selecting to update ERRN will simultaneously cause ERRL to be updated, if indeed a program is running. This action is determined by S13 (CPU status bit 13): S13=1 implies a running program.

In addition, updating ERRN has an effect on two other functions: ERRM\$ and the [g][ERRM] keystroke. Both are constructed from the value stored in ERRN (RAM location ERR#, hex address 27FE4.)

Any message which specifies text insertion will be reconstructed for ERRM\$ and [g][ERRM] without text in that position! (It is infeasible to store the inserted text for later recall of ERRM\$ or [g][ERRM].) For this reason, normal processing of error messages never allows text insertion; the restriction requires error messages to be succinctly contained in the tables (*). When deciding whether to select the ERRN storage option, consider the effects of missing text insertions.

*Note: calling the message routines at entry point MFERSp allows an error message to employ text insertion, if necessary. See

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

subsection "Entry point MFERRsp", below.

10.2.1.7 Messages During Running Programs

Any use of the message handling routines -- whether within the BASIC operating system or not -- must consider the effects of S13 (CPU status bit 13). S13=1 implies a running program, and will have the following effects:

For errors (including MEMERR):

- CURRL and PCADDR will be updated (if the running program is not BASIC, CURRL is set to zero).
- If ERRN update is selected, ERRL will be updated.
- ON ERROR will be checked.
- If "ERR:" prefix is selected, "ERR L<#>:" will be displayed, with the line number (if the running program is not BASIC, "ERR~~" is displayed).
- The execution pointer (D0) is left at a @ token, or at the line number.

For warnings and system messages:

- CURRL and PCADDR will be updated (if the running program is not BASIC, CURRL is set to zero).
- If ERRN update is selected, ERRL will be updated.
- If "WRN:" prefix is selected, "WRN L<#>:" will be displayed, with the line number (if the running program is not BASIC, "WRN~~" is displayed).

10.2.2 Error Message Handling

The main processing routine for error messages is MFERR*. Any message processed by this entry point will sound a beep.

10.2.2.1 Entry Points

MFERR* -- This is the main error handler, a subroutine which processes errors, then returns. MFERR* requires entry with the entire message number (LEX ID and message ID) specified. MFERR* is the preferred routine to use for a non-BASIC system, say, which wants to regain control after the message is displayed. MFERR* should be called as a subroutine.

MFERR -- ("Mainframe Error") always sets LEX ID=00, specifying

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Message Handling

a message in the mainframe table. Exits to BASIC main loop. MFERR should be called with a GOVLNG (not a subroutine).

BSERR -- ("BASIC System Error") allows entry with the LEX ID of the message number specified. BSERR can be called for a mainframe error, of course, if LEX ID=00 is specified. This entry point is used to process most BASIC errors, since it always exits to the BASIC main loop. A non-BASIC system, of course, might want to use this entry point if it doesn't care that processing exits to the main loop (CALC mode, for instance, allows errors to go through BSERR, but picks up processing through a branch at the main loop). BSERR should be called with a GOVLNG (not a subroutine).

MEMER* -- This is the main Memory Error handler, a subroutine which processes Memory Errors, then returns. MEMER* requires entry with the entire message number (LEX ID and message ID) specified. Normally eMEM (0018hex) is used, but a Memory Error message from any LEX file can be specified. MEMER* is the preferred routine to use for a non-BASIC system, say which wants to regain control after the Memory Error is displayed. MEMER* should be called as a subroutine.

MEMERR -- ("Memory Error") sets P=0 which selects certain options as explained below, then falls into MEMERX. MEMERR should be called with a GOVLNG (not a subroutine).

MEMERX -- Allows any value of P (which determines which options are selected), selects the mainframe message "Insufficient Memory" (number 0018hex), processes the error and exits to the BASIC main loop. MEMERX should be called with a GOVLNG (not a subroutine).

10.2.2.2 Entry Conditions for MFERR*

To display standard error messages, call the message handler (MFERR*, MFERR, BSERR or MEMER*) with:

```
(1)-----
| P set as follows:
|   P= 1xxx "This is a Parse error" (i.e., re-display
|           input line w/cursor backup)
|           NOT ALLOWED for a Memory Error!
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

P= x1xx Do not store error number (Else store ERRN)

P= xx1x Display message only
(Else display "ERR:" & ERR1)

Bit0 of P not used at present. (**)

(2)-----

C(3-2) = LEX ID# (Hex) in whose table the message
is found (LEX ID#= 00 for mainframe)

C(B) = Message ID number (Hex)

(3)-----

If parse error, then
Input pointer (D1) points to character in
input buffer where error occurred.
INBS points to beginning of input buffer.
A(A)= addr prompt string for input re-display;
= 0 if BASIC prompt string desired.
Else D1, INBS, and A(A) not used.

(**) Bit0 of the P register is reserved for future applications,
as a way for the LEX file which generated the error to
communicate with other LEX files. The meaning of this bit is
not yet decided. In the meantime, bit0 must=0.

10.2.2.3 Parse Errors

As described above, a parse error is identified by setting bit3 in the P register before calling MFERR*. However, several entry points already exist for specific parse errors. They all set the necessary registers for entry into the message handler, report the error, re-display the line and exit to the BASIC main loop. See the chapter entitled "Statement Parse, Decompile and Execution", under the heading "Writing a Parse Routine -- Parse Errors", for details on these entry points.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Message Handling

10.2.2.4 Examples

	P= -----
Normal BASIC execution error (Store ERRN & ERRL; display "ERR L<#>:")	0
Normal BASIC Parse error (Re-display input line, store ERRN, display "ERR:")	8
----- A(A)=0 ----- D1=error location within input buffer	
External system (Text Editor, FORTH interpreter, etc.) Parse error (Don't store ERRN; display message text only; use given prompt string)	14
----- A(A)= prompt string address ----- D1=error location within input buffer	

10.2.2.5 Entry Point MFERSp

In spite of the inability of text insertion to be reconstructed for ERRMS, it has been determined that several applications desire to display error messages with text insertion. Calling a special entry point in the MFERR* routine will allow this. This entry point, MFERSp, occurs after the pERROR poll of MFERR*, so some processing must be performed before calling MFERSp. This routine, like MFERR*, is a subroutine; processing does not jump to the BASIC main loop.

Entry conditions for messages using text insertion are given below, in condition (3) under "Entry Conditions for MFWRN". Instead of the P register being used for options, C(S) is used. Otherwise, entry conditions for MFERSp are as specified for MFERR*.

Calling MFERSp must be done in the following manner:

```
<set R2 according to text insertion options>
<set C(14-13) according to text insert options>
<set C(S) bits according to MFERR* options>
<set C(3-0)=message number>
R0=C          Store options, msg# in R0
SETHEX
GOSBVL =POLL  pERROR poll.
CON(2) =pERROR
CPEX 15      In case poll error, options.
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Message Handling

P=	12	P value for "error".
LCHEX	00F	In case poll error...
GOC	LABEL1	CRY=poll error.
?XM=0		Poll handled?
GOYES	LABEL3	Yes! Abort message.
C=R0		
LCHEX	F	C(12)=F for "error" flag.
LABEL1	GOSBVL =MFERSp	
LABEL3	P= 0	(if necessary from ?XM=0
.....		jump, above....)

10.2.3 Warning Message Handling

The entry points for Warnings are MFWRN or MFWRNQ.

Most warnings are to be suppressed if the Quiet option (flag -1) is set. The entry point for these messages is MFWRNQ; entry conditions are the same as for MFWRN, but a check is first performed on the Quiet option (the Quiet check is performed after pWARN poll). If Quiet is set, processing returns to the calling routine immediately.

The two warning handler entry points are always called as subroutines; warnings, since they do not halt processing, return to the calling routine.

The warning handler provides much the same options as the Error handler. Two notable exceptions are these:

- warnings never branch to ON ERROR
- warnings allow text insertion in designated messages.

10.2.3.1 Entry Conditions for MFWRN

To display standard messages, call the MFWRN (or MFWRNQ) routine with:

```
(1)-----
| P set as follows:
|   P= 1xxx Sound Beep.
|
|   P= x1xx Do not store warning number (Else store ERRN)
|
|   P= xx1x Display message only
|           (Else display "WRN:" & ERRL)
|
|   P= xxx1 Display message without observing DELAY.
|           (See "MFWRN DELAY Option", below)
```


HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Message Handling

(2)-----

C(3-2) = LEX ID# (Hex) in whose table the message
 is found (LEX ID# = 00 for mainframe)
C(B) = Message ID number (Hex)

(3)-----

If desired message has text insertion points:
R2 register: source of text insertion.
C(14): type of insertion.
C(13): how many characters in insertion.

R2

= actual output characters if C(14) = 1xxx
= address of output characters if C(14) = 0xxx
= additionally, if C(14) = 0000, upper byte
of R2 contains control nibbles.

C(14)

1xxx use contents of R2 register as output
0xxx use address in R2 register to find output
x000 Output is already in ASCII form

Digit output (digits can be Hex or Dec):

x001 Digit output-- replace leading 0's with blanks
x010 Digit output-- don't suppress leading 0's
x011 Digit output-- suppress leading 0's

Hex-to-Dec conversions always generate
decimal numbers with 7 digits:

x100 Hex-to-Dec: suppress up to 3 leading 0's
x101 Hex-to-Dec: suppress up to 4 leading 0's
x110 Hex-to-Dec: suppress up to 5 leading 0's
x111 Hex-to-Dec: suppress up to 6 leading 0's

C(13)

For C(14) = 1000 ("ASCII output is in R2")
C(13) = nibbles-1 to be output. Hence the
nibs MUST be even!!; C(13) odd. E.g.,
if 5 chars for output, C(13) = 9.

For C(14) = x0xx (hex or dec digit output)

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

C(13)= digits-1 to be output, hence
no more than 16.

For C(14)= xxxx (hex-to-dec conversion)

C(13)= digits-1 in number to be converted
Max hex value for conversion is FFFF
(1048575 dec), hence C(13) must be 4
or less.

For C(14)= 0000 ("ASCII output from DAT1")

C(13)= 0: no output
1: Send out specified number of
character; R2(15-14)= chars-1.
2: Send out chars until ASCII termin-
ator is found. ASCII terminator
is passed in R2(15-14) (usually
an FF terminator, but any byte
value can be used).

10.2.3.2 MFWRN DELAY Option

Warning messages (and system message, which use the same entry point) have the option of observing DELAY. Most warnings observe DELAY, so that the message remains in the display for the user-specified delay time before execution resumes.

Selecting to observe DELAY means that the HP-71 will leave the message in the display until 1) the DELAY time expires, or 2) a key is pressed, whichever occurs first. Program execution halts (processing remains in a display utility which counts down the delay time), although this is transparent to the user; program execution resumes when the delay time expires.

Selecting to not observe DELAY means that the HP-71 continues execution immediately; the assembly language routines have control over how long the message remains in the display. For instance, the card reader system messages (such as "Pull Card") do not observe the DELAY setting. The card reader routine continues processing immediately; if the user starts pulling the card, the card reader routine will be able to detect it.

10.2.3.3 Multiple Text Insertions

Zero, one or two text insertions in any one message (including its building blocks) are allowed. If a message calls for zero insertions, R2 is not used by the message building routines. If one text insertion is used, as much of R2 as desired can be used to

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

pass the number, characters or address (as appropriate); upper C indicates how much of R2 to use for the insertion.

When two text insertions are used in a message, the following must be observed:

- The two text insertions must be of the same type (i.e., the codes in C(14-13) are used for both).
- R2(A) must contain the entire number, characters or address (as appropriate) for the first insertion.
- R2(9-5) must contain the entire number, characters or address (as appropriate) for the second insertion.

10.2.3.4 Indirect Message Calling

A special type of text insertion is that of an entire message. This is different from a building block in that the calling routine passes the message number (four digit hex, including LEX ID and message ID) in R2, as it would pass any other text insertion. However, whereas other types of insertions allow the option of using R2 to point to the insertion, R2 must contain the NUMBER of the desired message (in R2(A) or R2(9-5), or both, as appropriate), not a pointer to the number.

For an indirect message call, C(14-13) must be nonzero. The value in these two nibbles is unimportant, unless a second text insertion requires a meaningful nonzero value; in this case, using that value is sufficient (see entry conditions, above).

10.2.4 System Messages

The term "system message" refers to any message which selects the following options:

- 1) displays message text only (no "WRN:" or "ERR:" prefix)
- 2) does not branch to ON ERROR.

This implies that a system message must enter through the MFWRN or MFWRNQ entry points (depending on whether it wants to observe the Quiet option, flag -1). In addition, a system message may elect to store ERRN (and ERRL), to sound the beeper, or to display the message without delay setting.

10.2.4.1 Entry Conditions for System Messages

Entering MFWRN or MFWRNQ with P set to the appropriate value will display system messages. For example:

P= 1110 (=14)
1 Beep.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

- 1 Do not store msg number as ERRN (or ERRL, either).
 - 1 Display message text only.
 - 0 Observe display delay.
- or,
- P= 0111 (=7)
- 0 No beep.
 - 1 Do not store msg number as ERRN (or ERRL, either).
 - 1 Display message text only.
 - 1 Do not observe display delay.

The options and codes regarding text insertion are as specified above in "Warning Message Handling". Processing returns to the calling routine after system messages are displayed (MFWRN and MFWRNQ are called as subroutines).

10.2.4.2 Adding Prefixes to System Messages

System messages can be made to look like errors or warnings by displaying the appropriate prefix ("ERR:" or "WRN:") as part of the message.

For example, message number 88 in the mainframe looks like this in the table:

TFM WRN L{6}:{5}

where {6} and {5} indicate two types of insertion points (see subsection "Text insertion", above). The message is displayed by TRANSFORM execution by calling MFWRNQ with the option to suppress the standard warning prefix, "WRN:". Thus, the message itself contains the WRN prefix, and looks similar to other warnings.

The same thing can be done by a subsystem which wants to generate its own error prefix -- "Error:", for example -- for the messages in its table. Each message in the table might include this "prefix" as part of its text. Then, by displaying them as system messages, they will look like other errors. (Multiple occurrences of this "prefix" can be handled efficiently by building blocks. See section "Message Table Construction" for details on building blocks.)

A foreign language message translator could use this feature to substitute a foreign prefix when intercepting the pMEM, pERROR or pWARN polls. For instance, a Spanish translator might suppress the standard "WRN:" prefix, and include as part of each warning the prefix "CDO:" (for 'cuidado'). Again, a building block in each message would make this easy.

Be aware that the ideas presented here are feasible with the message handler options. However, there are some problems to be overcome by the poll handlers which make implementation slightly more difficult than it may seem. Namely:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Message Handling

- 1) The new prefix should have the option of including a line number for a running program. E.g., using the example from above,

CDO: for a keyboard warning

CDO L<#>: for a warning from a running program

This could be effected by the poll handler which builds the appropriate text for a type {6} insertion before calling MFWRN.

- 2) If making a system message look like an error, remember that ON ERROR is not checked for system messages. In this case, ON ERROR should be checked locally in the poll handler, with a subroutine as follows:

DO=(5) -ERRSUB Check if error in ON ERROR GOSUB...

C=DATO A

?C#0 A Error in ON ERROR GOSUB... ?

RTNYES Yes. Report error.

DO=DO+ 5 Check if ON ERROR in effect.

C=DATO A

?C=0 A ON ERROR in effect?

RTNYES No. Report error.

RTNCC Yes. Don't report error.

If ON ERROR is in effect, it would probably be best to call MFERR* and let it jump to ON ERROR, since it also sets ERRN and does other housekeeping.

10.3 Insufficient Memory Error

NOTE: The message handling routine checks ALL messages (error, warning and system) for the eMEM constant (value 0018 hex, or 24 decimal). If the message number is eMEM, an "Insufficient Memory" error is automatically generated. This is explained below. If for any reason an assembly language routine wants to generate "Insufficient Memory" as a NON-error message, it must be set up as a separate message in a LEX file.

10.3.1 Reporting MEMERR

An "Insufficient Memory" error can be generated during execution of any routine which uses available memory, which is to say, during execution of almost any statement or command. Any routine which uses available memory (either claiming it for "permanent" storage or for use as a temporary buffer) must ensure that AVMEMS (Available Memory Start) and AVMEME (Available Memory End) are not exceeded. In addition, a routine which claims "permanent" memory MUST insure that the LEEWAY (available memory safety factor) is not violated. For rules involving correct memory management, see the "Memory Structure" chapter, under the section "Available Memory Management."

If for some reason LEEWAY has been violated (permanent memory allocation has left less than LEEWAY available), the computer will enter an infinite loop when it finds there is not enough room to build the "Insufficient Memory" message.

If RAM usage reaches AVMEMS or AVMEME, an "Insufficient Memory" error should be generated in one of two ways:

- 1) Jump directly to MEMERR (BASIC system), or the subroutine MEMER* (non-BASIC system).
- 2) If found in a low-level utility, the convention is to return with carry set for ANY error, with C(3-0)=error number. The calling routine is responsible for checking carry and jumping to BSERR for any error.

A Memory Error is an insidious condition; it can crop up at the point, say, when a routine is trying to report a less severe error. In fact, the message routine itself requires available memory to build a message, which might easily cause any message to be converted into a Memory Error. Some of the problems which require special handling for MEMERR are:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

- Some low level routines exit with carry set to indicate an error, with C(3-0)= error number. A MEMERR is treated like any other error in these instances, and it might pass right through to the standard error entry point BSERR. At this point, the message handler must intercept all MEMERRs, to make sure they are handled properly.
- A MEMERR may occur several levels deep in a low-level utility; returning to the caller may be infeasible because execution was not completed (this is what would happen if the message handler ran out of building space).
- A LEX file may need to be alerted immediately that an operation failed, so that it can recover without corrupting memory (such as encountering MEMERR halfway through a file manipulation).

A Memory Error should never be generated while handling a slow poll, if the poll is intended to continue. Since available memory is recovered, the crucial poll storage area is lost. Calling the entry point MEMERR is permissible, since it exits to the BASIC main loop (thereby aborting the poll).

As a precaution to fast poll handlers, generating a Memory Error may exceed the subroutine stack limit, since a pMEM poll is issued. Therefore, it is inadvisable to generate a Memory Error while handling a fast poll, if the poll is intended to continue.

10.3.1.1 Calling MEMER*

MEMER* is a subroutine which processes Memory Errors. It requires the calling routine to load a message constant into C(3-0). Normally eMEM (0018 hex) is used, but a message constant from any LEX file can be used. This would allow a subsystem to report, say, "Out of Scratch Area", process the Memory Error in the standard manner, then recover control after the message.

For LEX files operating within the BASIC system (including foreign language files), a Memory Error could be generated by calling MEMER* with the desired message constant. But the preferred way is to call MEMERR (i.e., use the mainframe eMEM constant), intercept the pMEM poll and substitute the alternate message constant at that time.

A subsystem which generates its own Memory Error message may desire to construct one with text insertion, (such as "Write Limit:<filename>"). The appropriate way to do this is to set up the text insertion in R2, call MEMER* (a subroutine) with the appropriate message number, and adjust C(14-13) as text insertion controls during the pMEM poll handling. Text insertion is described completely under "Warning Message Handling."

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

See subsection "Error Message Handling" for details on calling MEMER*.

10.3.2 MEMERR Handling

A Memory Error ("Insufficient Memory") allows the same options as any other error (store ERRN & ERRL, display message text only). However, a Memory Error should never be called as a parse error. For details of these options when calling MEMERR (or MEMER*) see subsections "Message Handling Options", and "Error Message Handling", above.

To prevent the message handler from running out of memory (a building area for the message) during a MEMERR and thus causing an infinite loop, available memory is first recovered, using routines COLLAP and CLCOLL. COLLAP sets the pointer in AVMEME to the value of the pointer in FORSTK (recovers AvMemEnd), and CLCOLL sets the pointers in AVMEMS, OUTBS and SYSEN to the value of the pointer in CLCSTK (recovers AvMemSt).

This frees an area of memory at least as large as LEEWAY (212 nibbles). Correct memory management is imperative (as it always is) because at this point if LEEWAY is not available, someone has really screwed up! Guaranteeing an area of RAM at least as large as LEEWAY means that any "Insufficient Memory" message (whether re-worded or translated into a foreign language) cannot exceed 106 characters (including prefix), or about 80 characters (excluding a long prefix). However, no one should ever consider any message longer than 30 characters anyway.

10.3.2.1 MEMERR Poll

A separate poll is sent out when a Memory Error is encountered. Be aware that if a Memory Error enters through BSERR (that is, a routine calls BSERR with eMEM constant), two polls will be issued -- one for pERROR, and then when the eMEM constant is intercepted, another one for pMEM. The same would happen if eMEM were issued as a warning -- first pWARN, then pMEM.

The main purposes of the pMEM poll are:

- To allow the poll handler to substitute another message constant for eMEM. If this is done, the message will still be handled as a memory error.
- To allow the poll handler to load its own return address to capture processing after the memory error is reported. (For instance, if the FORTH system calls a mainframe utility which in turn generates a MEMERR, FORTH can recover control after the message is displayed.) If this is not done, then processing returns to the BASIC main

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Message Handling

- loop.
- To allow a LEX file to clean up pending operations which might have been interrupted by the Memory Error.
 - To allow a LEX file to generate a custom Memory Error message with text insertion, by adjusting the values in C(14-13).

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

10.4 Foreign Language Translators

A Foreign Language Translator is a LEX file whose sole purpose is to translate HP-71 messages from the resident English to a foreign language. It is a simple LEX file which contains nothing but a message table and a poll handler which intercepts the pMEM, pERROR, pWARN and pTRANS polls to substitute alternate message numbers.

10.4.1 BASIC Error Trapping

Using ON ERROR in a BASIC program allows error trapping for applications. In the message handler, the sequence of steps when processing an error is:

- 1) send out pERROR poll
- 2) set ERRN (and ERRL)
- 3) jump to ON ERROR if in effect

A language translator will intercept the pERROR poll and substitute an alternate message number before the ON ERROR jump. Thus, a check of ERRN in the ON ERROR routine must allow for foreign language message numbers.

The following convention has been set up to facilitate error trapping with language translators.

For mainframe messages:

translated message number= ERRN+1000

For other LEX files:

translated message number= ERRN+128

For example, mainframe error 57 is "File Not Found". If an ON ERROR routine is trapping for this error and must allow for foreign language messages, the appropriate statement is:

IF ERRN=57 OR ERRN=1057 THEN

The HPIL error 255031 is "Directory Full". If an ON ERROR routine is trapping for this error and must allow for foreign language messages, the appropriate statement is:

IF ERRN=255031 OR ERRN=255159 THEN

This extended error trapping can be shortened with the user-defined function:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

```
10 DEF FNE(X)= (X=ERRN) OR (X=ERRN+128+(X<1000)*872)
```

and the two examples above can be compressed to

```
IF FNE(57) THEN ...  
IF FNE(255031) THEN ...
```

The following subsections describe how this convention is implemented.

10.4.2 LEX File Number Sharing

The LEX ID of a language translator is based on the ID of the LEX file whose messages are to be translated. All language translator LEX files which have the same LEX ID will share the same numbering scheme. That is, related language translators will share the SAME four-digit (hexadecimal) message numbers, including LEX ID number and message ID number. This implies that only one language translator will be active in the computer at one time (the first one in the file search order).

Language translator LEX files should not, in general, have any extended BASIC statements or functions, decompile or execution routines, since the proliferation of similar LEX numbers would be confusing for a user trying to determine their source.

10.4.2.1 LEX File #00 (Mainframe) Translation

A Foreign Language Translator for LEX file #00 (mainframe) messages will have LEX #01. Its message table will contain a one-to-one correspondence between mainframe messages and the translated messages. This means that each message in LEX file #01 will have the same meaning as the correspondingly numbered message in the mainframe.

For example, message number 0039 hex (57 decimal, as expressed by ERRN) in the mainframe is "File Not Found". The corresponding message 0139 (1057 as expressed by ERRN) in LEX file #01 must be the foreign language equivalent of "File Not Found".

This one-to-one correspondence of mainframe messages applies to message 1 through 97, and message 229. Message #229 is "(trk ### of ###)", and is referenced by the card reader execution routines; it must also have a translated equivalent.

The building blocks in the mainframe table numbered 230 through 248 are simply frequently-used words. They are NOT messages,

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

per se, since they are never referenced as message constants by a routine calling the message handler. Because of this, a language translator need not contain the same building blocks; even if it does, it need not number them the same. In addition, the language translator may use any building blocks it desires to construct messages, and may number them in any manner that does not conflict with messages 0 through 97 and 229. Building blocks used for this purpose are simply means of saving ROM, and are not subject to the one-to-one correspondence.

Note that the mainframe contains a partial LEX file (all but a file header) numbered 01. This partial LEX file does not contain a message table; therefore, no conflict will arise because of this convention.

10.4.2.2 Other LEX File Translation

For LEX files other than #00 (mainframe), a language translator will have the same LEX number, and its message table will be offset by 128 decimal from the master LEX file table. There will be a one-to-one correspondence between the messages in the two tables, with message number n in the master table being equivalent to message number $n+128$ in the translated table. (It has been determined that it is unlikely that any LEX file will need more than 127 messages, allowing message ID numbers 128 through 255 to be reserved for the translators. **)

For example, the HPIL ROM has LEX ID=FF (255 decimal). The HPIL message number FF1F (255031 in decimal, as expressed by ERRN) is "Directory Full". A language translator for HPIL messages would also have LEX ID=FF, and the corresponding message FF9F (255159 as expressed by ERRN) would be the foreign language equivalent to "Directory Full."

Building blocks used solely to save ROM (those never referenced as messages by routines calling the message handler) are not "true" messages; they need not have a one-to-one correspondence with building blocks in the translator. Such building blocks need not be duplicated in the translator LEX file, and if they are, they may be numbered in any manner which does not conflict with the numbering of the "true" messages in that LEX file.

** NOTE: The split in the message tables into blocks of size 128 requires that the master LEX file be restricted to messages 1 through 127, and the translator be restricted to messages 128 through 255. Message number 00 (the LEX file name -- see subsection "Message Construction", below) is used by the message handler as a prefix for errors and warnings; if the master LEX file includes it, then the translator file should include it, too

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

(perhaps in a translated form). That is, EVERY message table (including language translators) should have a message 00, unless they do not want a prefix for errors and warnings.

If a LEX file requires more than 127 messages, and its author knows for certain that it will never be subject to language translation, it can use the full range of messages from 0 to 255. Using messages in the range 128-255 will prevent the use of standard message translation and error trapping for future applications.

If a LEX file requires more than 127 messages and its author wants to preserve the capability of standard error trapping with language translation, use of a second LEX ID number is necessary; using a second LEX table will provide 127 more messages.

For details on message range and numbering, see section "Message Table Construction", under "Message Range".

(This restriction to blocks of 128 does not apply to LEX file #01, the translator for the mainframe. This is described in the previous subsection.)

10.4.2.3 HPIL Message Range

Because of a bug in the first version of the HPIL ROM, any translator for this ROM will have to reside in RAM in order to be implemented. The message range was inadvertently left as 00-255; this means that when the message handler goes to look for message 255159, say, it will search this ROM's table, since the range covers this message. In order for a translator to be implemented, it must occur before the HPIL ROM in the file search order, so that its message table will be found first. The easiest way to do this is for the user to copy the HPIL translator into RAM so that it will be found first.

10.4.3 Poll Handlers for Translators

Besides the VER\$ poll, a language translator requires a poll handler to intercept pMEM, pERROR, pWARN and pTRANS polls. Upon intercepting these polls, an alternate message number is substituted for the original, providing the message came from the translator's master table. That is, a translator only translates messages from one specific LEX file.

Poll handlers for pMEM, pERROR and pWARN should not set XM=0 (i.e., do not indicate "handled"), since this causes the message to be suppressed. Poll handlers for pTRANS should set XM=0 to indicate that message number has been adjusted to generate a translated

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

message.

The algorithm is described for the two classes of translators:

10.4.3.1 Poll Handler for LEX ID #01

Translators for the mainframe messages (LEX ID #00) have LEX ID #01. The poll handler for pMEM, pERROR, pWARN and pTRANS polls should perform the following:

- 1) Fetch message number from R0.
- 2) If LEX ID of message is not 00, then go to 5).
Else, set LEX ID of message =01 and replace message number in R0.
- 3) If pTRANS poll, exit with carry clear, XM=0.
- 4) If message ID number is not 88, then go to 5).
Else, a separate (nested) poll is required to translate the insertion message (message #88 is "TFM WRN L<#>: <insertion message>"):
 - 3a) Shift number of insertion message to R2(A).
Swap R0 and R2. Poll with pTRANS constant.
 - 3b) When returned from nested poll, swap R0 and R2. Shift message number to R2(8-5).
- 5) Return from poll (carry clear, XM=1).

An example in the "HP-71 Code Examples" chapter, "Foreign Language Translation of Messages", demonstrates the assembly language necessary to implement this.

10.4.3.2 Poll Handler for Other LEX Files

Translators for other LEX files (LEX ID's above 00) have the same number as the master LEX file. The poll handler for pMEM, pERROR, pWARN and pTRANS should perform the following:

- 1) Fetch message number from R0.
- 2) If the message number does not have the right LEX ID, go to 5).
Else, add 128 to the message number, replace in R0.
- 3) If pTRANS poll, exit with carry clear, XM=0.
- 4) If the message allows type {5} insertion (see section entitled "Message Table Construction"), a separate nested poll is required to translate the insertion message.
- 5) Return from poll (carry clear, XM=1).

An example in the "HP-71 Code Examples" chapter, under "Foreign Language Translation of Messages", demonstrates the assembly

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

language necessary to implement this.

10.4.4 Two Types of Language Translators

An HP-71 design team has come up with two types of language translators: one-shot translators, and selectable translators.

One-shot translators provide a fixed translation capability, in one language only. Selectable translators allow the user to select the language (including English -- "no translation").

10.4.4.1 One-shot Translator

A one-shot language translator is a LEX file which, as long as it is present in the computer, ALWAYS translates messages. Such a LEX file serves only one language, would most likely be RAM based, and would probably be available on a card. Several one-shot translators might be in memory, one each for the mainframe, HPIL, the MATH ROM, etc.

It's possible that one-shot translators for several different languages might reside in memory at the same time (e.g., Spanish, German, French, etc.). In this case, the one that occurs first in the file search order will be the one which is in effect. To switch languages, the file chain must be manipulated by the user (with COPY, PURGE, etc.), so that the new language translator is "selected" by being first in the file search order.

On the other hand, as long as a one-shot translator resides in memory, the resident English language messages cannot be accessed. Only by purging all such translators can the user regain English messages.

Examples of two one-shot translators (one for the mainframe, one for HPIL) are in the "HP-71 Code Examples" chapter, under "Foreign Language Translation of Messages."

10.4.4.2 Selectable Translator

A selectable language translator consists of a "controlling" LEX file, and additional "satellite" LEX files which contain message tables for several different languages. The controlling LEX file provides a keyword to select which language to implement (including the resident English). Such a scheme may be implemented in a ROM, and distributed either separately as a "Translator ROM for Spanish, German, French, ...", or as an integral part of an application pack (such as the Text Editor).

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Message Handling

(The selecting keyword and the selecting syntax have not been decided upon.)

The selectable translator scheme offers several advantages over one-shot translators:

- 1) It allows selecting a particular language for all messages, or suppressing translation entirely.
- 2) The equivalent collection of one-shot translators would increase the number of LEX files many times over, which would make the the HP-71's processing relatively slower.

The collection of LEX files for a selectable translator would look like this:

Controlling LEX file

- contains selecting keyword.
- contains VER\$ poll handler for the entire entourage.
- contains code for implementing the language selection.

First satellite LEX file

- services mainframe message translation.
- contains pMEM, pERROR, pWARN and pTRANS poll handlers.
- contains truncated LEX file and table for mainframe Spanish translation.
- contains truncated LEX file and table for mainframe German translation.
- contains truncated LEX file and table for mainframe French translation.
- etc. (other languages)

Second satellite LEX file

- services HPIL translation (for example).
- contains pMEM, pERROR, pWARN and pTRANS poll handlers.
- contains truncated LEX file and table for HPIL Spanish translation.
- etc. (other languages)

Third satellite LEX file

- services MATH ROM translation (for example).
- contains pMEM, pERROR, pWARN and pTRANS poll handlers.
- etc. (truncated LEX files and tables)

... As many satellite LEX files as desired.

The term "truncated LEX file" refers to a file which looks identical to a LEX file, except that the file header is omitted. That is, the following fields are left out:

File Name
File Type
Flags
Time

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Message Handling

Date

File Length (offset to next file)

The file, then, starts at the Id field. Each truncated LEX file would be identical to a one-shot translator, except for the missing header.

The controlling LEX file has some important housekeeping to perform:

- 1) When a language is selected, it must open a system buffer (if it doesn't already exist) to store the language name (or a code). This system buffer has ID# "bTRANS".
- 2) It must go into the LEX system buffer and adjust the addresses of each of the satellite LEX files so that they point to the truncated header of the appropriate languages.
- 3) At the time of each configuration (pCONFIG poll), step 2 must be repeated, using the stored language in the system buffer for reference.

An example of a selectable translator can be found in the "HP-71 Code Examples" chapter, under "Foreign Language Message Translation."

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

10.5 Message Table Construction

A Message Table contains a list of standard messages; standard messages are those messages which can be displayed by the message handling routines. The table may include error messages, warnings and system messages. One message table serves the mainframe, but each LEX table may have an associated message table to support the parse and execute routines for its keywords.

Messages are identified within a LEX file table by a two-digit hex number. Message number 00 is reserved to be the LEX file name; it is used in the prefix of a message to identify the source of the message. For instance, the HPIL ROM (LEX ID=FF), has message number 00 (and its LEX file name) "HPIL", so that any error generated by this LEX file will display "HPIL ERR:". If a LEX file does not desire a name on the error prefix, it can leave message 00 out of the tables entirely.

10.5.1 Message Formats

It is recommended that standard messages be kept short, since more than 22 characters in the display will cause scrolling. Scrolling is especially undesirable for an error message.

10.5.2 Message Prefix

The standard error message prefix for mainframe messages is "ERR: "; for warnings, the prefix is "WRN:". This leaves 18 characters for the message before scrolling starts. For a run-time error, the standard message prefix is "ERR L111:", where 111 is the line number (1 to 4 digits). This leaves (16-i) characters, where i is the number of digits in the line number.

Most LEX files will provide an LEX file name to identify a message, such as "HPIL ERR:". Thus, for a LEX file error, scrolling starts at (18-k) characters for a parse or keyboard execution error, and at (16-i-k) characters for run-time errors, where k is the number of characters in the LEX file name, and i is the number of digits in the line number.

10.5.3 Message Construction

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Message Handling

10.5.3.1 Message Range

The first entry in a message table is the listed range of messages found in the table. The first byte of the range is the lowest numbered message; the second byte is the highest numbered message.

When the message handler searches the LEX files for a message, it will not find the specified message unless its number is within the listed range of the table. A message table can contain messages outside the listed range; they can be used as local building blocks, but will not be found by the message handler. Such messages cannot be generated as errors or warnings by assembly language routines, and they can't be accessed by MSG\$.

Message number 00 is taken to be the LEX file name (for error displaying purposes). Even if a LEX file has message numbers from 6F to E3, for instance, it may include a message number 00 for its LEX file name; message number 00 need not be included in the listed range. Even if message 00 is not included in the listed range, it will be found and used for the error prefix. However, not including it in the listed range will prevent its access by the MSG\$ function. For a specific application of this feature, see section entitled "Foreign Language Translators."

The ability to fragment LEX files (have different files with the same LEX ID#, but different message ranges) requires some coordination. Although each of the fragments would include the same message 00 (if they want an error prefix), one of the LEX files will need to include message 00 in its range. This would reasonably be done by the fragment with the lowest range. Again, this is suggested so that MSG\$ can access message 00 in the LEX file.

The function MSG\$ (in LEX file #82) should be able to access all "true" messages ("true" messages are those which are referenced as errors or warnings, and do not include local building blocks).

Foreign language translation puts restrictions upon the numbering of messages in LEX files with ID# greater than 01. See section "Foreign Language Translators" for details.

Message range

- The master LEX file message range (as listed in the range field of the table) must be within the interval 00-127 decimal.
- The translator LEX file message range (as listed in the range field of the table) must be within the interval 128-255 decimal.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Message Handling

message number 00

- To be used by BOTH master and translator (if a prefix for errors and warnings is desired) or to be used by NEITHER (if no prefix desired).

messages numbered 01 through 127

- The master LEX file's true messages (those referenced by routines calling the message handler) MUST be in this range. Any other numbers in this range can be used as building blocks by the master LEX file (such building blocks can be accessed by MSG\$).
- The translator file can use local building blocks in this range, providing that they are NOT included in its listed range! (Such building blocks cannot be accessed by MSG\$.) These building blocks can only be referenced by other messages in the same table.

message number 128

- For a language translator, this message MUST be identical to message 00 in the same table (easy to do with a building block). The reason is that, for example, MSG\$(125000), because of the pTRANS poll, will fetch message 125128. (If message 00 is not used, message 128 need not be in the table either.)
- The master LEX file can use message 128 as a local building block, providing that it is NOT included in the message range! (This message will not be accessed by MSG\$.) It can only be referenced by other messages in the same table.

messages numbered 129 through 255

- The translator LEX file's true messages (those referenced by routines calling the message handler) MUST be in this range. Any other numbers in this range can be used as building blocks by the translator LEX file (such building blocks can be accessed by MSG\$).
- The master LEX file can use local building blocks in this range, providing that they are NOT included in its message range! (Such building blocks cannot be accessed by MSG\$.) These building blocks can only be referenced by other messages in the same table.

10.5.3.2 Message Blocks

The term "message block" refers to a complete message entry in a message table, including total length, message number and message cells.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

All entries which follow the listed range are standard messages in message blocks. They can be in any numerical order (even message number 00 need not be first), although they can be arranged for more efficient table search: messages near the beginning of the table will be found first.

```
+-----+
| Min Range Number |      2 nibbles (hex value)
+-----+
| Max Range Number |      2 nibbles (hex value)
+-----+
| Message Block |      (see below)
+-----+
| Message Block |
+-----+
| Message Block |
+-----+
...
+-----+
| FF |      Table Terminator
+-----+
```

The first nibble following the range field MUST be a 0. This means that the FIRST MESSAGE IN THE TABLE MUST HAVE A TOTAL LENGTH OF 16 (or a multiple of 16). Since the table can be arranged in any numerical order, it is easy to move a qualifying message to this location. If there is no message which meets this requirement, construct a dummy message (one whose number is not needed) of 5 blanks, or anything that gives a total length of 16.

A message block length of FF terminates a message table.

Message number 00, the LEX file name, should, if it is included, contain a trailing space.

Each message block consists of several parts:

```
+-----+
| Length of Block |      2 nibbles (hex value)
+-----+
| Message ID number |      2 nibbles (hex value)
+-----+
| Cell #1 |      (see below)
+-----+
| Cell #2 |
+-----+
...
+-----+
| Cell #n |
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

```
+---+-----+
| C |          "C" nibble, terminates block
+---+
```

Message cells are of seven types:

1) Text cell.

Text cells are preceded by a length field:
one nibble if length <= 11 characters,

```
CON(1)  6
NIBASC  \7 chars\
```

or "B" followed by length nib if length > 11.

```
CON(1)  11
CON(1)  12
NIBASC  \13 chara\
NIBASC  \cters\
```

2) Mainframe Building Block cell.

Identified by an "E" nibble.

This type of cell fetches an entire message from
the mainframe table (some building blocks are simply
frequently-used words).

For example,

```
CON(1)  14      identifies mainframe bld block
CON(2)  =eFILE  fetches "File" building block
```

3) Local LEX file Building Block cell.

Identified by a "D" nibble.

Similar to a Mainframe Building Block cell, this
fetches an entire message from the local LEX file.
The local building block need not be included in
the table's listed range.

For example,

```
CON(1)  13      identifies local building block
CON(2)  =eARRAY  fetches "Array" building block
```

4) Different LEX file Building Block cell.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Message Handling

Identified by an "F0" byte ("F" means "special cell").
This fetches an entire message from a different LEX file. Similar to above building blocks, except that this terminates the current message. The calling routine must know that the second LEX file is present! The referenced message must be included in the listed range of the second LEX file.

For example,

NIBHEX F0	identifies diff LEX bld block.
CON(4) =eXIRR	transfers to "XIRR" message in another LEX file. The 4-nibble constant contains the LEX# and message# of the message.

5) Indirect message cell.

Identified by an "F1" byte ("F" means "special cell").
This cell identifies a transfer to another message text; the message number is passed to the message handler by the calling routine. The indirect message number can call any message in any LEX table, provided the message is included in the listed range of the second LEX file. (The 4-digit message number is passed in R2 to the message handler MFWRN -- see subsection "Entry Conditions for MFWRN", above.)
(A type {5} insertion requires special handling in foreign language translators -- see the section which describes their implementation. Consider this overhead when using type {5} insertions.)

For example,

NIBHEX F1	identifies indirect msg cell
-----------	------------------------------

6) Insert Text cell: no trailing space.

Identified by an "F2" byte ("F" means "special cell").
This cell identifies the fixed location where the message allows the calling routine to insert text. The text is inserted without a trailing space.
(The text is passed to MFWRN through codes in R2 -- see subsection "Entry Conditions for MFWRN", above.)

For example,

NIBHEX F2	identifies insertion point, no trailing space.
-----------	--

7) Insert Text cell: with trailing space.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
 Message Handling

Identified by an "F3" byte ("F" means "special cell").
 This cell identifies the fixed location where the
 message allows the calling routine to insert text.
 The text is inserted WITH a trailing space.
 (The text is passed to MFWRN through codes in R2 --
 see subsection "Entry Conditions for MFWRN", above.)
 For example,

NIBHEX F3 identifies insertion point,
 with trailing space.

A message terminates with a "C" nibble.

There are two levels of building block "subroutines" available;
 that is, a building block itself may reference one other building
 block.

Message numbers need not be entered sequentially in a message
 table. In particular, message numbers may be missing entirely.
 This permits reserving a block of numbers for a certain type of
 message (such as 80 through 90 for errors concerning matrix
 dimensions).

10.5.3.3 ROM Savings With Building Blocks

Building blocks (either local -- type {3}, or mainframe -- type
 {2}) can save many bytes of ROM. Here's the formula for deciding
 whether you will save ROM by making a string a local building
 block:

Let n = #characters in string ($2n$ = #nibbles)
 Let j = #times the string is used.

Then k = #times necessary to guarantee savings with bldg block
 k' = #times necessary to guarantee loss with bldg block

i.e., if $j > k$, guaranteed savings by using bldg block
 if $j < k'$, guaranteed loss
 if $k' < j < k$, check individually (*)

			In table form:											
n	k'	k		n	occurrences									
===	===	===		(chars)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10 11...
1	inf	inf		=====	=====	=====	=====	=====	=====	=====	=====	=====	=====	=====
2	6	11		2	-	-	-	-	-	?	?	?	?	?
3	4	5		3	-	-	-	?	+	+	+	+	+	+
4	3	3		4	-	-	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Message Handling

5	3	3		5		-	-	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
6	2	3		6		-	?	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
7	2	2		7		-	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
8	2	2		8		-	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
.	2	2																	
.	2	2																	
.	2	2																	

-- loss (or breakeven) if bld block is used
 += savings if bld block is used
 ?= check individually (*)

*Note: In the cases where you must check individually to verify a savings, the factor which affects this is the possible breaking up of a type {1} cell into two type {1}'s and a building block. For example, consider the following type {1} message cells:

```

CON(1) 9          (Length of NIBASC=10)
NIBASC \No Matches\
and
CON(1) 9          (Length of NIBASC=10)
NIBASC \Good Match\

```

Each cell takes 21 nibbles. If you wanted to make " Match" a local building block, these cells would now look like this:

```

CON(1) 1          (Length of NIBASC=2)
NIBASC \No\
CON(1) 13         (Indicator for type {3})
CON(2) eMATCH     (Symbol for building block)
CON(1) 1          (Length of NIBASC=2)
NIBASC \es\
and
CON(1) 3          (Length of NIBASC=4)
NIBASC \Good\
CON(1) 13         (Indicator for type {3})
CON(2) eMATCH     (Symbol for building block)

```

Whereas the cells originally took 21 nibbles each, the first case now uses 13 nibbles and the second uses 12. The difference is that the first needs another length nibble for the "\es\" cell. This new type {1} fragment is the factor which requires some cases to be determined individually.

The building block for " Match" would take 6 nibbles for overhead (message length, number and terminator nibble), plus 12 nibbles for the characters " Match". The entire building block would add up to 18 nibbles, whereas the savings from the above cells was only 17.

Formula: Use a building block if

```

the number of nibbles required for the building block
2*(#characters in bld block)
+ overhead for bld block (6 nibs, if under 11 chars)

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Message Handling

- + 3 nibbles for each bld block reference (3j)
- + extra length nibbles for fragmented cells

is less than the total number of nibbles it would take to leave in the characters without bld blocks
 $2 * (\# \text{characters in bld block}) * j$

i.e., use a building block if

$$2n + 6 + 3j + x < 2nj$$

where n = #characters in building block
 j = number of references to building block
 x = number of new type{1} fragments

10.5.3.4 Example

An example of a message table:

CON(2) 43	Range: minimum msg number
CON(2) 50	Range: maximum msg number
* *!!! XMSG49 is placed first because it has a total length of 16. *!!! The first nibble following the range field MUST be a 0 !! *!!! (See note in subsection entitled "Message Range", above.) *!!!	
XMSG49 CON(2) (LEXNAM)-*	Length to next msg.
CON(2) 49	Message number.
CON(1) 14	Mainframe building block.
CON(2) =eFILE	Use "File" from m/f.
NIBHEX F3	To insert file name here w/space.
CON(1) 13	Local building block.
CON(2) =eXMSG1	Use "Private" building block.
CON(1) 0	
NIBASC \!\	
CON(1) 12	Msg terminator.
* LEXNAM CON(2) (XMSG43)-* Length to next msg. CON(2) 0 Msg 00 reserved for LEX file name. CON(1) 3 Length-1 of NIBASC. NIBASC \XRM \ LEX file name. CON(1) 12 Message terminator.	
* XMSG43 CON(2) (XMSG48)-* Length to next msg. CON(2) 43 Message number. CON(1) 6 NIBASC \Private\ Text. CON(1) 12 Message terminator.	
* XMSG48 CON(2) (XMSG50)-* Length to next msg.	

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Message Handling

	CON(2) 48	Message number.
	CON(1) 14	Mainframe building block.
	CON(2) =eILPAR	Use "Illegal Param" from m/f.
	CON(1) 12	Message terminator.
*		
XMSG50	CON(2) (XMSGf)-*	Length to next msg.
	CON(2) 50	Message number.
	CON(1) 13	Local building block.
	CON(2) =LEXNAM	Use "XRM " building block.
	CON(1) 7	
	NIBASC \Catalog:\	Text.
	CON(1) 12	Msg terminator.
*		
XMSGf	NIBHEX FF	Table terminator.

The "HP-71 Code Examples" chapter contains more examples of message tables, under "Foreign Language Message Translators."

FILE SYSTEM	CHAPTER 11
-------------	------------

11.1 File Chain Structure

The HP-71 maintains a file area in main RAM which is comprised of a linked list, or chain, of file entries. Each file entry in the chain begins with a file header, which contains identifying information about the file along with the link to the next file entry in the chain. This link is referred to as the "File Chain Length field." The end of the file chain is marked by a zero byte. Each plug-in ROM module and independent RAM also contains its own file chain. A later section in this chapter describes the order in which the various file chains are searched for a given file.

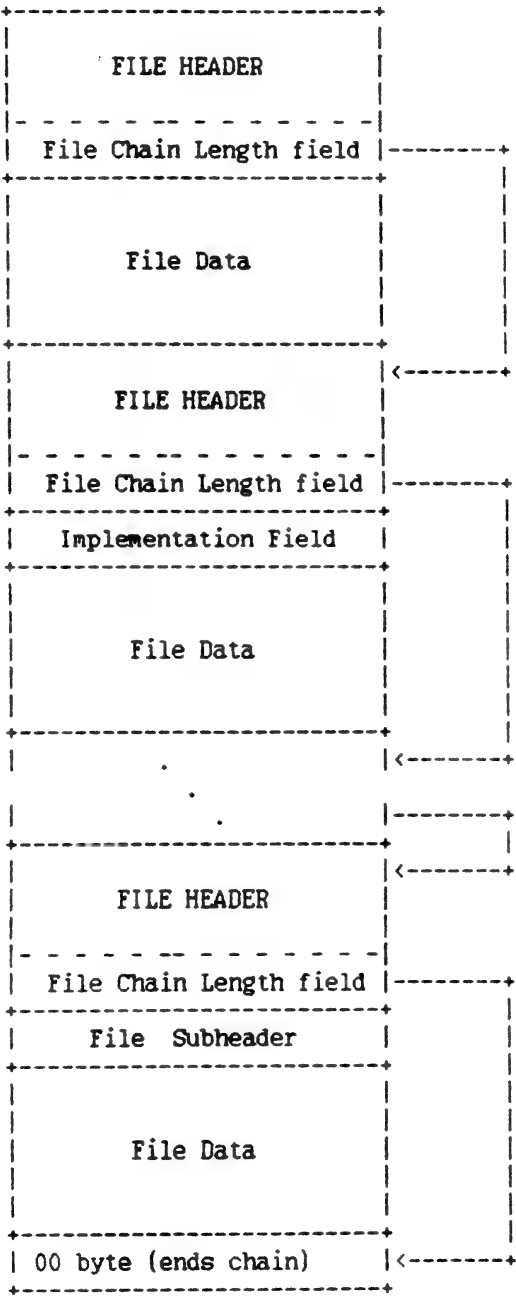
Certain file types require special information between the file header and the file's data. The Implementation Field, when present after the file header, corresponds to the Implementation Field of the file's directory entry when it is copied to or from mass media, such as magnetic tape, which use the HP Logical Interface Format (LIF). The Implementation Field is always present after the file header for files of copy codes 1 (e.g. DATA) and 8 (user-defined), and otherwise is never present after the file header. The DATA file type, for example, requires that its Implementation Field be present to indicate the number and length of records in the file.

Furthermore, some file types require a subheader immediately following the file header or Implementation Field. The BASIC file type, for example, requires a 6-byte subheader which contains two pointers into the data (program) portion of the file (see the description of the BASIC file type later in this chapter). The subheader presence, length, and format depends upon the file type. When a file containing a subheader is copied to external media, the subheader is not stored in the file's directory entry like the Implementation Field, but is stored at the beginning of the data portion of the file. In this way the subheader is restored to its correct position after the file header when the file is copied back into memory.

The following diagram shows the general structure of the file chain, showing one file without Implementation Field or subheader, one file with Implementation Field, and one file with a subheader.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
File System

FILE CHAIN STRUCTURE



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description File System

11.1.1 File Header

The format of the file header is described below.

FILE HEADER

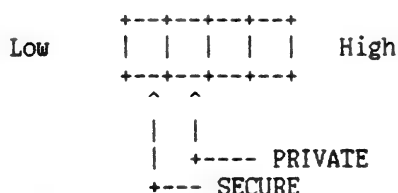
File Name	16 nibbles
File Type	4 nibbles
Flags	1 nibble
Copy Code	1 nibble
Creation Time	4 nibbles
Creation Date	6 nibbles
File Chain Length	5 nibbles

Each file has a file header. The file header contains the 8 character file name in ASCII, blank filled on the right (high memory).

The 4 nibble file type field contains the file's 16-bit signed integer file type, ranging from -32768 to 32767. HP-71 file types are explained in the File Types section.

Next are 4 system flags. The two bits in the low end of the flag field indicate file protection. When set, the lower of the two bits indicates a file is SECURE; the higher of the two bits indicates a file is PRIVATE. The following two bits of the flag nibble are unused.

File Header Flags



The next file header field is the Copy Code nibble. This nibble indicates the file attributes necessary for external copying. The

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
File System

specific encoding of Copy Code is explained under File Type Table in the "Table Formats" chapter.

The creation time and date are set when the file is created. Creation date and time are stored in BCD. The time field contains 4 nibbles; the minutes are in the low byte and the hour is in the high byte. The date field contains 6 nibbles; the day is represented in the low byte, the month in the next byte, and the year in the high byte. For example: The internal representation of 3:45 12/16/81 would be as follows:

```
Time    Date
+-----+
|5|4|3|0|6|1|2|1|1|8|
+-----+
```

The next entry is the File Chain Length field. This is the offset to the next file (header) in memory.

11.1.2 Implementation Field

The HP-71 HP-IL Interface Module maintains external file systems on tape or other mass memory devices according to the HP Logical Interface Format standard. This format defines an 4 byte field in each file's directory entry, called the Implementation Field, which may contain arbitrary information according to the file type.

For certain file types, this 8 nibble Implementation Field must immediately follow the file header when the file is present in memory. Whether or not the Implementation Field is present is determined by the file's copy code, which is taken from the File Type Table entry for that file type (the copy code is stored in the file header). Copy codes 1 and 8 always have the Implementation Field present after the file header; all other copy codes have no Implementation Field present after the file header.

When a file is copied to external mass media, the Implementation Field written to the new file's directory entry is either generated by the operating system according, or is copied directly from the Implementation Field present after the file's header. See the section below on "File Header Structure by Copy Code" for further information.

```
+-----+
| Implementation Field | 8 nibbles
+-----+
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
File System

11.1.3 File Subheader

Aside from the file header format and Implementation Field given above, for certain file types additional information may accompany the file header in the form of a subheader, which immediately follows the file header or Implementation Field. Subheaders must be an even number of nibbles in length and must be no more than 250 nibbles long. The format of a subheader is determined by the file type.

The presence of a subheader after the file header or Implementation Field is determined indirectly by the Offset to Data field in the File Type Table entry for that file type. This field gives the offset from the start of the File Chain Length field in the file header, to the actual start of data, skipping over the Implementation Field and/or the subheader, if either are present. The presence and length of the subheader can therefore be determined using the Offset to Data field and the copy code (which determines whether the Implementation Field is present) according to the chart below. Refer to the following section for further details concerning copy codes.

File Header Structure	Data Offset in Nibs	Applicable Copy Codes				
		0	1	2	4	8
* No subheader, No Implementation Field	5	x		x	x	
* No subheader, Implementation Field	13		x			x
* Subheader of n nibs, No Implementation Field	5+n	x			x	
* Subheader of n nibs, Implementation Field	13+n					x

11.1.4 File Header Structure by Copy Code

The presence of the Implementation Field after the file header is determined by the file's copy code, as outlined in the chart below. The copy code originates in the File Type Table entry for that file type, and is stored in the file header.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
File System

FILE HEADER STRUCTURE BY COPY CODE

Copy code:	0	1	2	4	8
Exemplary file type	BASIC, KEY, LEX, etc	DATA	SDATA	TEXT	User-defined
Imp. Field after file header?	No	Yes	No	No	Yes
Imp. Field contents on ext media	Format A	Format B	Format C	Zero	User-defined
May have subheader?	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes

	Nib	Contents
Format A:	7 - 2	Length of file in nibbles
	1 - 0	Unused (zero)
Format B:	7 - 4	Unsigned integer specifying number of records in file, byte reversed
	3 - 0	Unsigned integer specifying number of bytes in record, byte reversed
Format C:	7 - 6	Protection; if set to 08 hex, file may not be purged, renamed, or written to; otherwise should be set to 0
	5 - 2	Signed integer specifying number of registers (8-byte records) in file
	1 - 0	Unused (zero)

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description File System

11.2 File Types

The following file types are directly supported by the HP-71 mainframe. OEM software developers may support other file types by first reserving the file type with HP (see the "HP-71 Resource Allocation" chapter), and then by including the appropriate poll handlers in a LEX file. Each file type is identified by a 16-bit value which conforms to HP's Logical Interchange Format for Mass Media.

When HP-71 files are stored on external media, file security and privacy are encoded, if applicable, in the numeric file type as shown in the chart below. When files are stored in memory, privacy and security are encoded in the flags field of the file header, and the file type stored in the file header is ALWAYS the normal file type.

Type	Description	Security**:	Hex Numeric Value			
			Normal	S	P	E
BASIC	Tokenized BASIC program		E214	E215	E216	E217
BIN	HP-71 Microcode		E204	E205	E206	E207
DATA	Fixed Data		E0F0	E0F1	n/a	n/a
KEY	Key Assignment		E20C	E20D	n/a	n/a
LEX	Language Extension		E208	E209	E20A	E20B
SDATA	Stream Data		E0D0	n/a	n/a	n/a
TEXT	ASCII text, in LIF Type 1 format		0001	E0D5	n/a	n/a

** Meaning of the Security Symbols:

Symbol	Meaning
Normal	File is not protected
S	File is SECURE
P	File is PRIVATE
E	File is SECURE and PRIVATE

11.2.1 File Protection

The default protection for a file is no protection. A file with no protection can be edited, purged and executed. File protection is specified through the SECURE and PRIVATE commands.

File protection is detected by two bits in the flag field of the

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description File System

file header. When set, the lowest bit of the field indicates the file is SECURE; the next bit (bit 1) indicates the file is PRIVATE.

11.2.2 BASIC

A BASIC file contains tokenized BASIC programs or subprograms, and is created by the HP-71 BASIC editor. A BASIC file has a copy code of 0, a 12-nibble subheader, and no Implementation Field present after the file header.

A main program, if present, must start immediately after the subheader. Any subprograms present are chained sequentially thereafter. The file's Subprogram chain is headed by a link in the subheader.

11.2.2.1 Subheader

The BASIC file subheader contains 3 fields. The Subprogram Chain Head contains the first pointer of the Subprogram chain in the file. Similarly, the Label/User-Defined Function Chain Head contains the starting pointer of the chain of labels and user-defined functions within the main program. A permanent EOL (hex F0) always precedes the start of data (start of the first line) for a BASIC program file. This causes every program line to conform to the same format.

BASIC Subheader

-----+-----	
Subprogram Chain Head	5 nibbles
-----+-----	
Label/User-Defined Function Chain Head	5 nibbles
-----+-----	
F0	2 nibbles
-----+-----	

The chain head and links have the following values and meanings:

Chain head or chain link	Meaning
-----	-----
00000	Chain is not yet established (head only)
nnnnn	Offset to next link
FFFFF	End of chain

11.2.2.2 Subprogram Chain

The purpose of the Subprogram chain and Label/User-Defined Function chain is to speed up searching for subprograms, labels, and user-defined functions.

Subprograms are only chained within a file. The Subprogram chain head contains the offset in nibbles to the next chain link in the file. The only two BASIC statements in this chain list are SUB and ENDSUB. A five-nibble relative address is tokenized in association with these statements, which is used to hold the link to the next entry in the chain.

11.2.2.3 Label/User-Defined Function Chain

The Label/User-Defined Function chain is similar to the Subprogram chain, except label declaration and user-defined function definitions are chained within a program or subprogram. If a file contains one main program and several subprograms, the main program and subprograms will each have their own Label/User-Defined Function chain.

Statements and other constructs linked in this chain are:

```
Label declarations
DEF FN
ENDDEF
```

A five-nibble relative address is tokenized in association with these constructs, which is used to hold the link to the next entry in the chain.

11.2.2.4 Statement Tokenization

A BASIC program line begins with a line number and terminates with an End of Line (EOL) token. A program line may contain multiple statements. A multi-statement line is preceded by an @ token. Following each line number or @ token is a statement length byte. This statement length is a relative offset to the next terminating token. Statements within a BASIC file are linked together using these relative offsets.

See the subsection on Statement Tokenization in the "Statement Parse, Decompile, and Execution" chapter for examples of statement tokenization.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
File System

11.2.3 BIN

A BIN file is a binary or machine language file which is executed directly by the operating system. A BIN file is created using an assembler such as the FORTH/Assembler ROM. It has a copy code of 0, a 12-nibble subheader, and no Implementation Field is present after the file header.

Each BIN file may contain one or more subpgrograms, which are linked in a manner similar to BASIC files. However, each BIN program MUST have a main program, since a BIN file may be executed directly by a RUN statement. This main program should end with the statement:

GOVLNG =ENDBIN

in order to end execution of the main program and return control to the operating system. If no useful main program is appropriate to a BIN file, the "main program" should consist only of the above statement.

A binary file's main program can be invoked by RUN or CHAIN. It may also be called as a subprogram by the CALL statement. (In this case no parameters will be passed, and the subprogram will have the caller's local environment.)

Note that when a subprogram (BASIC or BIN) is called from a BIN file, the math stack is not collapsed when the subprogram ends. To collapse the math stack, the BIN program must call the COLLAP routine.

11.2.3.1 Subheader

The subheader of a BIN file is the same length as that of a BASIC file, and has a similar format. Its Subprogram chain field is used to chain subprograms within the binary file. The Label/User-Defined Function chain field is always FFFFF (empty) since there are no labels and user-defined functions within the context of a binary program. The "20" code at the end of the subheader is a filler to make the BIN subheader size equal to that of the BASIC file subheader to facilitate use of common access routines.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
File System

BIN Subheader

+-----+		
	Subprogram	
	Chain head	
+-----+		
	FFFFF	
+-----+		
	20	
+-----+		

5 nibbles

5 nibbles

2 nibbles

11.2.3.2 Subprogram Chain

The purpose of the subprogram chain in a BIN file is the same as in a BASIC file -- to speed up searching for subprograms.

If there are subprograms in the BIN file, each subprogram must start with a SUB statement that is 'tokenized' exactly as in a BASIC statement, except that a line number is not required.

In a BASIC file, the mechanism for chaining subprograms is the CHAIN routine. However, this routine does not work for a BIN file. The chaining of subprograms in a BIN file must be done by the assembly programmer. At execution time, if a BIN file's subprogram chain is not established, the subprograms won't be found.

11.2.3.3 Writing a Binary Subprogram

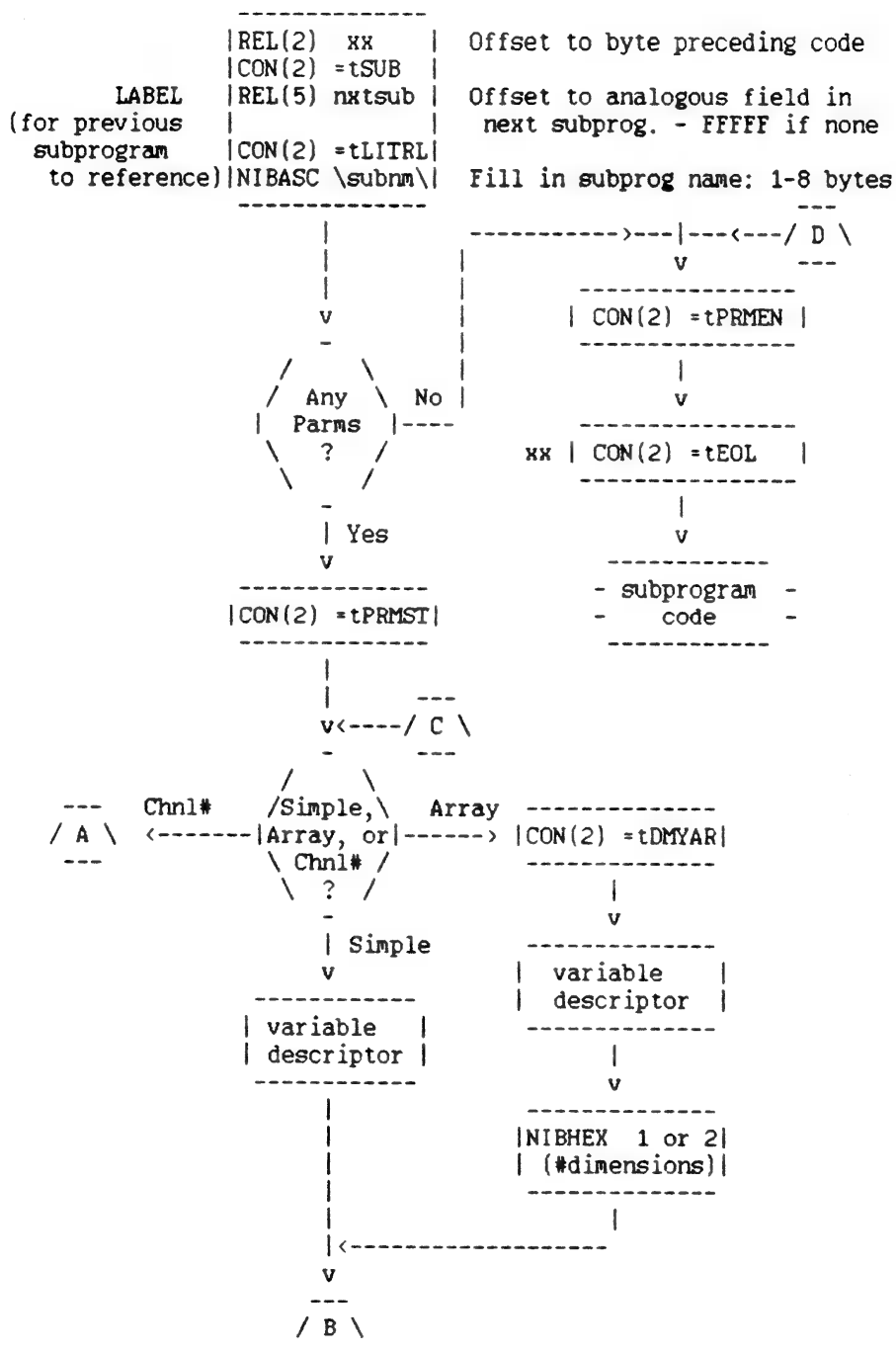
A specific example for the format required for a binary subprogram is given below, followed by a more detailed 'flow chart'. Consider a binary subprogram, ABC, that has X and Y as formal parameters.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
File System

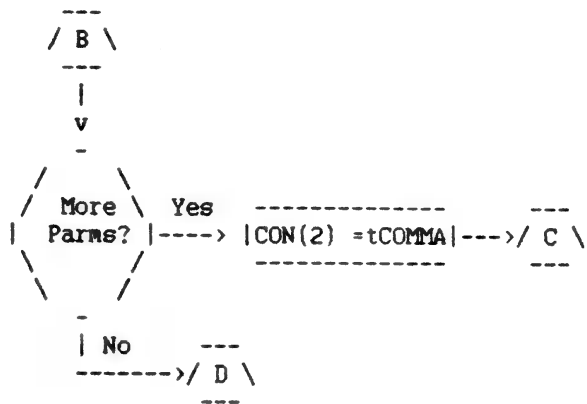
	REL(2)	LABEL	Offset to byte prior to subprog code
	CON(2)	=tSUB	SUB statement token
	REL(5)	NXTSUB	Offset to next subprogram in file (FFFF if this is the last one)
	CON(2)	=tLITRL	
	NIBASC	\ABC\	
	CON(2)	=tPRMST----	
	NIBASC	\X\	- tPRMST and parm list are optional.
	CON(2)	=tCOMMA	Parameters are separated by comma
	NIBASC	\Y\ ----	
	CON(2)	=tPRMEN	Marks the end of the parameter list
LABEL	CON(2)	=tEOL	
	.		Start of subprogram execution code
	.		
	GOVLNG	=ENDBIN	All BIN subprograms end this way.
	REL(2)	LABEL2	Offset to byte prior to subprog
	CON(2)	=tSUB	
NXTSUB	NIBHEX	FFFF	No more subprograms in chain
	.		
	.		
	GOVLNG	=ENDBIN	

The more generalized flow chart for 'tokenizing' a SUB statement follows. Lowercase in the flow chart indicates sample names.

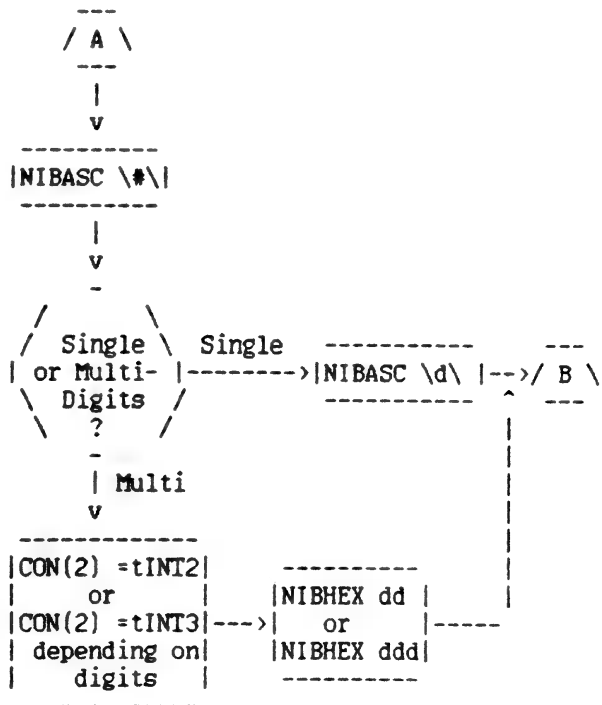
(



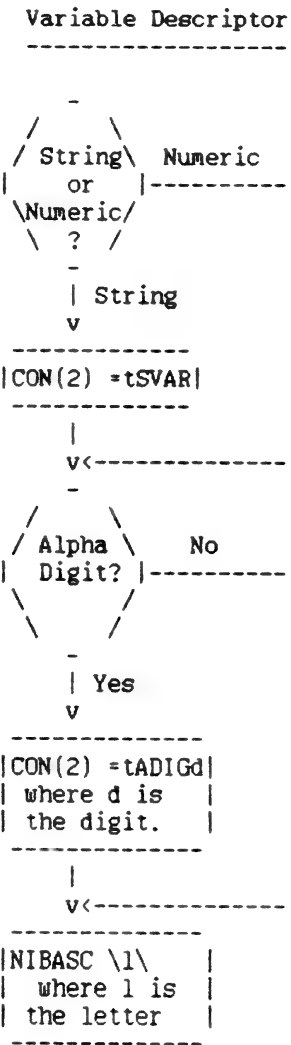
HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
File System



Lowercase 'd' indicates a digit:



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
File System



11.2.4 DATA

A DATA file is created by the CREATE statement. It has a copy code of 1, no subheader, and its file header is followed by an Implementation Field.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
File System

11.2.4.1 Implementation Field

The DATA file Implementation Field is always present after the file header. It contains two 16-bit unsigned integers which give the number and length of records in the file. These integers are stored in byte-reversed format when the file is written to external media (that is, the low-order byte is written first) so that, when the file is in memory, these fields may be conveniently read (using an instruction such as `AS A=DAT1 4`).

DATA Implementation Field

-----+-----	
Number of records	4 nibbles
(byte-reversed)	
-----+-----	
Record length in bytes	4 nibbles
(byte-reversed)	
-----+-----	

11.2.4.2 File Structure

A DATA file is a series of records with fixed record length. Within a record, numeric and string data is stored in sequentially contiguous segments. If a string data item overflows the bounds of a record in sequential access, it is broken into smaller segments.

If one or more bytes remains in the current record but this is not enough to write the next data segment, an End-of-record byte (see below) is written and the file is positioned to the next record in order to write the data segment.

The first byte of a data segment indicates the type of the data, and is called the determiner byte:

Data Segment Determiner Byte	Meaning	Data Segment Length
-----	-----	-----
2 BCD digits	Floating point number	16 nibs
FF hex	End of file	2 "
EF "	End of data in this record	2 "
DF "	Entire string falls in this record	6+n "
CF "	Start of string is in this record	6+n "
7F "	Middle of string is in this record	6+n "
6F "	End of string is in this record	6+n "

where n is the length of the data portion of the string data

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
File System

segment, determined by a 16-bit unsigned byte count which immediately follows the determiner byte of the data segment. For Start-of-string (CF) and Middle-of-string (7F) determiners, this byte count is NOT the length of the data segment, but is the remaining string length in bytes. In this case the end of the data segment is determined by the end of the current record, with which it must coincide. For instance, if the byte count for a Start-of-string (CF) segment is 0032 hex, it means the entire string is 50 bytes long but not all of the 50 bytes is in this record. So the beginning of next record must be a Middle-of-string (7F) or End-of-string (6F) data item.

STRING DATA FORMAT

In the case of string data, the two bytes immediately following the determiner byte contain a 16-bit unsigned integer which specifies the total remaining length in bytes of the string data. The determiner byte and the two-byte length count are NOT part of the data itself (and are not included in the length count).

When stored on mass media, the length count field is byte-reversed, as in the HP-85, with the low order byte written first. For example, 01AB hex is written "AB01". This is so that, when the file is in memory, this field may be conveniently read as a normal 4-nibble number (using an instruction such as A=DAT1 4).

If a string data item is written sequentially to a DATA file and the string is too long to fit into one logical record, it will be stored in consecutive logical records. The first portion of the string, which must contain at least one character, will be prefixed with a Start-of-string determiner (CF hex). The logical record with the end of the string will contain the End-of-string determiner, the remaining length of the string (at least 1), and the remainder of the string data. All other records which contain part of the string will contain the Middle-of-string determiner (7F hex), the remaining length of the string, and a section of the string.

Each byte of a string may have a value between 0 and 255 decimal.

STRING DATA SEGMENT FORMAT

String Data Segment Determiner Byte	1 byte
Remaining Data Length (byte-reversed)	2 bytes
String data	n bytes

NUMERIC DATA FORMAT

Each numeric value is represented as an 8-byte register. All values written to this file type are normalized, except in the case of IEEE exceptional values explained below. The register is divided into 3 BCD fields:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
File System

NUMERIC DATA ITEM FORMAT

Field	Size in Digits	Description
Mantissa sign	1	Symbol is MS. 0 - Positive 9 - Negative
Manitssa	12	Digits are referred to as M0 through M11, with M0 the most significant digit. M0 is nonzero for normalized nonzero numbers.
Exponent	3	Digits are referred to as E0 through E2, with E0 the most significant digit. E0 may be non-BCD for exceptional values described below. For normalized values, if the exponent is: 0 to 499 it is represented as 0 to 499; -1 to -499 it is put in 10's complement and represented as 999 to 501.

The register is written to the file as follows:

```

-----
| E1 E2| E0 MS| M10 M11| M8 M9| M6 M7| M4 M5| M2 M3| M0 M1|
-----
      ^                                   ^
first byte                               last byte

```

MS : Mantissa sign
M0 : Most significant digit of mantissa
M11: Least significant digit of mantissa
E0 : Most significant digit of exponent
E2 : Least significant digit of exponent

For example, the value 3.14159265359 * 10⁻¹²³
would be written as :

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
File System

| 77 | 80 | 59 | 53 | 26 | 59 | 41 | 31 |

SUMMARY OF BCD NUMERIC VALUE REPRESENTATION

	E1	E2	E0	MS	M1-M11	M0
Normalized:						
Nonzero	---e---			s	---n---	
Zero	0	0	0	s	0	0
Denormalized	0	1	5	s	n	0
	---d---					
Positive Infinity	0	0	F	0	m	m
Negative Infinity	0	0	F	9	m	m
Not-a-Number (NaN)	--c--		F	s	---t---	

Where :

- F = Fifteen
- c = Class of NaN (non-zero BCD integer, 1-99).
- e = 10's complement exponent; any BCD integer except 500
- d = Denormalized exponent 501, which is -499 in 10's complement
- m = Meaningless
- n = Non-zero BCD integer
- s = Sign (0 or 9)
- t = Tag identifying origin or type of NaN if class other than 99, else meaningless

Normalized Values

Generally, a BCD number is normalized and within the range of

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
File System

-1.000000000000 E -499 to -9.999999999999 E 499 if negative and
+1.000000000000 E -499 to +9.999999999999 E 499 if positive. A
number is considered normalized if M0 is nonzero, or if M0 is zero
and M1 through M11 are also zero.

Exceptional Values

However, certain mathematical operations may result in an
exceptional value that may not be normalized, as in the case of
underflow, or may not even be a real number, as in the case of
Infinity or Not-a-Number (NaN). These values are encoded in the
following manner:

- a. If E0 = F, the number is either Infinity or Not-a-Number (NaN)
and if E1&E2 = 00 - the number is Inf (infinity)
and if E1&E2 ≠ 00 - the number is NaN (E1&E2 are the
class number of the NaN)

The IEEE standard states that in the case of NaN, the sign of
the mantissa and the mantissa may contain system specific
information regarding the origin of the NaN. For example,
there may be information in the mantissa stating the line
where the NaN occurred, the error number generated, and the
origin of the NaN, such as 0 divided by 0 or square root of a
negative number.

The format by which any extra information has been encoded in
the mantissa is identified by a 'class number' which is
contained in nibbles E1 and E2 of the exponent. The class
number is a BCD number in the range 1 to 99. Currently the
only class number defined is 99, which means no useful
information is contained in the mantissa. To reserve a class
number, contact the PCD LIF coordinator.

- b. If E0 ≠ F and M0 = 0, the number is either 0 or denormalized
and if exponent = 0 - the number is zero
and if exponent ≠ 0 - the number is denormalized
e.g. 0.00012E501.

11.2.5 KEY

If no system file 'keys' exists, then if a key is redefined using
the DEF KEY statement or if a MERGE is done using a KEY file, a new
KEY file 'keys' is created. This is the only way in which KEY
files are created.

The KEY file type has a copy code of 0, no subheader, and no

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description File System

Implementation Field is present after the file header.

11.2.5.1 File Structure

Each entry in a KEY' file is a key assignment. Entries are encoded as follows:

```
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Keycode | Entry length | Assignment Type | String constant |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

Keycode : 1 byte hexadecimal key number;
 Keys are numbered in row major order

Entry
Length : 1 byte representation of the entry length;
 Length from keycode to next entry or end of file

Assignment
Type : 1 nibble assignment type
 0 = Automatically sends End Line
 1 = No End Line sent (specified by ; in DEF KEY)
 2 = Direct Execute (specified by : in DEF KEY)

11.2.6 LEX

Language Extension (LEX) files are the most powerful type of software file used by the HP-71 operating system. They are typically created by an assembler such as the FORTH/Assembler ROM.

The LEX file type has a copy code of 0, no subheader, and no Implementation Field is present after the file header.

11.2.6.1 File Structure

The structure, creation, and use of this file type is described in detail in the "Language Extension and Binary Files" chapter.

11.2.7 SDATA

The SDATA file type is the data file format used by the HP Series 40 calculators (41C, 41CV, 41CX) under the catalog name of DA. The HP-71 can read string or numeric data from this file using READ#. However, the HP-71 can write only numeric data to this file type, using the PRINT# command. An SDATA file is created by the CREATE statement.

The SDATA file type has copy code of 2, no subheader, and no Implementation Field is present after the file header.

11.2.7.1 File Structure

The SDATA file is a collection of registers. A register is always 8 bytes in length and can contain a BCD floating point number or a string data item of up to 6 characters.

The format of a number is the same as that used in the HP-71 DATA file (see the description of DATA file structure earlier in this chapter). If the register contains string data, the sign field S will be equal to 1. The characters are stored in nibbles M1 to M10, right justified with leading zeros.

11.2.8 TEXT

A TEXT file is created by the CREATE statement. The TEXT file type has a copy code of 4, no subheader, and no Implementation Field is present after the file header.

11.2.8.1 File Structure

The format of the TEXT file is determined by the HP Logical Interface Format (LIF) standard for the ASCII Interchange file type (LIF file type 1). A TEXT file is a series of contiguous variable length records. Each record starts with a two-byte data length count (in bytes). A data length count of FFFF hex marks the end of the file (however, the end-of-file marker is not required to be present). If the data length count is FFFF hex, there is no data in the record.

Otherwise, if the data length count is odd, a pad byte of arbitrary content is appended to the end of the record so that the total record length will be an even number of bytes. Therefore, if the data length is an even number, the total length of the record (in bytes) is the data length plus 2. If the data length is an odd number, the total length of the record is the data length plus 3.

Note that when a TEXT file is stored on external media, the data length count field is NOT byte-reversed, in accordance with the HP Logical Interface Format standard mentioned above. This means that when this field is read into a register using an instruction such as A=DAT1 4 the two bytes must then be reversed before the value can be properly interpreted as a number. The routine SWPBYT is used for this purpose.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
File System

TEXT FILE RECORD FORMAT

Data Length (NOT byte-reversed)	2 bytes (FFFF hex marks end-of-file)
Data	n bytes (where n is data length)
Pad Byte	1 byte (only present if odd data length)

11.3 Copying a File

11.3.1 Copying to/from Card

The FILCRD and CRDFIL subroutines provide for data transfer between memory and cards.

FILCRD copies a file to cards. Input conditions call for providing the address of the file to be copied out, the new name to be used on the card, and a flag indicating privacy. Files may be copied out from any memory device to cards.

Routine CRDFIL copies a file in from cards. Input conditions call for providing the name of the file on card (if specified) and the name to be used in RAM (if specified). Files may be copied in to main RAM only.

Both routines prompt the user and handle the complete copy operation. They return if the copy was successful, and take error exits if the copy errors out or is aborted.

The CARD reader buffer is used to hold a copy of the card header during card reader operations. During CAT CARD or CAT\$(1,":CARD"), a somewhat larger buffer holds

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description File System

not only the card header, but a dummy file header used by the catalog entry formatting routines.

11.3.2 Copying to/from External Media

If other devices are specified in the copy command, such as "COPY A:TAPE" or "COPY 'A:TAPE'", the filespec parse poll and filespec execute poll give lexfiles the opportunity to recognize and act on the commands. See the poll interface descriptions for more details.

11.3.3 Copying to/from Other Memory Devices

The HP-71 mainframe code does not support copying to or from memory devices other than RAM. However, hooks exist in the COPY code to handle future devices, such as EEPROMs, EPROMs, PROMs, or whatever else may come along.

When COPY is asked to copy to an external memory device, it examines the configuration table to determine the memory type. If it is not RAM, it will poll for a copy handler. Failure to find a copy handler will result in an "Illegal File Spec" error.

Details on the polling conditions can be found in the documentation on the pCOPYx poll.

11.4 Opening a File

A file can be opened by executing the ASSIGN * statement or by call?? routine OPENF internally. The information required to access the fi?? be written to an entry in the File Information Buffer (FIB), which ?? system buffer maintained by the operating system. Up to 64 files can be opened at the same time since there is room f?? this many entries in the FIB.

All access to an opened file is controlled by its entry in the FIB, which is identified internally by an FIB entry number. This number, also referred to as the file's entry in the FIB, is not to be confused with a channel number which may (or may not) be associated with the FIB entry through the ASSIGN buffer. When discussing a particular opened file, the file's entry in the FIB is also loosely referred to as "the FIB" for brevity.

Whenever an opened file is accessed, the file pointer in the file's FIB entry should be upd?? When the file is closed, as with the CLOSEF utility, its FIB entry ??

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description File System

removed.

The format of the FIB entry is given in the "Table Formats" chapter??

11.5 File Searching

When presented with the name of a file to find in memory, the operating system automatically searches the various file chains?? according to the algorithm described here. The operating system do?? automatically search for a file on external devices.

If no device is specified for the search, file searching starts wit?? RAM and continues onto the ports, in port specifier order (only ROM?? Independent RAM ports are searched). If the Main RAM file chain is specified (:MAIN), only that chain is seached. S?? the file chain on a particular port may be specified with :PORT(n). Or, a file seach may be restricted to only the port file chains if :PORT is used without a particular port specified.

The routine used in internal file searching is FINDF. A detailed description of its algorithm is given below.

FINDF File Search Algorithm

```
-----
Clear Single File Chain Flag (S8);
If there is no file chain specified
  THEN goto B;
If :MAIN is specified
  THEN goto A;
Save file name in R2;
If :PORT is specified (search all ports)
  THEN goto F;
Set Single File Chain Flag (S8);
Call ROMF-1; goto G

A: Set Single File Chain Flag (S8);
B: Set up to search Main RAM;
   Clear S6 (Initial Port Search not Done)
C: Search file chain;
   If file found in this chain
     THEN exit with carry clear;
   If S8 is set
     THEN load up error; exit with carry set;
   If S6 is clr (Initial Port Search not done)
     THEN Save file name in R2;
F:   Call ROMCHK;
G:   Restore file name; Set S6;
     If no (more) plug-ins
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description File System

```
        THEN load error; exit with carry set;  
        ELSE goto C;  
Call ROMEND; goto G.
```

11.6 File Creation

Mainframe files are created by the routine CREATF, and be created in either Main RAM or on an Independent RAM (IRAM) port. Depending on entry conditions, a file may be created in Main RAM, on a specified port, or on the first port found to have enough room for the file. Unlike the entry conditions for FINDF, if no particular device is specified, Main RAM is assumed.

Routine CRTF is a general-purpose utility to create a file either in the mainframe or on an external device. CRTF performs rudimentary initialization of a file depending on its file type, and makes use of CREATF or the HP-IL Module (via polls) depending on the specified device.

The CREATF algorithm for creating a mainframe file is described below.

CREATF Algorithm for Creating a Mainframe File

```
Save desired file size in R0;  
If MAIN or no file chain specified  
  If not enough memory with LEEWAY check  
1:   Load error; return with carry set;  
    Open up memory; Write time/date in header;  
    Write File Chain Length field;  
    Goto RFADJ+;  
If no particular port specified  
  Call ROMCHK;  
  If no (more) plug-ins  
A:   Load error; return with carry set;  
    Call B;  
    If create done sucessfully on that plug-in  
      Return with carry clear;  
    Call ROMFND; goto A  
  Call ROMF-1;  
  If plug-in not found  
    THEN goto A;  
B: If plug-in is not RAM  
  THEN load error; return with carry set  
  Calculate amount of available memory on  
  plug-in (LSTADR-EOFLCH);  
  If not enough room
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
File System

THEN goto 1;
Write creation date/time; write file chain length
Return with carry clear.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description
Table Formats

TABLE FORMATS	CHAPTER 12
---------------	------------

12.1 ASSIGN Buffer

The ASSIGN buffer (bASSIGN) saves all the open channel #'s. Every entry in the buffer takes 5 nibbles. The information contained is:

Channel # (Device #)	2 nibbles
Code Nibble	1 nibble
FIB# or Indirect Channel #	2 nibbles

Every entry occupies 5 nibbles. The maximum ASSIGN buffer size is 4095 nibbles, so a maximum of 819 channels and stack markers will fit in the ASSIGN buffer.

If the channel # is zero, then the remaining high 3 nibbles are a count of subroutine levels without any channels on that level. The maximum count of SUB levels in the stack marker is 4096 (0-FFF hex).

The assign table is always searched from the end of the buffer to the start of the buffer or a stack marker, whichever occurs first. This implies that all new entries are appended to the buffer.

If the code nibble is non-zero, the search routine should search in the previous stack level for the indirect channel #. These links continue back until either a FIB# is found or an entry with an FIB# of zero is found. A zero FIB# means this channel is no longer open.

12.2 Card Reader Buffer

This is a buffer (bCARD) used by the card reader subsystem for building a copy of the card header being written out or read in to/from card. The format of the information is as follows (all numbers shown in bytes):

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

Table Formats

- ```

0: sub-format (1): 00 for LIF1 file (HP-75 subformat)
 01 for HP-71 files (HP-71 subformat)
1: track# (1)
2: # of tracks in set (1)
3: # bytes in this track (2)
5: # bytes in file (2)
7: file type (2): Kangaroo filetype (HP-75 subformat)
 LIF filetype number (HP-71 subformat)
9: creation date (4): hex seconds since start of
 century.
13: file name (8)
21: password (4): blanks for LIF1 filetype (HP-75 sbfmt)
 implementation (4): (HP-71 subformat)
25: marker (2): checksum of entire file, including
 file header.
27: partial statement status (1)
28: s1--partial statement size information (2)
30: s2--partial statement size information (2)
32: data checksum (2): 2-byte checksum of data field.
34: header checksum (1): 2-byte sum of header field,
 folded to one byte without
 wraparound carry.
35: (reserved) (1)

```

When a CAT CARD is performed, some additional space is created at the end of the buffer for building a dummy file header. This dummy header is used by the CAT formatting routines to create a catalog entry listing.

### 12.3 Character Sets

### 12.3.1 Standard Character Set

The standard character set consists of ASCII characters 0 through 127.

### 12.3.2 Alternate Character Set Buffer

The alternate character set buffer (bCHARS) has two possible formats. If the alternate set is contained in the buffer itself, the buffer will have an even number of nibbles. If the buffer is merely a pointer to a character set stored elsewhere, then the buffer will have an odd number of nibbles.

In the case of an even length buffer, the contents of the buffer

## HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

### Table Formats

consist of  $n$  groups of 6 bytes (where  $1 \leq n \leq 127$ ). Each byte describes one column of one character. Each group of bytes defines one character pattern. The least significant bit of each byte corresponds the top row of the display.

In the case of an odd length buffer the contents of the buffer consist of a 5 nibble absolute address of the actual character set table followed by a byte which uniquely identifies which character set is being pointed to. This byte is used during the configure poll (pCONFIG) to help individual ROMs determine if they are responsible for this buffer. The table pointed to should consist of a three nibble length field followed immediately by a table in the same format as would be in the buffer. As long as the buffer contents remain an odd length the buffer may be extended as desired, since it will be ignored when the character set is referenced (ie. it might be used to preserve a previously active character set to be restored later).

This buffer's update count field should contain a 1 if it is an odd length buffer so that the address pointing to the character set table will be updated when memory moves.

When the auto-delete of I/O buffers is performed during CONFIGuration, this buffer will be deleted only if it is odd in length and no ROM responds to the poll (pCONFIG) by marking the buffer and updating the address pointing to the actual character set table.

#### 12.4 External Command Buffer

The External Command Buffer (bECOMD) may be created by a LEX file during the pDSWKN or pDSWKY poll. It contains BASIC ASCII text in the same format as in the Startup Buffer. The text will be executed on return from Deep Sleep IF Deep Sleep was called from the Power Down routine. A system flag, flPWDN, identifies if deepsleep was called from powerdown, which is useful during the powerup polls.

#### 12.5 File Information Buffer

The FIB is a system buufer maintained by the operating system which contains an entry for each open file. All access to an opened file is controlled by its entry in the FIB, which is identified internally by its entry number. See the "File System" chapter for further information on file access. The format of each FIB entry is as follows.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Table Formats

FILE INFORMATION BUFFER (FIB) ENTRY FORMAT

1. FIB entry number (2 nibs) - If 00, end of FIB
2. File I/O Buffer number (3 nibs) -  
If the file is on external device, it has a 256-byte system buffer associated with it to hold the current sector. If this field is not 000, it is the ID of this associated File I/O buffer.
3. File type (4 nibs) - File type number of the file
4. File protection nibble (1 nibs) - This is the same nibble in the file header
5. File copy code (1 nib) - This is the same value as in the File Type Table entry for this file type
6. Access code (1 nib) -  
This nibble is only useful for files on external devices. It is set to 1 when the current contents of the file I/O buffer has been altered. It is set to zero when a new record has been read into the file I/O buffer.
7. Device type(1 nib) - This nibble indicates where the file is located :

|               |                     |
|---------------|---------------------|
| 0 - Mainframe | 1 - Independent RAM |
| 2 - ROM       | 8 - HP-IL device    |
8. File begin (6 nibs) -

|                                  |                                     |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| For file in RAM/ROM :            |                                     |
| Nibs                             | Field                               |
| -----                            |                                     |
| 4-0                              | Abs address of file header start    |
| 5                                | Unused                              |
| For file in mass memory device : |                                     |
| Nibs                             | Field                               |
| -----                            |                                     |
| 0                                | Nth entry in the directory record   |
| 4-1                              | Record number in the directory area |
9. Subheader length (2 nibs)  
This length is the number of bytes of the subheader. It is computed as follows:

Subtract 5 nibbles from the Offset to Data field of the File Type Table entry for that file type. If the copy code is 1 (e.g. DATA) or 8 (user-defined), subtract another 8 nibbles for the Implementation Field, which is present after the file header. Then divide by 2 to convert into bytes:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Table Formats

Copy code 1 or 8: (Offset to Data - 13) / 2  
Copy code 0, 2, or 4: (Offset to Data - 5) / 2

10. File data start (11 nibs) -

This is the absolute address of the start of data of the file.

For file in RAM/ROM:

| Nibs | Field                                            |
|------|--------------------------------------------------|
| ---- | -----                                            |
| 4-0  | Abs addr of data start (skip over the subheader) |
| 6-5  | Hex F0                                           |
| 8-7  | Port address: Port #, Extender #                 |
| 10-9 | Unused                                           |

For file on an external (HP-IL) device:

| Nibs | Field                                                                                                                        |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ---- | -----                                                                                                                        |
| 3-0  | Record addr of the first record of the file.<br>If the file has subheader, the subheader starts from byte 00 of this record. |
| 6-4  | Device address                                                                                                               |
| 9-7  | Assign code                                                                                                                  |
| 10   | Assign type                                                                                                                  |

11. File length(4 nibs) -

For fixed record length file, this is the file length in number of records.

12. Record length(4 nibs) -

For fixed record length file, this is the record length in number of bytes.

13. Current position(6 nibs) -

This is the current file pointer. It is the offset from the file data start.

| Nibs | Field                                   |
|------|-----------------------------------------|
| ---- | -----                                   |
| 5-0  | Offset from file data start in nibbles. |

14. File data length(6 nibs) -

This is the file data length not including the subheader.

| Nibs | Field                        |
|------|------------------------------|
| ---- | -----                        |
| 5-0  | File data length in nibbles. |

15. Remaining length in current record(5 nibs) -

This field is used by PRINT# and READ# to keep track of

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Table Formats

how many bytes to the end of current record.

16. Device size (6 nibs)

This field is only useful for file in an external mass  
memory device(HP-IL)

| Nibs | Field |
|------|-------|
|------|-------|

|     |                                           |
|-----|-------------------------------------------|
| 5-0 | Number of sectors allocated to this file. |
|-----|-------------------------------------------|

12.5.1 Open Files and Protection

Whatever a file's protection is at the time it is opened, is the access capability that is stored in the FIB. Therefore all subsequent commands which reference the FIB for their operation will be subject to the access capability of the file AT THE TIME IT WAS OPENED. The implication here is that the user may choose to open a file, SECURE it, proceed to do a series of PRINTs to that file, and then close the file. Until the file's protection is changed, all that transpired while the file was open is protected.

12.6 File Type Table

A File Type Table defines the attributes of one or more types of file. Each type of file contains one entry in the table. See the "HP-71 Code Examples" chapter for a listing of the File Type Table that defines the file types recognized by the HP-71 mainframe.

The entry defines the name, file type numbers, and types of protection which are associated with that type of file. The entry also defines the create code and copy code for the file, which describes in a very general way the structure of the file. These codes determine the presence or absence of an implementation field following the file header when the file is in memory, and determine whether the mainframe can copy the file into or out of the HP-71 without the aid of a LEX file.

The File Type Table terminates with an FF byte.

FILE TYPE TABLE FORMAT

| Field       | Size<br>(nibs) | Meaning                                                                                                                            |
|-------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Create code | 1              | 0: Normal mainframe file structure<br>(BASIC, BIN, LEX, KEY, etc)<br>File length measured in nibs,<br>arbitrary format, subheaders |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Table Formats

|           |   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|           |   | allowed                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|           |   | 1: DATA file structure; up to 65535 fixed length records of up to 65535 bytes each; subheaders not allowed; file is initialized to FF's                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|           |   | 2: SDATA file structure; records are fixed length, 8 bytes each; file initialized to zeros; subheaders not allowed                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|           |   | 4: TEXT file structure; records are variable number of bytes; file initialized to FF's; subheaders are not allowed                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|           |   | 8: Special handler routine required to create this file; system will issue pCRT=8 poll                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Copy code | 1 | <p>0: Normal mainframe file structure; File can be copied into or out of HP-71 without aid from LEX file; Implementation Field contains file length on external copy, but is not present after file header when file is in memory</p> <p>1: DATA file structure; file can be copied into or out of HP-71 with no aid from LEX file; on external copy, the Implementation Field contains number of records and record length, and it is present immediately after file header when file is in memory</p> <p>2: SDATA file structure; file can be copied into or out of HP-71 with no aid from LEX file; on external copy, the Implementation Field contains number of records, but is not present after file header when file is in memory</p> <p>4: TEXT file structure; file can be copied into or out of HP-71 with no aid from LEX file; on external copy, the Implementation Field is zero, and it is not present after file header when file is in memory</p> <p>8: Special copy routine is required to copy file to or from HP-71; system will issue pWCRD8 poll; Implementation Field is present</p> |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Table Formats

|                  |                      | after file header when file is<br>in memory                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                |                      |       |               |        |        |       |         |        |                    |
|------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------|-------|---------------|--------|--------|-------|---------|--------|--------------------|
| Execution code   | 1                    | 1: File is executable (can be run)<br>0: File is not executable                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                |                      |       |               |        |        |       |         |        |                    |
| Offset to Data   | 2                    | Offset in nibs from start of file<br>chain length field (in file header)<br>to start of file data, skipping the<br>Implementation Field, if present<br>after file header (see Copy code,<br>above), and also skipping the<br>subheader (if any); this value is<br>used to calculate the subheader<br>length, when present |                |                      |       |               |        |        |       |         |        |                    |
| File type name   | 10                   | 5 character ASCII name of the file<br>type as displayed by CAT; padded<br>with trailing blanks                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                |                      |       |               |        |        |       |         |        |                    |
| Number of types  | 1                    | Number of file type numbers used<br>by this type of file to indicate<br>SECURE or PRIVATE states, if<br>allowed; up to four type numbers<br>may be used:                                                                                                                                                                  |                |                      |       |               |        |        |       |         |        |                    |
|                  |                      | <table><tr><th>Type<br/>Number</th><th>Protection Indicated</th></tr><tr><td>First</td><td>No protection</td></tr><tr><td>Second</td><td>SECURE</td></tr><tr><td>Third</td><td>PRIVATE</td></tr><tr><td>Fourth</td><td>SECURE and PRIVATE</td></tr></table>                                                               | Type<br>Number | Protection Indicated | First | No protection | Second | SECURE | Third | PRIVATE | Fourth | SECURE and PRIVATE |
| Type<br>Number   | Protection Indicated |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                |                      |       |               |        |        |       |         |        |                    |
| First            | No protection        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                |                      |       |               |        |        |       |         |        |                    |
| Second           | SECURE               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                |                      |       |               |        |        |       |         |        |                    |
| Third            | PRIVATE              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                |                      |       |               |        |        |       |         |        |                    |
| Fourth           | SECURE and PRIVATE   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                |                      |       |               |        |        |       |         |        |                    |
| LIF type numbers | 4                    | 4 nibbles for each LIF type number<br>indicated by the previous field                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                |                      |       |               |        |        |       |         |        |                    |

12.7 Keycode Table

The mainframe contains a table (KEYCOD) which specifies the default meaning of each key on the keyboard. This table is arranged as three sets of 56 bytes. The first set describes the unshifted function of the keys. The second set describes the f-shifted function of the keys. The third set describes the g-shifted function of the keys. Within each set, the keys are in the order QWERTY ... 0.,+ which is the same order as used in DEF KEY.

The byte in the table specifies the meaning of the key as follows:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Table Formats

- 0 - 31 Special code
- 32 - 127 ASCII letter with same code
- 128 - 255 Typing aid key of keyword with same code

The codes in range 0 - 31 are for keys that do not have a simple ASCII letter or a typing aid associated with them. Such keys require special processing.

| Code | Symbol | Function              |
|------|--------|-----------------------|
| 0    | kc-CHR | Delete char           |
| 1    | kcLC   | Lowercase toggle      |
| 2    | kcI/R  | Insert/Replace toggle |
| 3    | kcUSER | User mode toggle      |
| 4    | kc-LIN | Delete through EOL    |
| 5    | kcFLFT | Cursor far left       |
| 6    | kcFRT  | Cursor far right      |
| 7    | kcBKSP | Backspace             |
| 8    | kcLFT  | Cursor left           |
| 9    | kcRT   | Cursor right          |
| 10   | kcCTRL | CTRL prefix           |
| 11   | kcVIEW | VIEW prefix           |
| 12   | kcUSEX | USER                  |
| 13   | kcEOL  | Endline               |
| 14   | kcATTN | ATTN                  |
| 15   | kcRUN  | RUN                   |
| 16   | kcCONT | CONT                  |
| 17   | kcSST  | SST                   |
| 18   | kcUP   | Up                    |
| 19   | kcDOWN | Down                  |
| 20   | kcTOP  | Top                   |
| 21   | kcBOT  | Bottom                |
| 22   | kcGON  | g-ON                  |
| 23   | kcCALC | CALC                  |
| 24   | kcOFF  | OFF                   |
| 25   | kcLAST | Command stack         |
| 26   | kcLERR | Last error message    |
| 27   |        | Reserved              |
| 28   |        | Reserved              |
| 29   |        | Reserved              |
| 30   |        | Reserved              |
| 31   |        | Reserved              |

12.8 Language Tables



---

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Table Formats

12.8.1 MAINT and XROM01

Several mainframe tables are used by the lexical analyzer, parse, execution and decompile drivers. These tables are used to identify BASIC keywords, functions and system commands and assign a unique internal token number. These tables comprise a mainframe LEX file, following the format of LEX files, as explained under LEX files in the "Language Extension and Binary Files" chapter. This table is called: MAINT.

Due to the large number of built-in keywords, one internal LEX "file" is not large enough. A second internal LEX File: XROM01 with LEX ID #01, holds the overflow of built-in keywords. Both LEX "files" contain a SPEED table, main table, and text table. The internal LEX "files" reside within system ROM and are not part of the RAM file chain.

Keywords contained in XROM01 are less frequently used keywords or keywords that are not programmable. The tokenized length of XROM01 keywords is 2 bytes longer than keywords contained in MAINT.

12.8.2 Message Table

Details on message table construction are found in the "Message Handling" chapter.

12.8.3 Lexical Type Table

The lexical type table (LXTYPT) describes a character type and ASCII or internal representation (token) for each character.

For each character in the ASCII range, 20-7E, is an entry:

TYPE        - Categorize character  
            0 - Miscellaneous  
            1 - Digit, Decimal Point  
            2 - Letter A - Z  
            3 - Relational Character < = > ?  
            1 nibble

CHARACTER - ASCII representation or internal token or character  
            2 nibbles, backwards

This table resides in mainframe ONLY.

# HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Table Formats

## 12.8.4 FG Table

The "FG Table" defines a state machine for processing f and g shifts. The state machine has 7 input bits and 4 output bits. The seven input bits are as follows:

- Bit 6 F key currently down
- Bit 5 G key currently down
- Bit 4 Some non-FG key newly down (X)
- Bit 3 g annunciator on
- Bit 2 f annunciator on
- Bit 1 Ghost bit (\*)
- Bit 0 F or G key was down during last key scan (h)

The ghost bit is used to indicate that an f or g shift has been performed but the annunciator was left on because the corresponding key was still down.

The lower 4 bits are stored between key scans in the display RAM nibble that contains the f and g annunciators. The lower two bits do not affect the display since there are no annunciators in the LCD to correspond to these bits. These 7 bits form an offset into the table which gives the new "state" of the state machine and is stored back into display memory. If bit 4 is set but bits 5 and 6 are clear then all bits should be cleared following putting the f or g modified key codes in the buffer.

|     | gf*h | gf*h | gf*h | gf*h | gf*h | gf*h | gf*h | gf*h | gf*h | gf*h | gf*h | gf*h |
|-----|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
|     | 0000 | 0001 | 0010 | 0011 | 0100 | 0101 | 0110 | 0111 | 1000 | 1001 | 1010 | 1011 |
| FGX |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
| 000 | 0000 | 0000 | .... | .... | 0100 | 0100 | 0000 | 0000 | 1000 | 1000 | 0000 | 0000 |
| 001 | 0000 | 0000 | .... | .... | 0100 | 0100 | 0100 | 0100 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 |
| 010 | 1001 | 0001 | .... | .... | 1001 | 1001 | 1001 | 1001 | 0001 | 1001 | 1011 | 1011 |
| 011 | 1011 | 1011 | .... | .... | 1011 | 1011 | 1011 | 1011 | 1011 | 1011 | 1011 | 1011 |
| 100 | 0101 | 0001 | .... | .... | 0001 | 0101 | 0111 | 0111 | 0101 | 0101 | 0101 | 0101 |
| 101 | 0111 | 0111 | .... | .... | 0111 | 0111 | 0111 | 0111 | 0111 | 0111 | 0111 | 0111 |
| 110 | 0000 | 0000 | .... | .... | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 |
| 111 | 0000 | 0000 | .... | .... | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Table Formats

### 12.9 LEX Entry Buffer

The LEX entry buffer (bLEX) resides in the main system RAM following the statement buffer. It is a list of pointers to language extension files in RAM and ROM and to the 2 built-in language "files" within the mainframe. Associated with each LEX file is the range of entry numbers within the LEX file.

For each LEX file entry:

|     |            |             |                           |        |
|-----|------------|-------------|---------------------------|--------|
| +   | -----+     | -----+      | -----+                    | -----+ |
| ID# | Low Entry# | High Entry# | LEX File MAIN Table Start |        |
| +   | -----+     | -----+      | -----+                    | -----+ |
| 2   | 2          | 2           | 5                         | nibs   |

The range of LEX IDs is 0 to 255. The range of entry numbers within a LEX file is 0 to 255. Several LEX files may have the same LEX ID, but different ranges of entry numbers. There is a separate entry for each separate LEX file.

The LEX entry buffer is recreated every time the configuration of the machine may change or a LEX file is added or removed. This includes coldstart, warmstart, power on, module pulled, CLAIM, COPY, FREE and PURGE.

#### 12.9.1 Search Order of LEX Files

The order in which LEX files are accessed during parsing, polling, and message handling is determined by the order in which the LEX files are registered in the LEX LEX Entry Buffer. In general, this order is determined by the normal file search order (see the "File System" chapter) by which the LEX files present in memory are found during system startup. First, the Main file chain is searched for LEX files. The first LEX ID# and entry# range is read from the file. The main table address is calculated, based on the presence or absence of the optional speed table. The LEX ID#, entry# range and main table start address are added to the LEX entry buffer. Next, any secondary LEX tables chained internally within the LEX file are then added to the buffer in a similar manner.

The file chains in ROMs and Independent RAMs are searched next, in port order (Port 0 through Port 5). Each LEX file encountered in these chains is added to the LEX entry buffer.

The two final buffer entries are the built-in XROM and the mainframe main table. The built-in XROM LEX ID# is 01, with a token range of 0 to 95. The mainframe LEX ID# is 00, with a token

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Table Formats

range of 0 to 255. LEX ID#00 is useful for detecting the end of the buffer when searching for a particular external keyword or function.

#### 12.9.2 Usage

The LEX entry buffer is used by the lexical analyzer when scanning for valid keywords, functions and commands. This allows the BASIC language and system command set to be extended and overridden.

This buffer is also used determine addresses to decompile and execute external keywords and functions, and display external error messages.

#### 12.10 Startup and Immediate Execute Key Buffers

These two buffers are used to hold a string of characters which will later be parsed and executed. The STARTUP buffer (bSTART) is set up by the STARTUP command and is parsed and executed when the user turns the machine on with the ON/Attention key. The immediate execute key buffer (bIEXKY) is created whenever a colon-type key definition is executed. This buffer is automatically deleted at MAINLP since it no longer has meaning at that point.

The string stored in these buffers is always terminated with a CR (ASCII 13). This is required since the buffers will be parsed.

#### 12.11 Statistic Buffer

The Statistic Buffer is a scratch buffer used during summary statistics accumulation in ADD and DROP.

#### 12.12 System Flags

A flag is a variable that can have one of only two possible states, set and clear. The numeric values 1 and 0 are assigned to these states, respectively. Flags are generally used to control the flow of a program and to record the status of certain modes. Flags are global variables; flag settings remain in effect before, during, and after subprogram execution.

There are 64 system flags (numbered -64 to -1) and 64 user flags (numbered 0 to 63). These flags are stored in 128 consecutive bits

## HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

### Table Formats

starting at address SYSFLG. (See the diagram in the Memory Structure description.)

The current system flag assignments are documented in the "HP-71 Resource Allocation" chapter.

#### 12.12.1 Display Format Information

Display format information is contained in the system flags. System flags -13,-14 indicate the current display mode:

|         |         |
|---------|---------|
| 0 = STD | 2 = SCI |
| 1 = FIX | 3 = ENG |

System flags -17 through -20 contain the number of digits in hexadecimal for the current display setting, i.e. "n" in FIX n, SCI n, ENG n.

#### 12.13 Traps

As used here, a trap is a one-nibble numeric code (0 to F in hex) which determines what action, out of a menu of possible actions, is to be taken when a corresponding flag is set by the system (i.e. by other than an SFLAG statement or FLAG function).

Traps are implemented only for the arithmetic exception flags (inexact, underflow, overflow, divide-by-zero, invalid operation). Associated with each of these five exceptions is an action (or trap) to be taken whenever that exception occurs. There are, at present, three categories of trap actions and they are denoted by trap values 0, 1 and 2. The trap values and their associated trap actions are given below:

##### TRAP MENU

| Trap Value | Trap Action                                                                              |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0          | Halts and displays an error message                                                      |
| 1          | Returns the traditional finite default values                                            |
| 2          | Returns the default values specified by the IEEE Standard (see the Default Values Table) |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Table Formats

DEFAULT VALUES TABLE

| EXCEPTION | TRAP VALUE                             |                         |
|-----------|----------------------------------------|-------------------------|
|           | 1                                      | 2                       |
| INX       | rounded 12 digit result                | rounded 12 digit result |
| UNF       | 0                                      | denormalized result     |
| OVF       | $\pm$ -maxreal<br>(9.999999999999e499) | $\pm$ -infinity         |
| DVZ       | $\pm$ -maxreal                         | $\pm$ -infinity         |
| IVL       | $0^0=1$ , else halt                    | $0^0=1$ , else NaN      |

If present, an ON ERROR statement overrides the trap values for all exceptions except INX. OFF ERROR will return control back to the trap action settings. The DEFAULT statement sets the traps as follows:

OFF    trap values for UNF,OVF,DVZ,IVL set to 0  
       trap value for INX set to 1 (same as 2)

ON     trap values for INX,UNF,OVF,DVZ,IVL set to 1

EXTEND trap values for INX,UNF,OVF,DVZ set to 2  
       trap value for IVL set to 1

|                              |            |
|------------------------------|------------|
| INTERNAL DATA REPRESENTATION | CHAPTER 13 |
|------------------------------|------------|

This chapter discusses the format in which the HP-71 represents numeric or string data in memory or in the CPU registers.

### 13.1 Data Types

The HP-71 supports seven data types. The data type of a variable is identified by looking at the variable register (explained in the section on variable chains, below). Real scalar numbers are stored directly into the variable register, and can be identified by the low-order nibble, which falls in the range 0-9 (and is interpreted as the low-order nibble of the exponent field). If the low-order nibble of a variable register is anything else, the register is serving as a pointer to one of the other six data types:

|   |               |                   |
|---|---------------|-------------------|
| A | Integer       | (simple or array) |
| B | Real short    | (simple or array) |
| C | Real array    |                   |
| D | Complex Short | (simple or array) |
| E | Complex       | (simple or array) |
| F | String        | (simple or array) |

### 13.2 Registers

The following section will discuss the representation of variables in memory. This section contains an introduction to the representation of numbers in the CPU; that topic is treated more thoroughly in the section on mathematical operands in this chapter.

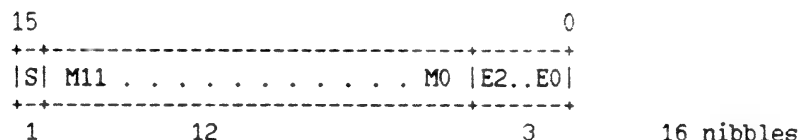
#### 13.2.1 Numbers in CPU Registers

When a number is brought into a CPU register, the process of recalling it (finding it in memory and bringing it into the CPU by way of the mathstack) will convert it into one (for real data types) or two (for complex data types) numbers in a standard representation as follows:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Internal Data Representation



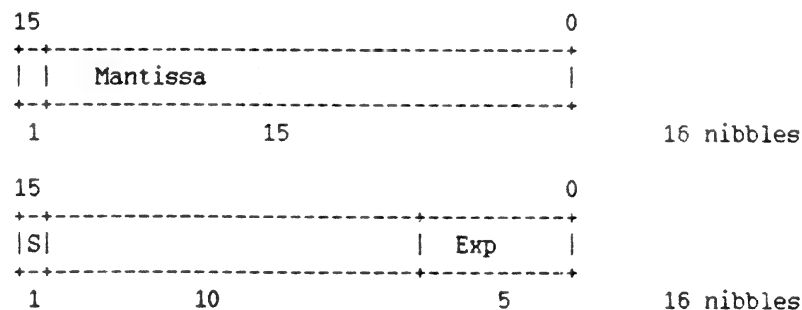
with the low-order digits in the low-order nibbles of the register:



The mantissa is unsigned with a separate field (the S-field) representing the sign (0 = +, 9 = -). The Exponent is represented in 10's complement form. This representation is the normal entry condition for all routines which expect a floating-point argument(s) in the 12-digit form.

Many of the computation algorithms work with a 15-digit form so that intermediate results can be computed and retained with greater accuracy. Typically, when implementing a function, you will take the parameters (which are in 12-digit form), expand them into the 15-digit form, call whatever computation routines are necessary, and round the 15-digit result back into 12 digits.

The 15-digit form occupies two registers as follows:



where the exponent has been extended (including sign-extend if negative) to five digits.

The published entry and exit conditions for various numerical algorithms state what registers are expected to contain which parts of the argument(s).



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Internal Data Representation

### 13.2.2 Strings in CPU Registers

Unlike numbers, the actual values of strings are not usually recalled into CPU registers - they generally don't fit. The procedure for accessing a string is to place the string on the mathstack by evaluating an expression and then to "pop" its descriptor (mainframe POP1S routine), which provides a pointer and a character count.

## 13.3 Variables

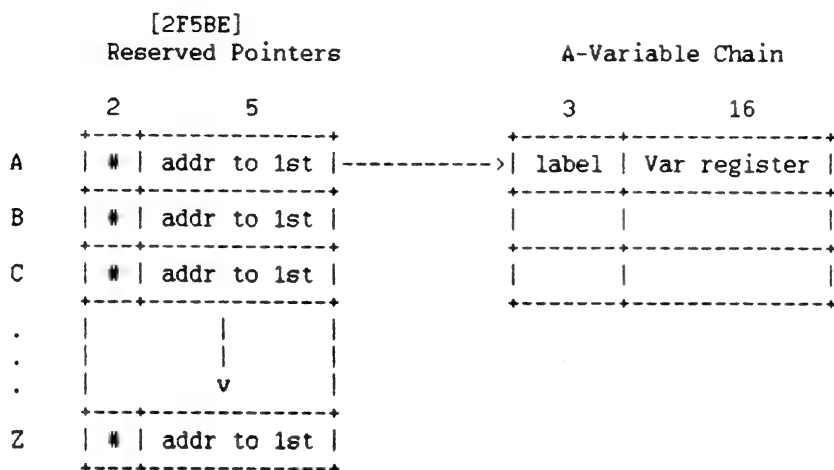
Every variable has a corresponding variable register that contains either the actual value (for simple variable types) or a reference that points to the value (for complex, arrays, and strings). Variables (i.e., their corresponding registers) can be created either explicitly (DIM, INTEGER, REAL statements) or implicitly (by storing into a non-existent variable or array element) and will continue to exist until wiped out by a DESTROY <var name> or DESTROY ALL.

For speed of reference, each variable register is contained in one of 26 lists ("chains"); the alphabetic part of the variable name determines which chain. Operating system RAM contains a list of pointers to the various chains, the format of which is described below.

### 13.3.1 Variable Chains

There are 26 reserved pointers to the variable chains A-Z. This list of 7 nibble pointers begins at 2F5BE. The first 2 nibbles indicate the number of variables in the variable chain. The next 5 nibbles (Chain Head Pointer) give the absolute address of the first variable in the chain.

# HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Internal Data Representation



The A-variable chain will contain the variable registers for all variables whose names begin with A (A, A7, A\$, A5\$, etc.). Variables in each chain are listed in the order in which they were created; the chain is not sorted in any way.

A particular variable chain contains a 19 nibble entry for each variable beginning with that letter. The first 3 nibbles are the variable label, and the next 16 are the variable register.

The first two nibbles of the label field are the ASCII code for the letter associated with the variable. An uppercase letter indicates a numeric variable, lowercase a string variable. That is, an AND of the ASCII code and the constant 20H will produce 0 for a numeric variable and nonzero for a string variable. The third nibble is the digit+1 of an alpha-digit variable, 0 for alpha variables.

The data space for variables is allocated, as required, between the RAM pointers ACTIVE and CALSTK.

In the discussion below it is important to keep in mind that when memory is read into a register, the CPU places the lowest addressed nibble in the least significant nibble of the register. Thus, in the diagrams below, the nibbles lowest in memory are shown on the right side of the register. The nibbles in the register are numbered from 15 to 0 going most to least significant.

If a recall is attempted on a non-existent variable, a value of zero is returned if the variable is numeric and null if the variable is string. The variable is not created at this time.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Internal Data Representation

### 13.3.2 Variable Internal Representation

Nibble 0 of the variable register is the Data Type nibble and contains the data type code, except for indirect variables (see below). The following information is encoded in nibble 0:

|     |               |                   |
|-----|---------------|-------------------|
| 0-9 | Real scalar   | (default)         |
| A   | Integer       | (simple or array) |
| B   | Real short    | (simple or array) |
| C   | Real array    |                   |
| D   | Complex Short | (simple or array) |
| E   | Complex       | (simple or array) |
| F   | String        | (simple or array) |

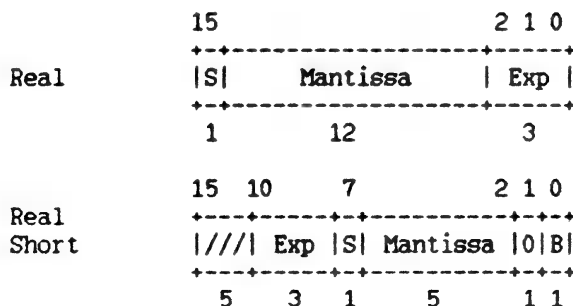
If the variable is default type (Real scalar), the variable register contains the actual value of the variable, and nibble 0 is the low-order digit of the exponent. In all other cases, the nibbles in the variable register mean the following:

Nibble 1 indicates the dimension. If the variable is a scalar, its dimension is 0. If the variable is an array, the dimension is either 1 or 2. The dimension of string arrays must be 1. A value of F or E in this nibble identifies an indirect variable, explained below.

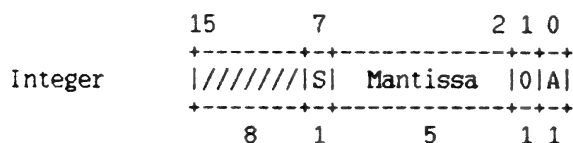
The meaning of the remaining nibbles depends on whether the variable is scalar (that is, a simple variable), array or string.

#### 13.3.2.1 Scalar Numeric Variables

A scalar variable is a simple variable, as opposed to an array. For scalar variables of type integer and real short, the value of the variable is contained in part of the variable register. For scalar complex variables, nibbles 11-15 are a relative pointer to the data. The exact representation is illustrated graphically below.

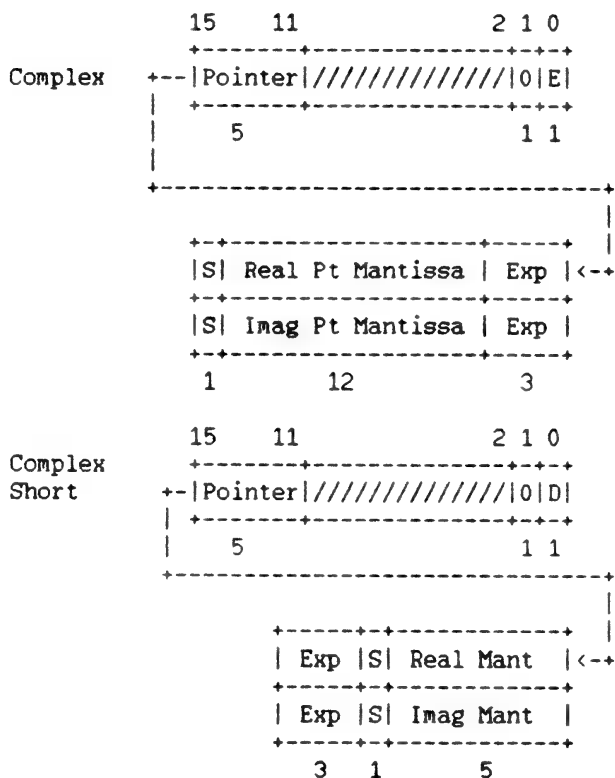


HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Internal Data Representation



S field of Integer is packed:

|          |                                                                            |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Bits 0-2 | Exponent if less than 6.<br>Value of 6 means Inf.<br>Value of 7 means NaN. |
| Bits 3   | Sign.                                                                      |



### 13.3.2.2 Numeric Arrays

For arrays, the information contained in the variable register is referred to as the "dope vector".

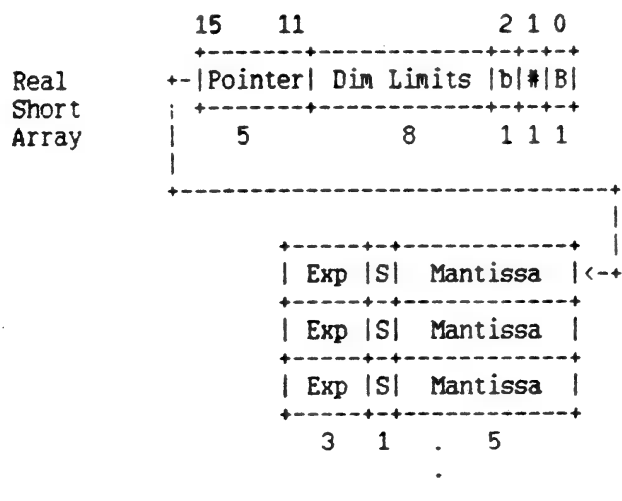
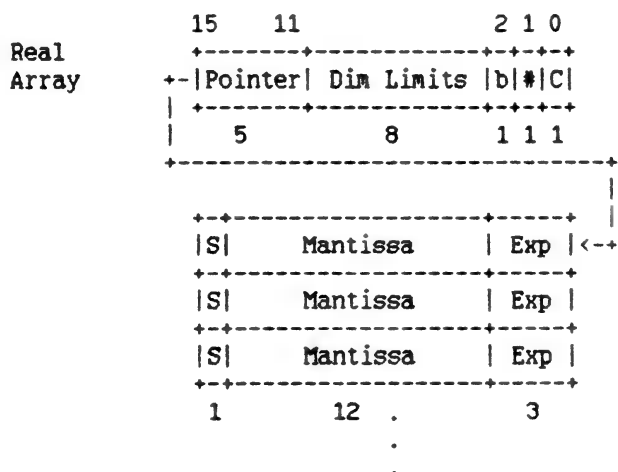
Nibble 2 of the variable register indicates the Base Option of 0 or 1. If this variable is the current STAT array, the high bit of

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Internal Data Representation

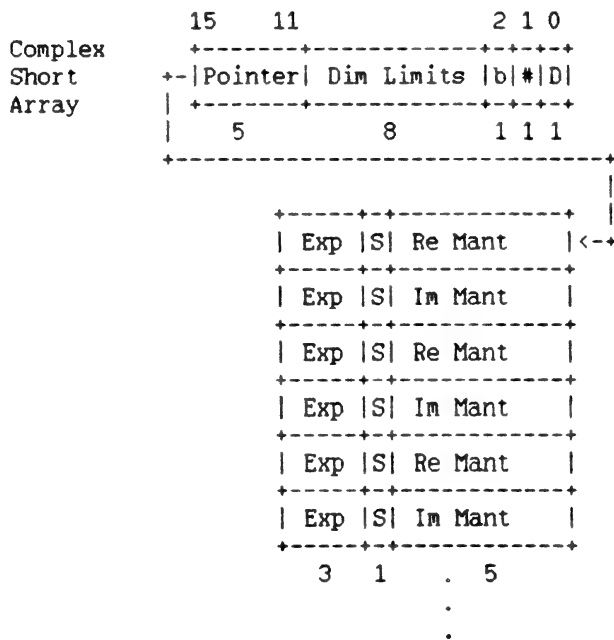
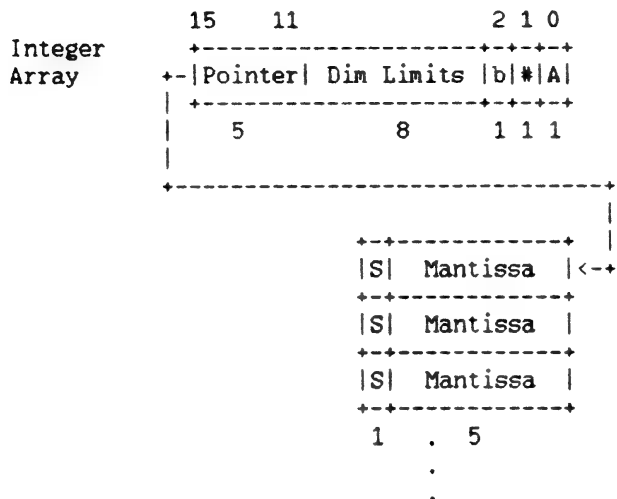
nibble 2 is set. A STAT array always has Base 0 and a different format for the remaining information in the variable register (see STAT array discussion below).

The next 8 nibbles give the limits of each dimension, where the first 4 are the second dimension (meaningless if one-dimensional) and the next 4 are the first dimension. The limit in each dimension is 65535.

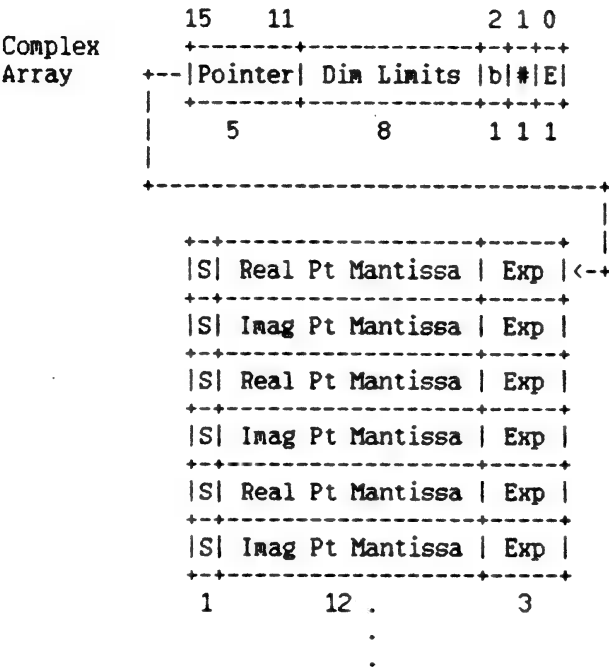
Nibbles 11-15 are a relative pointer to the start of the array data. To calculate the actual data address subtract the relative pointer value from the address of the relative pointer. The subroutine RECADR is useful for this calculation.



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Internal Data Representation



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Internal Data Representation



13.3.2.3 Statistical (STAT) Array

A statistical array is a specialized one-dimensional real array used to accumulate and store summary statistics for a data set. It is set up by the STAT statement. The chapter on "Numeric Computation Algorithms" discusses the elements of a statistical array and their meaning.

A statistical array has base option 0 and the high bit of nibble 2 is set. Nibble 2 therefore has the value 8.

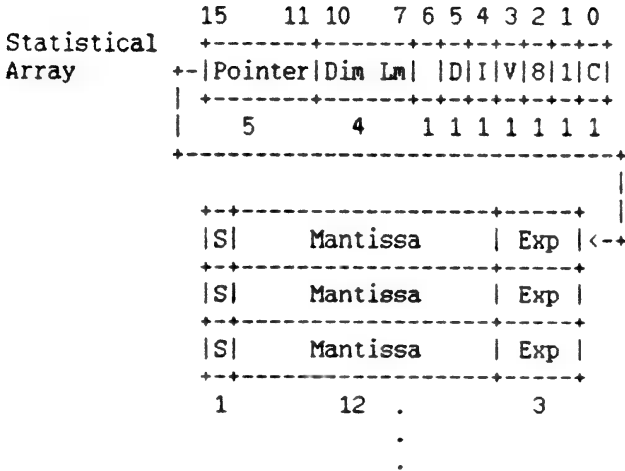
Nibble 3 gives the number of variables in the data set represented by the statistical array. If a linear regression model has been specified by the LR statement, nibbles 4 and 5 give, respectively, the independent and dependent variable numbers. Otherwise, these nibbles have value zero. The maximum value for each of nibbles 3-5 is 15.

Nibble 6 is not used.

The next 4 nibbles give the dimension limit of the statistical array. The maximum value is 65535, although the STAT statement will not dimension a statistical array to a dimension greater than 135.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Internal Data Representation

Nibbles 11-15 are a relative pointer to the start of the array data.



13.3.2.4 String Variables

String variables are allocated when dimensioned or assigned during program execution. The data type is F. The variable register always contains a pointer to the string contents. A value of "null" is returned whenever a nonexistent string variable is referenced.

The value of nibble 1 in the variable register indicates whether the string variable is scalar (value 0) or an array (value 1). Note that string arrays can have only one dimension.

As with numeric arrays, nibble 2 indicates the base option for a string array. This number is meaningless for scalar strings (where nibble 1 is 0).

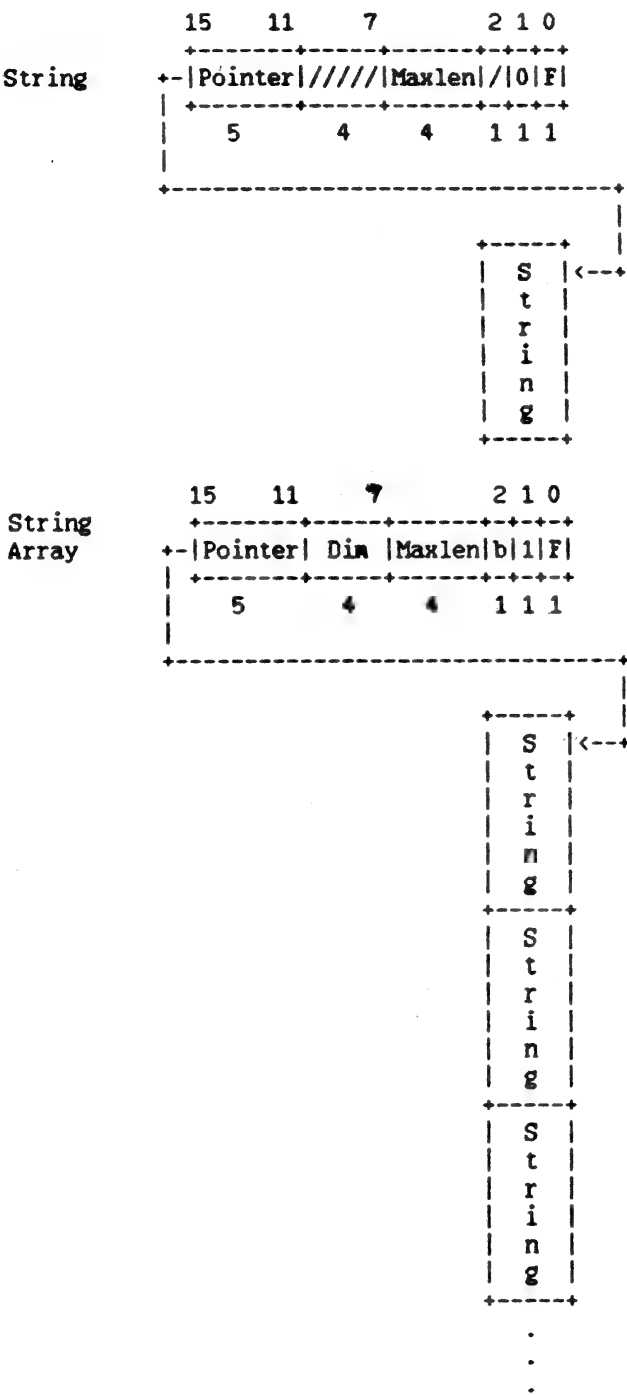
Nibbles 3-6 contain the maximum string length. Maximum value is 65535.

Nibbles 7-10 contain the string dimension limit (meaningless if not an array). Maximum value is 65535.

Nibbles 11-15 are a relative pointer to the start of the string (or string array) data.

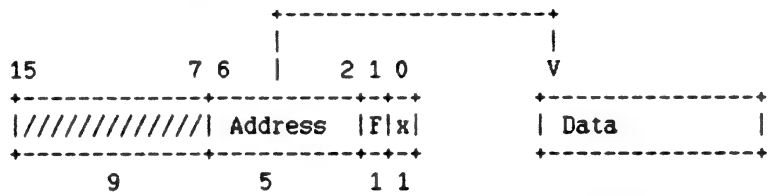


HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 Internal Data Representation



13.3.3 Indirect Variables

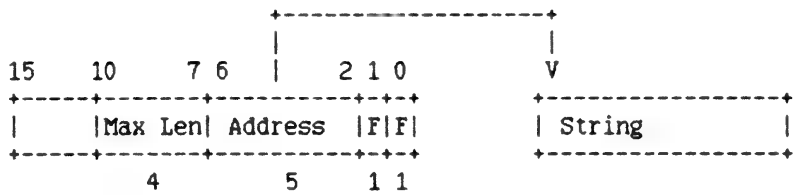
Indirect variables are used for parameter passing in subprograms. The data register for the variable is used as an indirect address to the actual variable. Note that if a variable which has been passed to a subprogram is itself an indirect variable, the new pointer will not be linked indirectly through that variable but will point to the originally allocated variable register.



If nibble 1 is F, it indicates that nibbles 2-6 are an absolute pointer to the data of the variable. Nibble 0 is the data type:

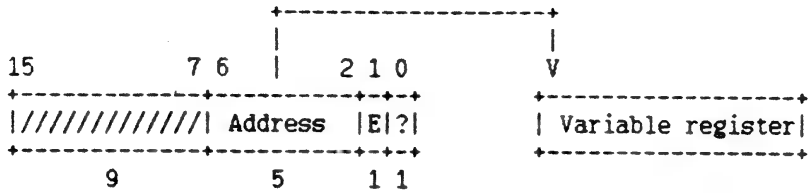
- A -- Integer
- B -- Real Short
- C -- Real
- D -- Complex Short
- E -- Complex
- F -- String

For a string variable, nibble 0 is F and nibble 1 is F. The address field is the absolute address of the string. The maximum length of the string is kept in nibbles 7-10.



For an array, nibble 1 is E and nibbles 2-6 hold an absolute pointer to the descriptor for the array. Nibble 0 is meaningless. To find the type of the array, it is necessary to follow the pointer to the variable register and look at the type specified there.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Internal Data Representation



13.3.4 Accessing Variables from Binary Programs

13.3.4.1 Finding the Address of a Variable

The ADDRSS (and ADRS40) utility is useful for searching through a variable chain to find the address of a variable. This is a low level utility that does not handle special cases such as indirect variables. If the variable is not found it merely indicates that condition.

13.3.4.2 Recalling a Variable

The following procedure can be employed to recall variables by name:

Have in memory a stream in the form of a tokenized variable followed by a comma or EOL token.  
Point D0 at this stream.  
Call EXPEXC to evaluate this expression.  
Pop the value off the math stack.

This procedure will return a value of zero for non-existent numeric variables and null string for non-existent string variables.

13.3.4.3 Storing into a Variable

The following procedure can be employed to store into variables by name: Have in memory a stream in the form of a tokenized variable followed by a comma or EOL token. For example: A\$ EOL is tokenized D2 14 0F and Q9(1,2) EOL is tokenized 13 23 D7 96 15 2 0F. Point D0 at this stream. Call EXPEXC to evaluate this expression. Call DEST to save the address to store into in statement scratch. Get the value to be stored on the math stack by evaluating an expression or by other means. Call STORE to store this value into the variable. This will create the variable if necessary. If calling STORE from a binary program, be sure to zero S-R1-2 to prevent tracing.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Internal Data Representation

#### 13.3.4.4 Creating Variables and Arrays

The methods described above are a way of accessing variables without dealing with any messy problems such as what if the variable you are recalling or storing into doesn't exist. The drawback of these methods is that no control is possible in selecting nondefault attributes for the variables/arrays when they are created -- strings are 32 characters, arrays have an upper bound of 10 in any dimension and numeric variables are of type real. If sizes or types other than these defaults are required, the assembly programmer must explicitly create them. The following procedure will do this.

Set S-R1-3 to the data type (not necessary if string)

A = Integer  
B = Real Short  
C = Real  
D = Complex Short  
E = Complex

Point D0 at a token stream in the format of a DIM statement. The following are examples:

| Description    | Tokenization           |
|----------------|------------------------|
| A EOL          | 14 0F                  |
| A(2) EOL       | D7 14 23 0F            |
| B8(3,4) EOL    | D7 86 24 33 43 0F      |
| A\$(6) EOL     | D7 D2 14 63 0F         |
| B\$[80] EOL    | D2 24 2F C008 0F       |
| C\$(6)[80] EOL | D7 D2 34 63 2F C008 0F |

GOSBVL =PREP  
GOSBVL =DPVCTR  
R1=C

\*     Iff creating a COMPLEX or COMPLEX SHORT variable  
\*     then set status bit 0 (ST=1 0).

GOSBVL =SPACE  
GOSBVL =DMNSN

#### 13.3.4.5 Destroying Variables and Arrays

The following method can be used by the assembly language programmer to destroy variables and arrays:

Point D0 at the tokenized stream for the desired variable.  
Call DSTRY\* to destroy that variable.

### 13.4 Mathematical Operands

Floating point arguments sent to the math routines from the system generally come off the stack. They are the 12-digit numbers that are visible to the external world and are referred to synonymously in the documentation as 12-forms or packed numbers. This is to distinguish them from the 15-digit numbers used internally in the math routines.

In order to deliver accurate final results to the system the math routines do intermediate calculations with 15-digit mantissas and 5-digit exponents. These internal values are referred to as 15-forms or unpacked numbers.

A typical procedure for a math operation is to pop the 12-form argument from the stack into CPU register A, then call SPLITA to unpack the number into registers A and B. Now the math routine will use this 15-form input to obtain a 15-form result. This accurate 15-form result can then serve as an input to another math routine, or as a final result to be packed by uRES12 into an external 12-form for the system.

#### 13.4.1 Packed Representation (12-form)

##### 13.4.1.1 Normal Values

Let  $x$  stand for a floating point value with sign  $S$ , 12-digit mantissa  $MM...M$ , and 3-digit exponent  $EEE$ . Then  $x$  is represented as

```

 1 12 3
+-----+-----+
|S|MM...M|EEE|
+-----+-----+

```

where

$$S = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for "+"} \\ 9 & \text{for "-"} \end{cases}$$

$MM...M$  = the 12-digit BCD mantissa with implied decimal point after the leading digit, (i.e.  $1 \leq \text{mant} < 10$ )

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Internal Data Representation

and

EEE = the 3-digit BCD exponent in 10's complement notation. (+0 and -0 are represented with an exponent of 0)

Examples

```

1) +10 --> +-----+
 |0|100000000000|001|
 +-----+

2) -.21 --> +-----+
 |9|210000000000|999|
 +-----+

3) -0 --> +-----+
 |9|000000000000|000|
 +-----+

```

13.4.1.2 Extended Values

The values Inf and NaN are distinguished by the hexadecimal digit F in the XS field of the register. Denormalized 12-forms are allowed, but must have an exponent of -499.

Examples

```

1) 0.0051E-499 --> +-----+
 |0|000510000000|501|
 +-----+

2) -Inf --> +-----+
 |9| unspecified|F00|
 +-----+

3) NaN --> +-----+
 |S|????????????|F##|
 +-----+

```

where ## is non-zero.

```

a) HP-71 Quiet NaN --> +-----+
 |S|mmm00000000|F01|
 +-----+

```

where m=msg#

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Internal Data Representation

b) HP-71 Sig. NaN --> +-----+  
                          |S|000000000000|F02|  
                          +-----+

#### 13.4.2 Unpacked representation (15-form)

For greater precision during calculations, 12-digit numeric parameter values (called "12-forms") are expanded or "unpacked" into a form that has a 15-digit mantissa and a 5-digit exponent field. This form is called a "15-form."

A 15-digit form is represented in the CPU as a register pair (A,B) or (C,D). For example, the pair (A,B) has the following format:

                  +-----+  
A = |S|??????????|EEEE|  
                  +-----+  
                  +-----+  
B = |?|MMMMMMMMMMMM|  
                  +-----+

where E is a 5-digit 10's complement exponent and B contains a 15-digit mantissa.

The HP-71 math routines assume that unpacked numbers are normalized (denormalized 12-forms are normalized by routine SPLITA). The exceptional values Inf and NaN are indicated by the exponent field alone. Ordinarily, all five digits in the exponent field are BCD. However, if nibble 2 (the XS field) is F, then the number is Inf or NaN; nibbles 0 and 1 then distinguish between Inf and the two types of NaNs (signaling and quiet).

|                                |            |
|--------------------------------|------------|
| NUMERIC COMPUTATION ALGORITHMS | CHAPTER 14 |
|--------------------------------|------------|

#### 14.1 Standard Math Inputs and Outputs

The HP-71 standard internal math routines accept 15-forms as inputs and deliver 15-forms as outputs (see sec on Mathematical Operands in chapter on "Internal Data Representation"). The routine names usually end with "15". For example, SQR15, LN15, TAN15, AD2-15, etc.

For single argument functions (e.g. SQR15, LN15) the argument  $x$  is a 15-form in the CPU registers A and B (denoted here as the register pair (A,B)). Two argument functions (e.g. AD2-15, MP2-15) have their 15-form arguments in (A,B) and (C,D), with the first argument generally in (C,D). That is,  $x/y$  calls DV2-15 with (A,B)= $y$  and (C,D)= $x$ . The only other standard input is that DEC MODE must be set before entering a math routine.

The standard math output is a 15-form TRUNCATED (as opposed to ROUNDED) result in (A,B) along with other information in the hardware status bits SB (sticky bit) and XM (external module missing). Whenever SB=0 on exit, that implies that the 15-form result in (A,B) represents the mathematical function result EXACTLY. For example,  $1/2$  is 0.5 and that is precisely the result delivered by DV2-15, while  $1/3$  can not be represented exactly in 15 digits so it must have SB=1 on exit.

In writing mathematical routines, keep in mind that in some cases it is not practical to detect exactness, and in these cases SB should be set to 1. With the function  $y^x$ , for example, it would be hopeless to try to detect all exact values (e.g.  $39.0625^{.25} = 2.5$  exactly) and so in these cases SB should be set to 1. Therefore, whenever SB=0 the result is expected to be exact, while if SB=1 on exit then this indicates that the result COULD be inexact.

The XM bit is used to indicate an exceptional calculation. When XM=1 on exit, that indicates that a Divide-by-Zero (DVZ), Invalid Operation (IVL) or a  $0^0$  type exception has occurred. In this case the pointer P identifies the exception:



## HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

### Numeric Computation Algorithms

| P  | Exception         |
|----|-------------------|
| -- | -----             |
| 3  | Divide by zero    |
| 4  | Invalid Operation |
| 14 | 0^0               |

#### EXAMPLES:

- 1)  $2/0$  -- Output: (A,B)=Inf,SB=0,XM=1 & P=3
- 2)  $\text{LN}15(0)$  -- (A,B)=-Inf,SB=0,XM=1 & P=3
- 3)  $\text{SQR}15(-1)$  -- (A,B)=NaN,SB=0,XM=1 & P=4
- 4)  $0^0$  -- (A,B)=1,SB=0,XM=1 & P=14
- 5)  $\text{EXP}15(1\text{E}-20)$  -- (A,B)=1,SB=1,XM=0.

The HP-71 follows the proposed IEEE standard for exceptional math calculations. See the HP-71 reference manual for details.

The Standard Math Output is the input to uRES12. This routine packs a 15-form into a 12-form for delivery to the system and its documentation (in volume II) is worth reading at this point. Notice that all math routines deliver IEEE default values and thus avoid loss of control to error exits. These default values may be altered by uRES12 if the TRAP settings demand it. For anyone coding or using math routines, understanding inputs to uRES12 is an good place to start.

There is a Math Scratch Stack available to math routines. Its utility routines (STSCR,RCSCR,etc) save and restore the 15-forms in (A,B) and (C,D). It holds 4 15-forms.

Another restriction on math routines is that they do not alter CPU data pointers D0 & D1 since expression execution routines require that information on return from the math routine.

## 14.2 Statistical Algorithms

### 14.2.1 Summary Statistics

A sample is a collection of observations of a random variable. A matched sample consists of one or more samples where each observation in a sample is matched with an observation in each of the other samples. Each sample has the same number of elements,

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 Numeric Computation Algorithms

which we will denote by  $N$ .  $NVAR$  will denote the number of variables (samples).

A matched sample data set can then be visualized as a table with  $N$  rows and  $NVAR$  columns:

|      |          |          |     |          |     |          |     |             |
|------|----------|----------|-----|----------|-----|----------|-----|-------------|
| var: | $x(1)$   | $x(2)$   | ... | $x(j)$   | ... | $x(k)$   | ... | $x(NVAR)$   |
| 1    | $x(1,1)$ | $x(1,2)$ | ... | $x(1,j)$ | ... | $x(1,k)$ | ... | $x(1,NVAR)$ |
| 2    | $x(2,1)$ | $x(2,2)$ | ... | $x(2,j)$ | ... | $x(2,k)$ | ... | $x(2,NVAR)$ |
| .    | .        | .        | .   | .        | .   | .        | .   | .           |
| .    | .        | .        | .   | .        | .   | .        | .   | .           |
| .    | .        | .        | .   | .        | .   | .        | .   | .           |
| i    | $x(i,1)$ | $x(i,2)$ | ... | $x(i,j)$ | ... | $x(i,k)$ | ... | $x(i,NVAR)$ |
| .    | .        | .        | .   | .        | .   | .        | .   | .           |
| .    | .        | .        | .   | .        | .   | .        | .   | .           |
| .    | .        | .        | .   | .        | .   | .        | .   | .           |
| N    | $x(N,1)$ | $x(N,2)$ | ... | $x(N,j)$ | ... | $x(N,k)$ | ... | $x(N,NVAR)$ |

Each row of this table represents a point in  $NVAR$ -dimensional space and will be called a data point. A data point could be considered an observation or realization of a  $NVAR$ -dimensional random variable, and we would have  $N$  such realizations.

Regardless of how such a data set is thought of (whether as a matched sample or as a sample of a vector-valued random variable), it may be useful to perform various statistical operations on it.

For the purposes of performing the HP-71 mainframe statistical operations and functions, we do not need to store the entire data set. Instead, we reduce, or summarize, the data in the following way. Let  $x(ij)$  represent the entry in row  $i$  and column  $j$  for  $i=1,2,\dots,N$  and  $j=1,2,\dots,NVAR$ . The summary statistics are then:

$$\begin{aligned}
 &N \\
 &NVAR \\
 &T(j) = E_i x(ij) \quad j=1,2,\dots,NVAR \\
 &S(jk) = E_i [x(ij)-T(j)/N][x(ik)-T(k)/N] \quad j,k=1,2,\dots,NVAR
 \end{aligned}$$

Here  $E$  represents the summation symbol and we have deleted the

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Numeric Computation Algorithms

commas between subscripts to save space. The T(j) represent the column totals and the S(jk) represent the mean-adjusted sums of squares and cross-products of the mean-adjusted variables.

Previous HP calculators accumulated the unadjusted sums of squares and sums of cross-products of the unadjusted variables:

$$\sum_i x(ij)x(ik)$$

rather than the S(jk). Three advantages to using the S(jk) are:

- (1) They reduce the potential for loss of significance errors when the variables have zero means.
- (2) Calculations based on them are faster than those based on the unadjusted ones.
- (3) It is easier to use sample means, variances, and correlations in place of the original data.

The STAT statement reserves space for these summary statistics by dimensioning a statistical array. This array has one dimension and has length (NVAR+1)(NVAR+2)/2. NVAR is saved in nibble 3 of the statistical array's dope vector. (See "Internal Data Representation" chapter for more information about the statistical array dope vector.) The other statistics will be stored as

(N,T(1),S(11),T(2),S(12),S(22),...,S(NVAR,NVAR)).

Multiple matched samples can be stored simultaneously and analyzed in any order by using more than one statistical array.

A data point V = (V(1),...,V(NVAR)) is "added" to or "dropped" from the current data set using the ADD and DROP statements, respectively.

#### 14.2.1.1 ADD operator

ADD updates the summary statistics according to:

If N<0 then print "Invalid Stat Array" and stop

For k=0 to NVAR

For j=1 to k (skip if k=0)

If N=0 then S(jk):=0

else S(jk):=S(jk)+(N\*V(j)-T(j))(N\*V(k)-T(k))/[N(N+1)]

Next j

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Numeric Computation Algorithms

T(k):=T(k)+V(k)

Next k

N:=N+1

#### 14.2.1.2 DROP Operator

DROP updates the summary statistics according to:

If N<0 or 0<N<1 then print "Invalid Stat Array" and stop

If N=0 then print "Invalid Stat Operator" and stop

For k=0 to NVAR

For j=1 to k (skip if k=0)

If N=1 then S(jk):=0

else S(jk):=S(jk)-(N\*V(j)-T(j))(N\*V(k)-T(k))/[N(N-1)]

Next j

T(k):=T(k)-V(k)

Next k

N:=N-1

#### 14.2.2 Simple Linear Regression

The simple linear regression model is:

$$X(j) = a + bX(k) + e$$

where X(j) is the dependent variable, X(k) is the independent variable, a and b are constants to be determined (estimated), and e represents random errors (uncorrelated with zero mean and unknown but constant variance). The constants a and b are determined by the method of least squares. That is, they are chosen to minimize the residual sum of squares:

$$\sum_i [X(ij) - a - bX(ik)]^2$$

The solution is:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Numeric Computation Algorithms

$$b = S(jk)/S(kk), \text{ and}$$
$$a = [T(j) - b*T(k)]/N.$$

The LR statement specifies the current regression by specifying the dependent and independent variable numbers. These numbers are stored respectively in nibbles 5 and 4 of the current statistical array's dope vector.

Note that a (constant) random variable equal to one and having the coefficient  $a$  is implicitly present in the regression model. This interpretation can be quite useful when adding variables to or dropping variables from multiple linear regression models.

The mean-adjusted sum of squares for this constant variable and any mean-adjusted sum of cross-products involving this variable are zero. The total for this variable is  $N$ . Therefore, no additional summary statistics need be accumulated in order to implicitly include this variable in the data set.

For these reasons, this random variable, numbered 0, will always be considered present in a data set and 0 will be considered a valid variable number for all statistical statements and functions, except where explicitly stated otherwise.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Clock System

|              |            |
|--------------|------------|
| CLOCK SYSTEM | CHAPTER 15 |
|--------------|------------|

The built-in clock system is an event scheduler for use in all time-keeping applications internal and external to the BASIC operating system. The clock system is built around one of the 24-bit countdown timers in the display driver chips.

## 15.1 Theory of Operation

### 15.1.1 Clock System Hardware

The hardware part of the clock system --the timer at address #2E2F8-- is a read/writeable 24-bit countdown timer which runs at 512 hz and which exerts a service request whenever the high bit is set. Treating this timer as a two's complement quantity, its range of values is 8388607 to -8388608 counts, where a count is 1/512th second. This is a range of about 4.55 to -4.55 hours.

### 15.1.2 Clock System Software

The software part of the clock system uses this timer to schedule the various events --ON TIMERS, 10-minute timeout, wait and external alarms-- that must be processed. It does so by setting the timer to go negative (exerting a service request) at the desired ("target") time, and maintaining a RAM location to keep track of the target time. The current time may be computed by subtracting the current timer value from the target time.

The clock system maintains several alarm slots for the various alarms which may be scheduled. One of these, the external alarm slot, is used for all external applications which need to schedule an alarm. The protocol for its use is explained below.

Whenever the clock system is accessed, it examines these slots and schedules whichever alarm is next due. When the alarm comes due, the timer exerts a service request. The CKSREQ (check-service-request) routine calls ALMSRV (alarm-serve), which will then schedule the next alarm. If an external alarm is due, the clock system will force an exception condition, which will cause a poll which will allow external alarm processing. More on

## HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description Clock System

that later.

If, when the clock system is accessed, there is no alarm due within 4 hours, the system will schedule a "clock system update". This is necessary simply to keep time because of the limited range of the hardware countdown timer.

### 15.2 Software Timebase Correction

Because of the finite accuracy of the timebase in the timer (estimated  $\pm 50$  ppm), the clock system incorporates a software timebase correction scheme. The "Adjustment Factor" (or "AF") is a 24-bit 2's complement quantity which expresses a correction to be applied to the timebase. An adjustment factor of 0 indicates no correction. A non-zero adjustment factor indicates the number of counts to wait before adding (if AF is positive) or subtracting (if AF is negative) a count. In other words, it is the inverse of the inaccuracy. Whenever the clock system is accessed, it adds or subtracts the appropriate number of counts to keep the proper time.

The adjustment factor may be set by the user either directly (the AF(<arg>) function) or indirectly (the SETTIME, ADJUST and EXACT commands).

Several quantities are maintained in RAM to implement the adjustment factor scheme: TIMOFS (accumulated error), TIMLST (time of last EXACT), TIMLAF (time of last AF correction) and TIMAF (adjustment factor). Gory detail about its operation can be obtained from the documentation headers for CLKUPD and COMPAF.

### 15.3 Format of Time Information

Defining 1 Jan 0000 as the beginning of time and a "count" as 1/512 second, time in the clock system is maintained as number of counts since the beginning of time. The current time may be read by calling CMPT and easily converted to seconds by shifting right 9 bits.

Utilities exist to extract more useful quantities from the time. Here is a list, using the following terms: TIME = number of seconds since beginning of time; TIME-OF-DAY = number of seconds since midnight; DAY# = number of days since 1 Jan 0000.

TODT: Convert from TIME to TIME-OF-DAY and DAY#.

FROMDT: Inverse of TODT.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Clock System

SECHMS: Convert from TIME-OF-DAY to hours/minutes/seconds.

HMSSEC: Inverse of SECHMS.

YMDDAY: Convert from year/month/day to DAY#.

DAYYMD: Inverse of YMDDAY.

JD2DAY: Convert from "Julian Date" (year and day-of-year) to DAY#.

DAY2JD: Inverse of JD2DAY.

#### 15.4 Scheduling External Alarms

This section and the next contain the necessary information for interfacing with the clock system to schedule events.

Time is kept internally in 512ths of a second since 1 Jan 0000, which takes 48 bits. All time quantities, including alarms, are kept in these units. Scheduling an external alarm is simple: store the alarm time in RAM location ALRM6 and call CMPT. When the alarm comes due, the alarm can be processed and the next alarm can be scheduled. Certain rules must be followed in order to assure that alarms are not lost and the machine is not disrupted.

##### 15.4.1 Scheduling Code

The SETALM subroutine sets an alarm given the absolute time at which the alarm is to come due. The SETALR subroutine sets an alarm relative to the current time. The routines are called with the time in A[11-0] and with C[0]=5. See the documentation headers for more information.

##### 15.4.2 Priority of External Alarms

There is only one external alarm slot. If an application schedules an alarm through it, it must do so in such a way as not to destroy alarms which may have been scheduled by other applications. This simple protocol will insure that:

- 1) If alarm in ALRM6 is past due (i.e., current time > ALRM6), you can schedule your alarm.
- 2) If alarm in ALRM6 is not past due, you can schedule your alarm ONLY IF a) your alarm is not past due, AND b) your alarm occurs BEFORE the current alarm in ALRM6.



## HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

### Clock System

This is an important rule. If it is broken, external alarms can be lost.

#### 15.4.3 When Alarms Come Due

When an alarm comes due, a service request will be exerted. This will lead to a pSREQ poll when the mainframe gets around to it and, if a program is running, a pEXCPT poll.

The pEXCPT poll will probably not be very useful for most time applications, except for those which should affect running program execution (such as ON-TIMER type statements). The pSREQ poll is useful, but it is not a time to disrupt the machine. It is, rather, a good time to schedule your next alarm (obeying the protocol, above) and to set up to process this alarm. See the Considerations section, below.

Accessing the clock system is fairly disruptive in terms of register usage and subroutine level usage. The RAM availability during the pSREQ poll does allow saving of R0, R1 and enough subroutine levels in scratch RAM to call the clock system safely. Since pSREQ can occur in any of many different states (during WAIT, during DISP, between statements, when machine is dormant, etc.), it is NOT a time to take over the machine. Performing a beep here would not be harmful; running a BASIC program would be harmful. The section below should provide some useful information in making the system work for you.

### 15.5 Developing Clock System Applications

#### 15.5.1 Taking Control

The problem of taking control of the computer in a reasonable (i.e., not overly disruptive) way is an overriding consideration in development of a clock application. A good example of how to handle the problem is the processing of commands through HPIL in remote mode and device mode. That code would be good reading for somebody developing a clock system application.

For demonstration purposes, consider the HP-75C clock system. If an alarm comes due while the machine is turned off, the machine will wake up and process the alarm. If the machine is on, it will simply beep when the alarm comes due and process the alarm when the machine is turned off. This would be fairly simple to implement on the HP-71 by intercepting the following polls and doing the following:

## HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description

### Clock System

psREQ: Note past-due alarms. Beep if an alarm has become past due. Schedule new alarms.

ppWROF: Note machine entering sleep state. Schedule immediate wakeup through external alarm if you need to process an alarm.

pDSWNK: Wake machine. Put command in external command buffer to process alarm.

Developing an application which would process an alarm while the machine is awake would be more difficult. Recommended reading for this is the aforementioned HPIL code.

#### 15.5.2 Insuring That the Alarm is Processed

Another consideration in light of the previous example: If the External Command Buffer is used to deliver a command which will process an alarm, there is no guarantee that the buffer will not be overwritten by another lexfile. Consider this scenario:

A pocket secretary application will execute a certain command when the alarm comes due. The alarm comes due, the machine wakes up and the pocket secretary puts the command in the external command buffer. The external command buffer is overwritten and the pocket secretary has no way to know if its command was ever executed.

A recommended solution would be for the pocket secretary to define a keyword (such as "PROCALRM") which is an instruction to process pending alarms (or to process the oldest alarm) and to delete them. This command may be executed from the keyboard by the user or it may be placed in the external command buffer. This way, if the external command buffer is overwritten, the alarm will not be deleted. The pocket secretary will know when its alarms have been processed.

#### 15.5.3 Disrupting the Mainframe

A good, non-disruptive way to implement a program alarm would be to CALL the desired program.

#### 15.5.4 Maintaining Your Own Alarm List

The clock system doesn't care how you maintain your own alarm list... it only cares that you schedule alarms in its time format: counts since 1 Jan 0000. And that you follow the scheduling protocol. No recommendation is expressed or implied as to whether you should keep your alarm list in an I/O buffer or a file.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Clock System

15.6 Clock System Ram Usage

The following system memory is used in the internal clock system:

| Name   | Size(nibs) | Function                                                 |
|--------|------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| -----  | -----      | -----                                                    |
| NXTIRQ | 12         | time of next sreq                                        |
| ALRM1  | 12         | on timer 1                                               |
| ALRM2  | 12         | on timer 2                                               |
| ALRM3  | 12         | on timer 3                                               |
| ALRM4  | 12         | timeout                                                  |
| ALRM5  | 12         | pause                                                    |
| ALRM6  | 12         | external alarm<br>(set by pocket sec'y or<br>controller) |
| PNDALM | 2          | bitmap of pending alarms                                 |
| TIMOFS | 12         | time error offset for AF use                             |
| TIMLST | 12         | time of last exact                                       |
| TIMLAF | 12         | time of last AF correction                               |
| TIMAF  | 6          | accuracy factor                                          |

|                                 |            |
|---------------------------------|------------|
| HP-71 ASSEMBLER INSTRUCTION SET | CHAPTER 16 |
|---------------------------------|------------|

This chapter describes the HP-71 assembler instruction set. The instruction mnemonics shown are those provided by the assembler used by the HP-71 software development team (which is available by special arrangement with HP). Almost all the mnemonics shown are also supported by the HP-71 FORTH/Assembler ROM.

### 16.1 CPU Overview

The HP-71 CPU is a proprietary CPU optimized for high-accuracy BCD math and low power consumption. The data path is 4 bits wide. Memory is accessed in 4-bit quantities called "nibbles" or "nibs". Addresses are 20 bits, yielding a physical address space of 512K bytes.

There are four working 64-bit registers, five scratch 64-bit registers, two 20-bit data pointer registers, one 4-bit pointer register, a 20-bit program counter, a 16-bit input register, and a 12-bit output register. Return addresses are stored on an eight-level hardware return stack that accepts 20-bit addresses. In addition, there are 4 Hardware Status bits, a Carry bit, and 16 Program Status bits. The lower 12 Program Status bits can be manipulated as a 12-bit register.

#### 16.1.1 Working and Scratch Registers

The working registers are used for data manipulation. Working registers A and C are also used for memory access.

The scratch registers are used to temporarily hold the contents of working registers. In addition, the lower 20 bits of scratch register R4 are used for interrupt processing by the operating system, and therefore are not normally available for data storage.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

| WORKING REGISTERS |         | SCRATCH REGISTERS |          |
|-------------------|---------|-------------------|----------|
| Name              | Size    | Name              | Size     |
| A                 | 64 bits | R0                | 64 bits  |
| B                 | 64 bits | R1                | 64 bits  |
| C                 | 64 bits | R2                | 64 bits  |
| D                 | 64 bits | R3                | 64 bits  |
|                   |         | R4                | 64 bits* |

\* Note: the lower 20 bits of R4 are modified  
whenever an interrupt occurs, and are  
normally unavailable for storage

16.1.1.1 Field Selection

Subfields of the working registers may be manipulated by the use of field selection. The possible field selections range from the entire register to any single nibble of the register. Certain subfields are designed for use in BCD calculations. Others are used for data access or general data manipulation.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

FIELD SELECTION FIELDS

P Digit pointed to by P register  
 WP Digit 0 through digit pointed at by P  
 XS Digit 2 - Exponent sign  
 X Digits 0-2 - Exponent and exponent sign  
 S Digit 15 - Mantissa sign  
 M Digits 3-14 - Mantissa  
 B Digits 0-1 - Exponent or byte field  
 W Digits 0-15 - Whole word  
 A Digits 0-4 - Address field

Nibbles of Register

```

15:14:13:12:11:10: 9: 8: 7: 6: 5: 4: 3: 2: 1: 0

S XS|<-B->|
 |<---- A ---->|
 |<----- M ----->|<-- X ->|
|<----- W ----->|

```

16.1.2 Pointer Registers

The Data Pointer registers, D0 and D1, are used to contain addresses during memory access, and are used in conjunction with the working registers.

The P Pointer register is used in Field Selection operations with the working registers.

DATA POINTER REGISTERS

```

+-----+
D0 | 20 bits |
+-----+
+-----+
D1 | 20 bits |
+-----+

```

P POINTER REGISTER

```

+-----+
P | 4 bits |
+-----+

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

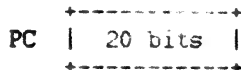
### 16.1.3 Input, Output, and Program Counter Registers

The input/output registers are used to communicate with the system bus. The program counter points to the next instruction to be executed by the CPU.

#### INPUT AND OUTPUT REGISTERS



#### PROGRAM COUNTER REGISTER



### 16.1.4 Carry and Status Bits

The Carry bit is adjusted when a calculation or logical test is performed. During a calculation, such as incrementing or decrementing a register, it is set if the calculation overflows or borrows; otherwise it is cleared. During a logical test, such as comparing two registers for equality, it is set if the test is true; otherwise it is cleared.

The operating system uses the upper 4 Program Status bits to indicate the state of the operating system. The remaining 12 Program Status bits are generally available to applications software, and may be manipulated collectively as the ST register.

The four Hardware Status bits are set (but not cleared) by hardware-related events, and must therefore be cleared beforehand in order to detect a particular occurrence. They are individually accessible by name. The Module Pulled bit (MP) is set when a module is pulled from or added to the machine. The Sticky Bit (SB) is set when a "one" bit shifts off the right end of a working register as the result of a shift instruction. The Service Request (SR) bit is set as a result of the SREQ? instruction if any hardware service request is pending. The external Module Missing bit is set by execution of a zero opcode (RTNSXM instruction).

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

CARRY: 1 bit

PROGRAM STATUS: 16 bits

| Bits       | Usage                                                        |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15 thru 12 | Indicate state of operating system                           |
| 11 thru 0  | Available to programs, may be manipulated as the SI register |

HARDWARE STATUS: 4 bits

| Bit | Symbol | Name                    |
|-----|--------|-------------------------|
| 3   | MP     | Module Pulled           |
| 2   | SR     | Service Request         |
| 1   | SB     | Sticky Bit              |
| 0   | XM     | External Module Missing |

#### 16.1.5 Loading Data from Memory

When data is read from memory into a register, the CPU places the lowest addressed nibble in the least significant nibble of the register. Thus the data appears to be loaded backwards in the register.

For example, if the data shown below in memory is read into the C register using the C=DAT1 4 instruction, the data in the register will be arranged as shown.

| Memory Location | Value | C Register       |
|-----------------|-------|------------------|
| 1000            | 0     | 3   2   1   0    |
| 1001            | 1     | +                |
| 1002            | 2     | 15 . . . 3 2 1 0 |
| 1003            | 3     |                  |
| .               |       |                  |
| .               |       |                  |
| .               |       |                  |

This principle applies also to loading constants into a CPU register such as C, D0, or D1, since the CPU must read the constant from the instruction opcode in memory. For example, the instruction LCHX 3210 produces the opcode 330123 and the C register is loaded as shown above.

Note that the apparent reversal of data read from memory is



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

compensated for by a similar reversal procedure when the data is written to memory from the CPU, which restores the data to its original orientation. (See below.)

#### 16.1.6 Storing Data in Memory

When data is written to memory from a register, the CPU places the least significant nibble of the register in the lowest nibble of the addressed memory location. Thus, the data appears to be written in reverse order.

For example, if the data shown above in the C register is written to memory using the DAT1=C 4 instruction, the data will be written to memory as shown.

Note that the apparent reversal of data written to memory is compensated for by a similar reversal procedure when the data is read from memory by the CPU, which restores the data to its original orientation.

### 16.2 Instruction Syntax

#### 16.2.1 Labels and Symbols

A label is a symbolic name for a numeric value. A label acquires its value by appearing in the label field of certain statements. The word "symbol" is a general term for a label, and the two are used interchangeably.

Labels are one to six alphanumeric characters with the following restrictions: the characters comma (,), space ( ) and right parenthesis are prohibited and the first character cannot be equal sign (=), sharp (#), single quote ('), left parenthesis, or the digits 0 through 9.

A label may be immediately preceded by an equal sign which declares the label to be an external symbol. An external symbol defined in one module may be referenced as an external symbol by another module. Such references are resolved when the modules are linked together. Certain HP-71 assemblers, such as the FORTH/ASSEMBLER ROM, have no associated linker and therefore do not support external symbols. In this case, any leading equal sign is ignored.

When a label is used as part of an expression, parentheses are required to delineate it. That is, AD1-10 is a label but (AD1)-10

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

is a computed expression.

### 16.2.2 Comments

A comment line begins with an asterisk (\*) in column one, and may occur anywhere. An in-line comment may begin with any non-blank character and must follow the modifier field of an instruction (or the opcode if no modifier is required).

### 16.2.3 Expressions

Wherever an expression may appear in the modifier field of an instruction, it is represented by the symbol "expr" in the instruction descriptions below. Expressions consist of:

#### EXPRESSION COMPONENTS

| Item                  | Examples                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| decimal constants     | 23434                                                                                                               |
| hexadecimal constants | #1FF0 (less than #100000)                                                                                           |
| ascii constants       | \AB\ (3 or less characters)<br>'AB' (3 or less characters)                                                          |
| operators             | + addition<br>- subtraction<br>% *256+<br>* multiplication<br>/ integer division<br>^ exponentiate<br>& and<br>! or |
| *                     | Current assembly program counter                                                                                    |
| label                 | Symbol defined in the label field of an instruction                                                                 |
| (expression)          | Parenthesized expression                                                                                            |

Two classes of instructions require a modifier field which contains a constant of a specific type that does not conform to the above rules. These are:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

a) String constant which can exceed 3 characters

|        |         |    |
|--------|---------|----|
| LCASC  | 'ascii' | or |
| LCASC  | \ascii\ |    |
|        |         |    |
| NIBASC | 'ascii' | or |
| NIBASC | \ascii\ |    |

b) Unconditional Hex constant

|        |         |
|--------|---------|
| LCHEX  | 4FFFFFF |
| NIBHEX | 4FFFFFF |

16.2.4 Sample Line Image

The format below is the recommended column alignment; however, the assembler is "free format" and only a space is required to delimit the different fields. A label, if present, must start by column 2.

|       |        |          |          |    |
|-------|--------|----------|----------|----|
| 1     | 8      | 15       | 31       | 80 |
| v     | v      | v        | v        | v  |
| ----- |        |          |          |    |
| label | opcode | modifier | comments |    |
| ----- |        |          |          |    |

16.3 Explanation of Symbols .

In the following descriptions of the HP-71 assembler mnemonics, these symbols have the following meanings unless specified otherwise. In particular, note the symbols used to indicate the various values encoded within the assembled opcodes.

- a      The hex digit used to encode the field selection in the assembled opcode of an instruction. See the Field Select Table in the next section for details.
- b      The hex digit used to encode the field selection in the assembled opcode of an instruction. See the Field Select Table in the next section for details.
- d      The number of digits represented by a field selection field. Used in calculating the execution cycle time of some instructions. See the Field Select Table

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

in the next section for details. When used in an extended field selection *fsd*, represents an expression which indicates the number of nibbles of the register that will be affected by the instruction, proceeding from the low-order nibble to higher-order nibbles.

- expr* An expression that evaluates to an absolute or relocatable value, usually less than or equal to 5 nibbles in length.
- fs* Field selection symbol. See the Field Select Table in the next section for details.
- fsd* Extended field selection symbol. Represents either a normal field selection symbol *fs*, or an expression that gives the number of digits *d* of the register that will be affected by the instruction, proceeding from the low-order nibble to higher-order nibbles.
- hh* Two-digit hex constant, such as 08 or F2. Within an opcode represents the hex digits used to store the value of the expression in the opcode in reverse order (see "Loading Data From Memory").
- hhhh* Four-digit hex constant, such as 38FE. Within an opcode, represents the hex digits used to store the value of the expression in the opcode in reverse order (see "Loading Data From Memory").
- hhhhh* Five-digit hex constant, such as 308FE. Within an opcode, represents the hex digits used to store the value of the expression in the opcode in reverse order (see "Loading Data From Memory").
- label* A symbol defined in the label field of an instruction.
- m* A one-digit decimal integer constant.
- n* Represents an expression that evaluates to a 1-nibble value, unless specified otherwise. Within an opcode, represents the hex digit used to store the assembled value of the expression in the opcode.
- nn* Represents an expression that evaluates to a 2-nibble value, unless specified otherwise. Within an opcode, represents the hex digits used to store the assembled value of the expression in the opcode.
- nnnn* Represents an expression that evaluates to a 4-nibble value, unless specified otherwise. Within an opcode, represents the hex digits used to store the assembled

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

value of the expression in the opcode.

nnnnn Represents an expression that evaluates to a 5-nibble value, unless specified otherwise. Within an opcode, represents the hex digits used to store the assembled value of the expression in the opcode.

### 16.3.1 Field Select Table

The following symbols are used in the instruction descriptions to denote the various possible field selections.

There are two ways in which field selection is encoded in the opcode of an instruction. These two patterns are shown in the table below, and are designated by the letter 'a' or 'b' in the opcode value given in the mnemonic descriptions below.

FIELD SELECT TABLE

| Field | Name and Description                                  | Opcode Representation |     | Number of Digits (d) |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----|----------------------|
|       |                                                       | (a)                   | (b) |                      |
| P     | Pointer Field. Digit specified by P pointer register. | 0                     | 8   | 1                    |
| WP    | Word-through-Pointer Field. Digits 0 through (P).     | 1                     | 9   | (P)                  |
| XS    | Exponent Sign Field. Digit 2.                         | 2                     | A   | 1                    |
| X     | Exponent Field. Digits 0 - 2.                         | 3                     | B   | 3                    |
| S     | Sign Field. Digit 15.                                 | 4                     | C   | 1                    |
| M     | Mantissa Field. Digits 3 - 14.                        | 5                     | D   | 12                   |
| B     | Byte Field. Digits 0 - 1.                             | 6                     | E   | 2                    |
| W     | Word Field. All digits.                               | 7                     | F   | 16                   |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

#### 16.4 Instruction Set Overview

The following pages briefly summarize the HP-71 instruction set. For further details please refer to the Mnemonic Dictionary which follows this summary.

##### 16.4.1 GOTO Instructions

```

1 = Statement Label

GOTO label Short unconditional branch
GOC label Short branch if Carry
GONC label Short branch if no Carry
GOLONG label Long GOTO
GOVLNG label Very long GOTO
GOYES label Short branch if test true (must
 follow a Test Instruction)
```

##### 16.4.2 GOSUB Instructions

```
GOSUB label Short transfer to subroutine
GOSUBL label Long GOSUB
GOSRVL label Very long GOSUB
```

##### 16.4.3 Subroutine Returns

```
RIN Unconditional return
RTNSC Return and set Carry
RTNCC Return and clear Carry
RTNSXM Return and set XM bit (Module Missing)
RTI Return and enable interrupts
RTNC Return if Carry set
RTNNC Return if no Carry set
RTNYES Return if test true (must follow a
 Test Instruction)
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

#### 16.4.4 Test Instructions

All test instructions must be followed with a GOYES or a RTNYES instruction. Although they appear to be two statements, in fact they combine to be one. Each test adjusts the Carry bit when performed.

##### 16.4.4.1 Register Tests

```

r,s = A,B,C or (r,s) = (C,D),(D,C)
fs = Field Select

?r=s fs Equal
?r#s fs Not equal
?r=0 fs Equal to zero
?r#0 fs Not equal to zero
?r>s fs Greater than
?r<s fs Less than
?r>=s fs Greater than or equal
?r<=s fs Less than or equal
```

##### 16.4.4.2 P Pointer Tests

```

0 <= n <= 15

?P= n Is P Pointer equal to n?
?P# n P Pointer not equal to n?
```

##### 16.4.4.3 Hardware Status Bit Tests

```
?XM=0 Module Missing bit equal to zero?
?SB=0 Sticky Bit equal to zero?
?SR=0 Service Request bit equal to zero?
?MP=0 Module Pulled bit equal to zero?
```

##### 16.4.4.4 Program Status Bit Tests

```

0 <= n <= 15

?ST=1 n Status n equal to 1?
?ST=0 n Status n equal to 0?
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

?ST#1 n            Status not equal to 1?  
?ST#0 n            Status not equal to 0?

16.4.5 P Pointer Instructions

-----  
0 <= n <= 15  
-----

|       |   |                                        |
|-------|---|----------------------------------------|
| P=    | n | Set P Pointer to n                     |
| P=P+1 |   | Increment P Pointer, adjust Carry      |
| P=P-1 |   | Decrement P Pointer, adjust Carry      |
| C+P+1 |   | Add P Pointer plus one to A-field of C |
| CPEX  | n | Exchange P Pointer with nibble n of C  |
| P=C   | n | Copy nibble n of C into P Pointer      |
| C=P   | n | Copy P Pointer into nibble n of C      |

16.4.6 Status Instructions

16.4.6.1 Program Status

-----  
0 <= n <= 15  
-----

|       |   |                                        |
|-------|---|----------------------------------------|
| ST=1  | n | Set Status n to 1                      |
| ST=0  | n | Set Status n to 0                      |
| CSTEX |   | Exchange X field of C with Status 0-11 |
| C=ST  |   | Copy Status 0-11 into X field of C     |
| ST=C  |   | Copy X field of C into Status 0-11     |
| CLRST |   | Clear Status 0-11                      |

16.4.6.2 Hardware Status

|        |  |                                       |
|--------|--|---------------------------------------|
| SB=0   |  | Clear Sticky Bit                      |
| SR=0   |  | Clear Service Request bit (see SREQ?) |
| MP=0   |  | Clear Module-Pulled bit               |
| XM=0   |  | Clear External Module Missing bit     |
| CLRHST |  | Clear all 4 Hardware Status bits      |



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

16.4.7 System Control

|        |                                                                                                                   |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SETHex | Set arithmetic mode to hexadecimal                                                                                |
| SEIDEC | Set arithmetic mode to decimal                                                                                    |
| SREQ?  | Sets Service Request bit if service has<br>has been requested. C(0) shows what<br>bit(s) are pulled high (if any) |
| C=RSTK | Pop return stack into A-field of C                                                                                |
| RSTK=C | Push A-field of C onto return stack                                                                               |
| CONFIG | Configure                                                                                                         |
| UNCNFG | Unconfigure                                                                                                       |
| RESET  | Send Reset command to system bus                                                                                  |
| BUSCC  | Send Bus command C onto system bus                                                                                |
| SHUTDN | Stop CPU here (sleeps until wake-up)                                                                              |
| C=ID   | Request chip ID into A-field of C                                                                                 |
| INTOFF | Disable interrupts (doesn't affect ON-key<br>or module-pulled interrupts)                                         |
| INTON  | Enable interrupts                                                                                                 |

16.4.8 Keyscan Instructions

|        |                                             |
|--------|---------------------------------------------|
| OUT=C  | Copy X field of C to OUTput register        |
| OUT=CS | Copy nibble 0 of C to OUTput register       |
| A=IN   | Copy INput register to lower 4 nibbles of A |
| C=IN   | Copy INput register to lower 4 nibbles of C |

16.4.9 Register Swaps

-----  
s = R0,R1,R2,R3,R4  
-----

|      |                            |
|------|----------------------------|
| AsEX | Exchange register A with s |
| CsEX | Exchange register C with s |
| A=s  | Copy s to register A       |
| C=s  | Copy s to register C       |
| s=A  | Copy register A to s       |
| s=C  | Copy register C to s       |

16.4.10 Data Pointer Manipulation

-----  
d = D0,D1

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

1 <= n <= 16  
 expr <= 5 nibbles  
 ----

|       |       |                                                                         |
|-------|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AdEX  |       | Exchange Data ptr d with A-field of A                                   |
| CdEX  |       | Exchange Data ptr d with A-field of C                                   |
| AdXS  |       | Exchange lower 4 nibs of Data ptr d with<br>lower 4 nibs of A           |
| CdXS  |       | Exchange lower 4 nibs of Data ptr d with<br>lower 4 nibs of C           |
| d=A   |       | Copy A-field of A to Data pointer d                                     |
| d=C   |       | Copy A-field of C to Data pointer d                                     |
| d=AS  |       | Copy lower 4 nibs of A to lower 4 nibs<br>of Data pointer d             |
| d=CS  |       | Copy lower 4 nibs of C to lower 4 nibs<br>of Data pointer d             |
| d=d+  | n     | Increment Data pointer d by n                                           |
| d=d-  | n     | Decrement Data pointer d by n                                           |
| d=HEX | hh    | Load hh into lower 2 nibs of Data ptr d                                 |
| d=HEX | hhhh  | Load hhhh into lower 4 nibs of Data ptr d                               |
| d=HEX | hhhhh | Load hhhhh into lower 5 nibs of Data ptr d                              |
| d=(2) | nn    | Load nn into lower 2 nibs of Data ptr d<br>(any overflow is ignored)    |
| d=(4) | nnnn  | Load nnnn into lower 4 nibs of Data ptr d<br>(any overflow is ignored)  |
| d=(5) | nnnnn | Load nnnnn into lower 5 nibs of Data ptr d<br>(any overflow is ignored) |

#### 16.4.11 Data Transfer

----  
 fsd = Field select fs, or d (# of digits)  
 ----

|            |                                                                 |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| A=DAT0 fsd | Copy data from memory addressed by D0 into<br>A, field selected |
| C=DAT0 fsd | Copy data from memory addressed by D0 into<br>C, field selected |
| A=DAT1 fsd | Copy data from memory addressed by D1 into<br>A, field selected |
| C=DAT1 fsd | Copy data from memory addressed by D1 into<br>C, field selected |
| DAT0=A fsd | Copy data from A into memory addressed by<br>D0, field selected |
| DAT0=C fsd | Copy data from C into memory addressed by<br>D0, field selected |
| DAT1=A fsd | Copy data from A into memory addressed by<br>D1, field selected |
| DAT1=C fsd | Copy data from C into memory addressed by                       |

D1, field selected

#### 16.4.12 Load Constants

|       |         |                                      |
|-------|---------|--------------------------------------|
| LCHEx | hhhhhhh | Load hex constant into C             |
| LC(m) | expr    | Load the m-nibble constant into C    |
| LCASC | 'ascii' | Load up to 8 ASCII characters into C |
| LCASC | \ascii\ | Load up to 8 ASCII characters into C |

#### 16.4.13 Shift Instructions

Note that the non-circular right shifts affect the Sticky Bit.

-----  
 r = A,B,C,D  
 fs = Field Select  
 -----

|      |    |                                          |
|------|----|------------------------------------------|
| rSL  | fs | Shift register r fs field Left 1 nibble  |
| rSR  | fs | Shift register r fs field Right 1 nibble |
| rSLC |    | Shift register r Left Circular 1 nibble  |
| rSRC |    | Shift register r Right Circular 1 nibble |
| rSRB |    | Shift register r Right 1 bit             |

#### 16.4.14 Logical Operations

-----  
 r,s = A,B,C or (r,s) = (C,D),(D,C)  
 fs = Field Select  
 -----

|       |    |                                |
|-------|----|--------------------------------|
| r=r&s | fs | r AND s into r, field selected |
| r=r!s | fs | r OR s into r, field selected  |

#### 16.4.15 Arithmetics

The two groups of arithmetics differ in the range of registers available. In the first group (General usage) almost all combinations of the four working registers are possible; however, in the second group (Restricted usage) only a few select combinations are possible.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

16.4.15.1 General Usage

```

r,s = A,B,C or (r,s) = (C,D),(D,C)
fs = Field Select

r=0 fs Set r to zero
r=r+r fs Double r, adjust Carry
r=r+1 fs Increment r by 1, adjust Carry
r=r-1 fs Decrement r by 1, adjust Carry
r=-r fs 10'S complement or 2'S complement, Carry
 set if r#0 and in HEX mode, else clear
r=-r-1 fs 9'S complement or 1'S complement
 Carry always cleared
r=r+s fs Sum r and s into r, adjust Carry
s=r+s fs Sum r and s into s, adjust Carry
r=s fs Copy s into r
s=r fs Copy r into s
rsEX fs Exchange r and s
```

16.4.15.2 Restricted Usage

```

(r,s) = (A,B),(B,C),(C,A),(D,C)

r=r-s fs Difference of r and s into r, adjust Carry
r=s-r fs Difference of s and r into r, adjust Carry
s=s-r fs Difference of s and r into s, adjust Carry
```

16.4.16 No-Op Instructions

```
NOP3 Three nibble No-Op
NOP4 Four nibble No-Op
NOP5 Five nibble No-Op
```

16.4.17 Pseudo-Ops

16.4.17.1 Data Storage Allocation

```

1 <= n <= 8

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

|        |         |                                          |
|--------|---------|------------------------------------------|
| BSS    | nnnnn   | Allocate nnnnn number of zero nibs       |
| CON(m) | expr    | Generate m-nibble constant               |
| REL(m) | expr    | Generate m-nibble relative constant      |
| NIBASC | 'ascii' | Generate ascii characters, byte reversed |
| NIBASC | \ascii\ | Generate ascii characters, byte reversed |
| NIBHEX | hhhh    | Generate hexadecimal digits hhhh         |

16.4.17.2 Conditional Assembly

|            |      |                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| name IF    | expr | Start conditional assembly until ELSE or<br>ENDIF if flag expr was set on invocation<br>of assembler (optional use of name allows<br>nesting of IF's) |
| name ELSE  |      | Conditional assembly if IF test was false                                                                                                             |
| name ENDIF |      | Ends conditional assembly started by IF                                                                                                               |

16.4.17.3 Listing Formatting

|        |      |                                            |
|--------|------|--------------------------------------------|
| EJECT  |      | Force new page in the assembly listing     |
| STITLE | text | Force new page, set subtitle value to text |
| TITLE  | text | Set title value to text                    |

16.4.17.4 Symbol Definition

|           |       |                                      |
|-----------|-------|--------------------------------------|
| label EQU | nnnnn | Defines label to have the value expr |
|-----------|-------|--------------------------------------|

16.4.17.5 Assembly Mode

|     |       |                                           |
|-----|-------|-------------------------------------------|
| ABS | nnnnn | Specify absolute assembly at adress given |
| END |       | Marks end of the assembly source          |

16.5 Mnemonic Dictionary

This section contains a description of each HP-71 assembler instruction or pseudo-op. The description shows the binary opcode generated by the mnemonic, if any, as well as the execution cycle time required if the mnemonic is an executable instruction.

The symbols used in these descriptions are explained in the "Explanation of Symbols" section earlier in this chapter.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

\*\*\*\*\*  
 \* MNEMONICS \*  
 \*\*\*\*\*

```
?A#0 fs - Test for A not equal to 0
```

```
fs = A opcode: 8ACyy
 cycles: 13 + d (GO/RINYES)
 6 + d (NO)
```

```
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9aCyy
 cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)
 6 + d (NO)
```

Test whether the fs field of A is not equal to 0. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?A#B    fs   -   Test for A not equal to B

```
fs = A opcode: 8A4yy
 cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)
 6 + d (NO)
```

```
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9a4yy
 cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)
 6 + d (NO)
```

Test whether the fs field of A is not equal to the fs field of B. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

?A#C fs - Test for A not equal to C

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8A6yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9a6yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of A is not equal to the fs field of C. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?A<=B fs - Test for A less than or equal to B

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8BCyy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9bCyy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of A is less than or equal to the fs field of B. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?A<B fs - Test for A less than B

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8B6yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9b6yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of A is less than the fs field of B. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

?A=0 fs - Test for A equal to 0  
-----

fs = A opcode: 8A8yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9A8yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of A is equal to 0. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?A=B fs - Test for A equal to B  
-----

fs = A opcode: 8A0yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9A0yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of A is equal to the fs field of B. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?A=C fs - Test for A equal to C  
-----

fs = A opcode: 8A2yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9A2yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of A is equal to the fs field of C. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?A>=B fs - Test for A greater than or equal to B

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8B8yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9b8yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of A is greater than or equal to the fs field of B. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?A>B fs - Test for A greater than B

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8B0yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9b0yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of A is greater than the fs field of B. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

?B#0 fs - Test for B not equal to 0

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8ADyy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9ADyy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of B is not equal to 0. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?B#A fs - Test for B not equal to A

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8A4yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9A4yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of B is not equal to the fs field of A. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?B#C fs - Test for B not equal to C

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8A5yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9A5yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of B is not equal to the fs field of C. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

?B<=C fs - Test for B less than or equal to C

-----  
fs = A

opcode: 8BDyy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)

opcode: 9bDyy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of B is less than or equal to the fs field of C. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?B<C fs - Test for B less than C

-----  
fs = A

opcode: 8B5yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)

opcode: 9b5yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of B is less than the fs field of C. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?B=0 fs - Test for B equal to 0

-----  
fs = A

opcode: 8A9yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)

opcode: 9a9yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of B is equal to 0. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?B=A fs - Test for B equal to A

-----

fs = A

opcode: 8A0yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)

opcode: 9A0yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of B is equal to the fs field of A. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?B=C fs - Test for B equal to C

-----

fs = A

opcode: 8A1yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)

opcode: 9A1yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of B is equal to the fs field of C. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

?B>=C fs - Test for B greater than or equal to C

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8B9yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9b9yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of B is greater than or equal to the fs field of C. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?B>C fs - Test for B greater than C

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8B1yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9b1yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of B is greater than the fs field of C. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?C#0 fs - Test for C not equal to 0

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8AEyy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9aEyy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of C is not equal to 0. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

?C#A fs - Test for C not equal to A

-----

fs = A opcode: 8A6yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9a6yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of C is not equal to the fs field of A.  
Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined  
by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?C#B fs - Test for C not equal to B

-----

fs = A opcode: 8A5yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9a5yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of C is not equal to the fs field of B.  
Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined  
by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?C#D fs - Test for C not equal to D

-----

fs = A opcode: 8A7yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9a7yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of C is not equal to the fs field of D. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?C<=A fs - Test for C less than or equal to A

-----

fs = A                      opcode: 8BEyy  
                             cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
                                     6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: 9bEyy  
                             cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
                                     6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of C is less than or equal to the fs field of A. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?C<A fs - Test for C less than A

-----

fs = A                      opcode: 8B6yy  
                             cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
                                     6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: 9b6yy  
                             cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
                                     6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of C is less than the fs field of A. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

?C=0 fs - Test for C equal to 0

-----

fs = A opcode: 8AAyy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9AAyy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of C is equal to 0. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?C=A fs - Test for C equal to A

-----

fs = A opcode: 8A2yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9A2yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of C is equal to the fs field of A. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?C=B fs - Test for C equal to B

-----

fs = A opcode: 8A1yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9A1yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of C is equal to the fs field of B. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

?C=D fs - Test for C equal to D

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8A3yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTINYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9A3yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTINYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of C is equal to the fs field of D. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTINYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTINYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?C>=A fs - Test for C greater than or equal to A

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8BCyy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTINYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9BCyy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTINYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of C is greater than or equal to the fs field of A. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTINYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTINYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?C>A fs - Test for C greater than A

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8B2yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTINYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9B2yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTINYES)

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of C is greater than the fs field of A. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?D#0 fs - Test for D not equal to 0

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8AFyy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9aFyy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of D is not equal to 0. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?D#C fs - Test for D not equal to C

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8A7yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9a7yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of D is not equal to the fs field of C. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

?D<=C fs - Test for D less than or equal to C

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8BFyy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9bFyy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of D is less than or equal to the fs field of C. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?D<C fs - Test for D less than to C

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8B7yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9b7yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of D is less than the fs field of C. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?D=0 fs - Test for D equal to 0

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8AByy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9aByy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of D is equal to 0. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

?D=C fs - Test for D equal to C

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8A7yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9A7yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of D is equal to the fs field of C. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?D>=C fs - Test for D greater than or equal to C

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8BByy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9BByy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of D is greater than or equal to the fs field of C. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?D>C fs - Test for D greater than C

-----  
fs = A opcode: 8B3yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)  
6 + d (NO)

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 9B3yy  
cycles: 13 + d (GO/RTNYES)

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

6 + d (NO)

Test whether the fs field of D is greater than the fs field of C. Must be followed by a GOYES or RTNYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?MP=0 - Test Module Pulled bit (MP)

-----

opcode: 838yy  
cycles: 13 (GO/RTNYES)  
6 (NO)

Test whether the Module Pulled bit (MP) is zero. This hardware status bit is set whenever a module-pulled interrupt occurs (the \*INT line of the CPU is pulled high), and must be explicitly cleared by the MP=0 mnemonic. See the "HP-71 Hardware Specification" for more information. Must be followed by a RTNYES or GOYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?P# n - Test if P pointer not equal to n

-----

opcode: 88nyy  
cycles: 13 (GO/RTNYES)  
6 (NO)

Test whether the P pointer is not equal to n. Must be followed by a RTNYES or GOYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?P= n - Test if P pointer is equal to n

-----

opcode: 89nyy  
cycles: 13 (GO/RTNYES)  
6 (NO)

Test whether the P pointer is equal to n. Must be followed by a RTNYES or GOYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?SB=0 - Test Sticky Bit (SB)  
-----

opcode: 832yy  
cycles: 13 (GO/RTNYES)  
6 (NO)

Test whether the Sticky Bit (SB) is zero. This hardware status bit is set on right shifts when a non-zero nibble or bit is shifted off the end of the field. The Sticky Bit must be cleared explicitly. Must be followed by a RTNYES or GOYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?SR=0 - Test Service Request bit (SR) for zero  
-----

opcode: 834yy  
cycles: 13 (GO/RTNYES)  
6 (NO)

Test whether the Service Request bit (SR) is zero. This hardware status bit is set by the SREQ? mnemonic, and must be cleared explicitly by the SR=0 instruction. Must be followed by a RTNYES or GOYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?ST#0 n - Test status bit n not equal to 0  
-----

opcode: 87nyy  
cycles: 14 (GO/RTNYES)  
7 (NO)

Test whether Program Status bit n is set. Must be followed by a RTNYES or GOYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

?ST#1 n - Test status bit n not equal to 1  
-----

opcode: 86nyy  
cycles: 14 (GO/RTYES)  
7 (NO)

Test whether Program Status bit n is clear. Must be followed by a RTYES or GOYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?ST=0 n - Test status bit n equal to 0  
-----

opcode: 86nyy  
cycles: 14 (GO/RTYES)  
7 (NO)

Test whether Program Status bit n is clear. Must be followed by a RTYES or GOYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

?ST=1 n - Test status bit n equal to 1  
-----

opcode: 87nyy  
cycles: 14 (GO/RTYES)  
7 (NO)

Test whether Program Status bit n is set. Must be followed by a RTYES or GOYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

?XM=0 - Test External Module Missing bit (XM)

-----

opcode: 831yy  
cycles: 13 (GO/RTNYES)  
6 (NO)

Test the whether the External Module Missing bit (XM) is zero. This hardware status bit is set by the RTNSXM mnemonic, and must be explicitly cleared by the XM=0 mnemonic. Must be followed by a RTNYES or GOYES mnemonic. yy is determined by the following RTNYES or GOYES. Adjusts Carry.

A=-A fs - Two's complement of A into A

-----

fs = A opcode: F8  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Bb8  
cycles: 3 + d

Complement the specified fs field of A. Complement is two's complement if in HEX mode, ten's complement if in DEC mode. Carry is set if the field is not zero, else Carry is cleared.

A=-A-1 fs - One's complement of A into A

-----

fs = A opcode: FC  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: BbC  
cycles: 3 + d

Perform a one's complement on the specified fs field of A. Carry is always cleared.



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

A=0 fs - Set A equal to 0

-----  
fs = A opcode: D0  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Ab0  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of A to zero. Carry is not affected.

A=A!B fs - A OR B into A

-----  
fs = A opcode: 0EF8  
cycles: 4 + d  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 0Ea8  
cycles: 4 + d

Set the fs field of register A to its logical OR with the corresponding field of register B. Carry is not affected.

A=A!C fs - A OR C into A

-----  
fs = A opcode: 0EFE  
cycles: 4 + d  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 0EaE  
cycles: 4 + d

Set the fs field of register A to its logical OR with the corresponding field of register C. Carry is not affected.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

A=A&B fs - A AND B into A

-----

fs = A opcode: 0EF0  
cycles: 4 + d

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 0Ea0  
cycles: 4 + d

Set the fs field of register A to its logical AND with the corresponding field of register B. Carry is not affected.

A=A&C fs - A AND C into A

-----

fs = A opcode: 0EF6  
cycles: 4 + d

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 0Ea6  
cycles: 4 + d

Set the fs field of register A to its logical AND with the corresponding field of register C. Carry is not affected.

A=A+1 fs - Increment A

-----

fs = A opcode: E4  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Ba4  
cycles: 3 + d

Increment the specified fs field of register A by one. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

A=A+A fs - Sum of A and A into A

-----

fs = A opcode: C4  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Aa4  
cycles: 3 + d

Double the specified fs field of register A. Adjusts Carry.

A=A+B fs - Sum of A and B into A

-----

fs = A opcode: C0  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Aa0  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register A to the sum of itself and the corresponding field of register B. Adjusts Carry.

A=A+C fs - Sum of A and C into A

-----

fs = A opcode: CA  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: AaA  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register A to the sum of itself and the corresponding field of register C. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

A=A-1 fs - Decrement A

-----  
fs = A opcode: CC  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: AaC  
cycles: 3 + d

Decrement the specified fs field of register A by one. Adjusts Carry.

A=A-B fs - A minus B into A

-----  
fs = A opcode: E0  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Ba0  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register A to the difference between itself and the corresponding field of register B. Adjusts Carry.

A=A-C fs - A minus C into A

-----  
fs = A opcode: EA  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: BaA  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register A to the difference between itself and the corresponding field of register C. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

A=B    fs - Copy B to A

-----  
fs = A                      opcode: D4  
                             cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: Ab4  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Copy the fs field of register B into the corresponding field of register A. Carry is not affected.

A=B-A    fs - B minus A into A

-----  
fs = A                      opcode: EC  
                             cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: BaC  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register A to the inverse difference between itself and the corresponding field of register B. Adjusts Carry.

A=C    fs - Copy C to A

-----  
fs = A                      opcode: DC  
                             cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: AbC  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Copy the fs field of register C into the corresponding field of register A. Carry is not affected.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

A=DAT0 fsd - Load A from memory

-----

|                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| fs = A                 | opcode: 142          |
|                        | cycles: 18           |
| fs = B                 | opcode: 14A          |
|                        | cycles: 15           |
| fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,W) | opcode: 152a         |
|                        | cycles: 17 + d       |
| fs = d                 | opcode: 15Ax (x=d-1) |
|                        | cycles: 16 + d       |

The amount of data (d nibbles) specified by fsd will be transferred from the memory address pointed to by D0 into the specified field of register A. The lowest-addressed nibble will be transferred into the lowest-order nibble of the register field, proceeding toward the higher-order nibbles. If fs = d, d nibbles are transferred into the register starting at nibble 0. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

A=DAT1 fsd - Load A from memory

-----

|                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| fs = A                 | opcode: 143          |
|                        | cycles: 18           |
| fs = B                 | opcode: 14B          |
|                        | cycles: 15           |
| fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,W) | opcode: 153a         |
|                        | cycles: 17 + d       |
| fs = d                 | opcode: 15Bx (x=d-1) |
|                        | cycles: 16 + d       |

The amount of data (d nibbles) specified by fsd will be transferred from the memory address pointed to by D1 into the specified field of register A. The lowest-addressed nibble will be transferred into the lowest-order nibble of the register field, proceeding toward the higher-order nibbles. If fs = d, d nibbles are transferred into the register starting at nibble 0. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

A=IN        - Load A with IN  
-----

opcode: 802  
cycles: 7

Load the low-order 4 nibbles of the A register with the contents of the Input register.

A=R0        - Copy R0 to A  
-----

opcode: 110  
cycles: 19

The contents of the scratch register R0 is copied to the working register A.

A=R1        - Copy R1 to A  
-----

opcode: 111  
cycles: 19

The contents of the scratch register R1 is copied to the working register A.

A=R2        - Copy R2 to A  
-----

opcode: 112  
cycles: 19

The contents of the scratch register R2 is copied to the working register A.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

A=R3        - Copy R3 to A  
-----

opcode: 113  
cycles: 19

The contents of the scratch register R3 is copied to the working register A.

A=R4        - Copy R4 to A  
-----

opcode: 114  
cycles: 19

The contents of the scratch register R4 is copied to the working register A.

ABEX fs - Exchange Registers A and B  
-----

fs = A                      opcode: DC  
                             cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: AbC  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Exchange the fs fields of registers of A and B. Carry is not affected.

ACEX fs - Exchange Registers A and C  
-----

fs = A                      opcode: DE  
                             cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: AbE  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Exchange the fs fields of registers of A and C. Carry is not



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

affected.

ADOEX - Exchange A and D0 (nibs 0-4)

-----

opcode: 132  
cycles: 8

Exchange the A field of register A with Data pointer D0. Carry is not affected.

ADOXS - Exchange A and D0 short (nibs 0-3)

-----

opcode: 13A  
cycles: 7

Exchange the lower 4 nibbles of A with the lower 4 nibbles of Data pointer D0. Carry is not affected.

AD1EX - Exchange A and D1 (nibs 0-4)

-----

opcode: 133  
cycles: 8

Exchange the A field of register A with Data pointer D1. Carry is not affected.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

AD1XS        - Exchange A and D1 short (nibs 0-3)

-----

opcode: 13B

cycles: 7

Exchange the lower 4 nibbles of A with the lower 4 nibbles of Data pointer D1. Carry is not affected.

AROEX       - Exchange A and R0

-----

opcode: 120

cycles: 19

Exchange the contents of the working register A and the scratch register R0.

AR1EX       - Exchange A and R1

-----

opcode: 121

cycles: 19

Exchange the contents of the working register A and the scratch register R1.

AR2EX       - Exchange A and R2

-----

opcode: 122

cycles: 19

Exchange the contents of the working register A and the scratch register R2.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

AR3EX - Exchange A and R3  
-----

opcode: 123  
cycles: 19

Exchange the contents of the working register A and the scratch register R3.

AR4EX - Exchange A and R4  
-----

opcode: 124  
cycles: 19

Exchange the contents of the working register A and the scratch register R4.

ASL fs - A Shift Left  
-----

fs = A                      opcode: F0  
                            cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: Bb0  
                            cycles: 3 + d

Shift the contents of the specified fs field of register A left one nibble, without affecting the rest of the register. The nibble shifted off the left end of the field is lost. The new low-order nibble of the field is zero. The Sticky Bit (SB) is not affected.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

ASLC - A Shift Left Circular

-----

opcode: 810  
cycles: 21

Circular shift register A left one nibble. Operates on all 16 digits. The Sticky Bit (SB) is not affected.

ASR fs - A Shift Right

-----

fs = A opcode: F4  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Bb4  
cycles: 3 + d

Shift the contents of the specified fs field of register A right one nibble, without affecting the rest of the register. The nibble shifted off the right end of the field is lost, but the Sticky Bit (SB) is set if the nibble was non-zero. The new high-order nibble of the field is zero.

ASRB - A Shift Right Bit

-----

opcode: 81C  
cycles: 20

Shift register A right one bit. Operates on all 16 digits. The bit shifted off the end is lost, but the Sticky Bit (SB) is set if it was non-zero. The new high-order bit of the register is zero.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

ASRC - A Shift Right Circular

-----

opcode: 814  
cycles: 21

Circular shift register A right one nibble. Operates on all 16 digits. The Sticky Bit (SB) is set if the nibble shifted from low-order around to high-order position was non-zero.

B=-B fs - Two's complement of B into B

-----

fs = A opcode: F9  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Bb9  
cycles: 3 + d

Complement the specified fs field of B. Complement is two's complement if in HEX mode, ten's complement if in DEC mode. Carry is set if the field is not zero, else Carry is cleared.

B=-B-1 fs - One's complement of B into B

-----

fs = A opcode: FD  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: BbD  
cycles: 3 + d

Perform a one's complement on the specified fs field of B. Carry is always cleared.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

B=0    fs - Set A equal to 0

-----  
fs = A                      opcode: D1  
                             cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: Ab1  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of B to zero. Carry is not affected.

B=A    fs - Copy A to B

-----  
fs = A                      opcode: D8  
                             cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: Ab8  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Copy the fs field of register A into the corresponding field of register B. Carry is not affected.

B=B!A    fs - B OR A into B

-----  
fs = A                      opcode: 0EFC  
                             cycles: 4 + d

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: 0EaC  
                             cycles: 4 + d

Set the fs field of register B to its logical OR with the corresponding field of register A. Carry is not affected.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

B=B!C fs - B OR C into B

-----  
fs = A opcode: 0EF9  
cycles: 4 + d

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 0Ea9  
cycles: 4 + d

Set the fs field of register B to its logical OR with the corresponding field of register C. Carry is not affected.

B=B&A fs - B AND A into B

-----  
fs = A opcode: 0EF4  
cycles: 4 + d

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 0Ea4  
cycles: 4 + d

Set the fs field of register B to its logical AND with the corresponding field of register A. Carry is not affected.

B=B&C fs - B AND C into B

-----  
fs = A opcode: 0EF1  
cycles: 4 + d

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 0Ea1  
cycles: 4 + d

Set the fs field of register B to its logical AND with the corresponding field of register C. Carry is not affected.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

B=B+1 fs - Increment B

-----  
fs = A opcode: E5  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Ba5  
cycles: 3 + d

Increment the specified fs field of register B by one. Adjusts Carry.

B=B+A fs - Sum of B and A into B

-----  
fs = A opcode: C8  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Aa8  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register B to the sum of itself and the corresponding field of register A. Adjusts Carry.

B=B+B fs - Sum of B and B into B

-----  
fs = A opcode: C5  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Aa5  
cycles: 3 + d

Double the specified fs field of register B. Adjusts Carry.



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

B=B+C fs - Sum of B and C into B

-----  
fs = A opcode: C1  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Aa1  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register B to the sum of itself and the corresponding field of register C. Adjusts Carry.

B=B-1 fs - Decrement B

-----  
fs = A opcode: CD  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: AaD  
cycles: 3 + d

Decrement the specified fs field of register B by one. Adjusts Carry.

B=B-A fs - B minus A into B

-----  
fs = A opcode: E8  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Ba8  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register B to the difference between itself and the corresponding field of register A. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

B=B-C fs - B minus C into B

-----  
fs = A opcode: E1  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Ba1  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register B to the difference between itself and the corresponding field of register C. Adjusts Carry.

B=C fs - Copy C to B

-----  
fs = A opcode: D5  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Ab5  
cycles: 3 + d

Copy the fs field of register C into the corresponding field of register B. Carry is not affected.

B=C-B fs - C minus B into B

-----  
fs = A opcode: ED  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: BaD  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register B to the inverse difference between itself and the corresponding field of register C. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

BAEX fs - Exchange Registers B and A

-----  
fs = A                      opcode: DC  
                             cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: AbC  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Exchange the fs fields of registers of B and A. Carry is not affected.

BCEX fs - Exchange Registers B and C

-----  
fs = A                      opcode: DD  
                             cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: AbD  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Exchange the fs fields of registers of B and C. Carry is not affected.

BSL fs - B Shift Left

-----  
fs = A                      opcode: F1  
                             cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: Bb1  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Shift the contents of the specified fs field of register B left one nibble, without affecting the rest of the register. The nibble shifted off the left end of the field is lost. The new low-order nibble of the field is zero. The Sticky Bit (SB) is not affected.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

BSLC - B Shift Left Circular

-----

opcode: 811  
cycles: 21

Circular shift register B left one nibble. Operates on all 16 digits. The Sticky Bit (SB) is not affected.

BSR fs - B Shift Right

-----

fs = A opcode: F5  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Bb5  
cycles: 3 + d

Shift the contents of the specified fs field of register B right one nibble, without affecting the rest of the register. The nibble shifted off the right end of the field is lost, but the Sticky Bit (SB) is set if the nibble was non-zero. The new high-order nibble of the field is zero.

BSRB - B Shift Right Bit

-----

opcode: 81D  
cycles: 20

Shift register B right one bit. Operates on all 16 digits. The bit shifted off the end is lost, but the Sticky Bit (SB) is set if it was non-zero. The new high-order bit of the register is zero.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

BSRC - B Shift Right Circular

-----

opcode: 815

cycles: 21

Circular shift register B right one nibble. Operates on all 16 digits. The Sticky Bit (SB) is set if the nibble shifted from low-order around to high-order position was non-zero.

BUSCC - Bus Command "C"

-----

opcode: 80B

cycles: 6

Enters the HP-71 bus command "C" onto the system bus (this command is reserved for later use). No other operation is performed. See the "HP-71 Hardware Specification" for more information.

C+P+1 - Increment C by One Plus P Pointer

-----

opcode: 809

cycles: 8

The A field of the C register is incremented by one plus the value of the P pointer. Arithmetic is always in hex mode. Adjusts Carry.

C=-C fs - Two's complement of C into C

-----

fs = A

opcode: FA

cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)

opcode: BbA

cycles: 3 + d

Complement the specified fs field of C. Complement is two's

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

complement if in HEX mode, ten's complement if in DEC mode. Carry is set if the field is not zero, else Carry is cleared.

C=-C-1 fs - One's complement of C into C

-----

fs = A opcode: FE  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: BbE  
cycles: 3 + d

Perform a one's complement on the specified fs field of C. Carry is always cleared.

C=0 fs - Set C equal to 0

-----

fs = A opcode: D2  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Ab2  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of C to zero. Carry is not affected.

C=A fs - Copy A to C

-----

fs = A opcode: D6  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Ab6  
cycles: 3 + d

Copy the fs field of register A into the corresponding field of register C. Carry is not affected.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

C=A-C fs - A minus C into C

-----  
fs = A opcode: EE  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: BaE  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register C to the inverse difference between itself and the corresponding field of register A. Adjusts Carry.

C=B fs - Copy B to C

-----  
fs = A opcode: D9  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Ab9  
cycles: 3 + d

Copy the fs field of register B into the corresponding field of register C. Carry is not affected.

C=C!A fs - C OR A into C

-----  
fs = A opcode: OEFE  
cycles: 4 + d  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 0EaE  
cycles: 4 + d

Set the fs field of register C to its logical OR with the corresponding field of register A. Carry is not affected.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

C=C!B fs - C OR B into C  
-----

fs = A opcode: 0EFD  
cycles: 4 + d

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 0EaD  
cycles: 4 + d

Set the fs field of register C to its logical OR with the corresponding field of register B. Carry is not affected.

C=C!D fs - C OR D into C  
-----

fs = A opcode: 0EFF  
cycles: 4 + d

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 0EaF  
cycles: 4 + d

Set the fs field of register C to its logical OR with the corresponding field of register D. Carry is not affected.

C=C&A fs - C AND A into A  
-----

fs = A opcode: 0EF2  
cycles: 4 + d

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 0Ea2  
cycles: 4 + d

Set the fs field of register C to its logical AND with the corresponding field of register A. Carry is not affected.



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

C=C&B fs - C AND B into C

-----  
fs = A opcode: 0EF5  
cycles: 4 + d

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 0Ea5  
cycles: 4 + d

Set the fs field of register C to its logical AND with the corresponding field of register B. Carry is not affected.

C=C&D fs - C AND D into C

-----  
fs = A opcode: 0EF7  
cycles: 4 + d

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 0Ea7  
cycles: 4 + d

Set the fs field of register C to its logical AND with the corresponding field of register D. Carry is not affected.

C=C+1 fs - Increment C

-----  
fs = A opcode: E6  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Ba6  
cycles: 3 + d

Increment the specified fs field of register C by one. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

C=C+A fs - Sum of C and A into C

-----  
fs = A opcode: C2  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Aa2  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register C to the sum of itself and the corresponding field of register A. Adjusts Carry.

C=C+B fs - Sum of C and B into C

-----  
fs = A opcode: C9  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Aa9  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register C to the sum of itself and the corresponding field of register B. Adjusts Carry.

C=C+C fs - Sum of C and C into C

-----  
fs = A opcode: C6  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Aa6  
cycles: 3 + d

Double the specified fs field of register C. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

C=C+D fs - Sum of C and D into C  
-----

fs = A opcode: CB  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: AaB  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register C to the sum of itself and the corresponding field of register D. Adjusts Carry.

C=C-1 fs - Decrement C  
-----

fs = A opcode: CE  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: AaE  
cycles: 3 + d

Decrement the specified fs field of register C by one. Adjusts Carry.

C=C-A fs - C minus A into C  
-----

fs = A opcode: E2  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Ba2  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register C to the difference between itself and the corresponding field of register A. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

C=C-B fs - C minus B into C

-----  
fs = A opcode: E9  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Ba9  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register C to the difference between itself and the corresponding field of register B. Adjusts Carry.

C=C-D fs - C minus D into C

-----  
fs = A opcode: EB  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: BaB  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register C to the difference between itself and the corresponding field of register D. Adjusts Carry.

C=D fs - Copy D to C

-----  
fs = A opcode: DB  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: AbB  
cycles: 3 + d

Copy the fs field of register D into the corresponding field of register C. Carry is not affected.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

C=DAT0 fsd - Load C from memory

|                        |                                        |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| -----                  |                                        |
| fs = A                 | opcode: 146<br>cycles: 18              |
| fs = B                 | opcode: 14E<br>cycles: 15              |
| fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,W) | opcode: 156a<br>cycles: 17 + d         |
| fs = d                 | opcode: 15Ex (x=d-1)<br>cycles: 16 + d |

The amount of data (d nibbles) specified by fsd will be transferred from the memory address pointed to by D0 into the specified field of register C. The lowest-addressed nibble will be transferred into the lowest-order nibble of the register field, proceeding toward the higher-order nibbles. If fs = d, d nibbles are transferred into the register starting at nibble 0. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

C=DAT1 fsd - Load C from memory

|                        |                                        |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| -----                  |                                        |
| fs = A                 | opcode: 147<br>cycles: 18              |
| fs = B                 | opcode: 14F<br>cycles: 15              |
| fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,W) | opcode: 157a<br>cycles: 17 + d         |
| fs = d                 | opcode: 15Fx (x=d-1)<br>cycles: 16 + d |

The amount of data (d nibbles) specified by fsd will be transferred from the memory address pointed to by D1 into the specified field of register C. The lowest-addressed nibble will be transferred into the lowest-order nibble of the register field, proceeding toward the higher-order nibbles. If fs = d, d nibbles are transferred into the register starting at nibble 0. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

C=ID        - Request chip ID

-----

opcode: 806  
cycles: 11

The chip which has its DAISY-IN line high and its configuration flag low will send its 5 nibble ID register to the system bus which will be loaded into the low-order 5 nibbles (A field) of the C register. See the "HP-71 Hardware Specification" for more information.

C=IN        - Load C with IN

-----

opcode: 803  
cycles: 7

Load the low-order 4 nibbles of the C register with the contents of the Input register. See the "HP-71 Hardware Specification" for more information.

C=P     n    - Copy P Pointer into Nibble n of C

-----

opcode: 80CN  
cycles: 6

Copy P pointer into C register at digit position specified by n.

C=R0        - Copy R0 to C

-----

opcode: 118  
cycles: 19

The contents of the scratch register R0 is copied to the working register C.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

C=R1        - Copy R1 to C  
-----

opcode: 119  
cycles: 19

The contents of the scratch register R1 is copied to the working register C.

C=R2        - Copy R2 to C  
-----

opcode: 11A  
cycles: 19

The contents of the scratch register R2 is copied to the working register C.

C=R3        - Copy R3 to C  
-----

opcode: 11B  
cycles: 19

The contents of the scratch register R3 is copied to the working register C.

C=R4        - Copy R4 to C  
-----

opcode: 11C  
cycles: 19

The contents of the scratch register R4 is copied to the working register C.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

C=RSTK - Pop stack to C

-----

opcode: 07  
cycles: 8

Pop the top-most address off of the hardware return stack, placing the address in the lower 5 nibbles (A field) of register C. The high-order nibbles of C are unchanged. As the address is popped from the return stack, a zero address is inserted at the bottom of the stack. Compare with the RTN mnemonic.

C=ST - Status to C

-----

opcode: 09  
cycles: 6

Copy the low-order 12 bits of the status register into the low-order 12 bits (X field) of the C register.

CAEX fs - Exchange Registers C and A

-----

fs = A opcode: DE  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: AbE  
cycles: 3 + d

Exchange the fs fields of registers of C and A. Carry is not affected.



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

CBEX *fs* - Exchange Registers C and B

-----  
*fs* = A                      opcode: DD  
                             cycles: 7

*fs* = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: AbD  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Exchange the *fs* fields of registers of C and B. Carry is not affected.

CD0EX - Exchange C and D0 (nibs 0-4)

-----  
                             opcode: 136  
                             cycles: 8

Exchange the A field of register C with Data pointer D0. Carry is not affected.

CD0XS - Exchange C and D0 short (nibs 0-3)

-----  
                             opcode: 13E  
                             cycles: 7

Exchange the lower 4 nibbles of C with the lower 4 nibbles of Data pointer D0. Carry is not affected.

CD1EX - Exchange C and D1 (nibs 0-4)

-----  
                             opcode: 137  
                             cycles: 8

Exchange the A field of register C with Data pointer D1. Carry is not affected.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

CD1XS - Exchange C and D1 short (nibs 0-3)

-----

opcode: 13F  
cycles: 7

Exchange the lower 4 nibbles of C with the lower 4 nibbles of Data pointer D1. Carry is not affected.

CDEX fs - Exchange Registers C and D

-----

fs = A opcode: DF  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: AbF  
cycles: 3 + d

Exchange the fs fields of registers of C and D. Carry is not affected.

CLRHST - Clear Hardware Status bits

-----

opcode: 82F  
cycles: 3

Clears the 4 Hardware Status bits XM, SB, SR and MP. Note that the opcode is actually 82x, where x is merely a mask for which Hardware Status bits to clear, as follows:

|         |                             |                     |
|---------|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| bit 0 - | External Module Missing bit | (see XM=0 mnemonic) |
| bit 1 - | Sticky Bit                  | (see SB=0 mnemonic) |
| bit 2 - | Service Request bit         | (see SR=0 mnemonic) |
| bit 3 - | Module Pulled bit           | (see MP=0 mnemonic) |

For example opcode 829 clears XM and MP. Although there is no mnemonic for this, the opcode can be inserted into the code by using, for example, NIBHEX 829.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

CLRST - Clear Program Status  
-----

opcode: 08  
cycles: 6

Clear the low-order 12 bits (S0 through S11) of the Program Status register ST.

CONFIG - Configure  
-----

opcode: 805  
cycles: 11

Copy the low-order 5 nibbles (A field) of the C register into the Configuration register of the chip which has its DAISY-IN line high and its configuration flag low. See the "HP-71 Hardware Specification" for information.

CPEX n - Exchange Nibble n of C With P Pointer  
-----

opcode: 80FN  
cycles: 6

Exchange the P pointer with digit n of the C register.

CROEX - Exchange C and R0  
-----

opcode: 128  
cycles: 19

Exchange the contents of the working register C and the scratch register R0.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

CR1EX      - Exchange C and R1  
-----

opcode: 129  
cycles: 19

Exchange the contents of the working register C and the scratch register R1.

CR2EX      - Exchange C and R2  
-----

opcode: 12A  
cycles: 19

Exchange the contents of the working register C and the scratch register R2.

CR3EX      - Exchange C and R3  
-----

opcode: 12B  
cycles: 19

Exchange the contents of the working register C and the scratch register R3.

CR4EX      - Exchange C and R4  
-----

opcode: 12C  
cycles: 19

Exchange the contents of the working register C and the scratch register R4.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

CSL     fs - C Shift Left

-----  
fs = A                      opcode: F2  
                             cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)   opcode: Bb2  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Shift the contents of the specified fs field of register C left one nibble, without affecting the rest of the register. The nibble shifted off the left end of the field is lost. The new low-order nibble of the field is zero. The Sticky Bit (SB) is not affected.

CSLC     - C Shift Left Circular

-----  
                             opcode: 812  
                             cycles: 21

Circular shift register C left one nibble. Operates on all 16 digits. The Sticky Bit (SB) is not affected.

CSR     fs - C Shift Right

-----  
fs = A                      opcode: F6  
                             cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)   opcode: Bb6  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Shift the contents of the specified fs field of register C right one nibble, without affecting the rest of the register. The nibble shifted off the right end of the field is lost, but the Sticky Bit (SB) is set if the nibble was non-zero. The new high-order nibble of the field is zero.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

CSRB        - C Shift Right Bit

-----

opcode: 81E  
cycles: 20

Shift register C right one bit. Operates on all 16 digits. The bit shifted off the end is lost, but the Sticky Bit (SB) is set if it was non-zero. The new high-order bit of the register is zero.

CSRC        - C Shift Right Circular

-----

opcode: 816  
cycles: 21

Circular shift register C right one nibble. Operates on all 16 digits. The Sticky Bit (SB) is set if the nibble shifted from low-order around to high-order position was non-zero.

CSTEX       - Exchange Status

-----

opcode: 0B  
cycles: 6

Exchange the low-order 12 bits (S0 through S11) of the Program Status register ST with the low-order 12 bits of the C register.

D0=(2) nn    - Load 2 Nibbles Into D0

-----

opcode: 19nn  
cycles: 4

Load the low-order two nibbles of D0 with nn. The upper nibbles of D0 remain unchanged. Any overflow is ignored by the assembler. The assembled digits of nn are stored in the opcode in reverse

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

order so that when the instruction is executed the data will be loaded into the register with the intended orientation. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

D0=(4) nnnn - Load 4 Nibbles Into D0  
-----

opcode: 1Annnn  
cycles: 6

Load the low-order four nibbles of D0 with nnnn. The upper nibble of D0 remains unchanged. Any overflow is ignored by the assembler. The assembled digits of nnnn are stored in the opcode in reverse order so that when the instruction is executed the data will be loaded into the register with the intended orientation. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

D0=(5) nnnnn - Load 5 Nibbles Into D0  
-----

opcode: 1Bnnnnn  
cycles: 7

Load all five nibbles of D0 with nnnnn. Any overflow is ignored by the assembler. The assembled digits of nnnnn are stored in the opcode in reverse order so that when the instruction is executed the data will be loaded into the register with the intended orientation. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

D0=A - Copy A to D0 (nibs 0-4)  
-----

opcode: 130  
cycles: 8

The A field of register A is copied into Data pointer register D0. Carry is not affected.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

D0=AS        - Copy A to D0 short (nibs 0-3)

-----

opcode: 138  
cycles: 7

The lower 4 nibbles of A are copied into the lower 4 nibbles of Data pointer register D0. Carry is not affected.

D0=C        - Copy C to D0 (nibs 0-4)

-----

opcode: 134  
cycles: 8

The A field of register C is copied into Data pointer register D0. Carry is not affected.

D0=CS       - Copy C to D0 short (nibs 0-3)

-----

opcode: 13C  
cycles: 7

The lower 4 nibbles of C are copied into the lower 4 nibbles of Data pointer register D0. Carry is not affected.

D0=D0+ n    - Add n to D0 ( $1 \leq n \leq 16$ )

-----

opcode:  $16x$  ( $x=n-1$ )  
cycles: 7

Increment D0 by n. Adjusts Carry.



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

D0=D0- n - Subtract n from D0 ( $1 \leq n \leq 16$ )

-----

opcode: 18x (x=n-1)  
cycles: 7

Decrement D0 by n. Adjusts Carry.

D0=HEX hh - Load D0 with hex constant hh

-----

opcode: 19hh  
cycles: 4

Load the low-order two nibbles of D0 with the hex constant hh. The upper nibbles of D0 remain unchanged. The digits of hh are stored in the opcode in reverse order so that when the instruction is executed the data will be loaded into the register with the intended orientation. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

D0=HEX hhhh - Load D0 with hex constant hhhh

-----

opcode: 1Ahhhh  
cycles: 6

Load the low-order four nibbles of D0 with the hex constant hhhh. The upper nibble of D0 remains unchanged. The digits of hhhh are stored in the opcode in reverse order so that when the instruction is executed the data will be loaded into the register with the intended orientation. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

D0=HEX hhhhh - Load D0 with hex constant hhhhh

-----

opcode: 1Bhhhhh  
cycles: 7

Load all five nibbles of D0 with the hex constant hhhhh. The digits of hhhhh are stored in the opcode in reverse order so that when the instruction is executed the data will be loaded into the register with the intended orientation. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

D1=(2) nn - Load 2 Nibbles Into D1

-----

opcode: 1Dnn  
cycles: 4

Load the low-order two nibbles of D1 with nn. The upper nibbles of D1 remain unchanged. Any overflow is ignored by the assembler. The assembled digits of nn are stored in the opcode in reverse order so that when the instruction is executed the data will be loaded into the register with the intended orientation. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

D1=(4) nnnn - Load 4 Nibbles Into D1

-----

opcode: 1Ennnn  
cycles: 6

Load the low-order four nibbles of D1 with nnnn. The upper nibble of D1 remains unchanged. Any overflow is ignored by the assembler. The assembled digits of nnnn are stored in the opcode in reverse order so that when the instruction is executed the data will be loaded into the register with the intended orientation. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

D1=(5) nnnnn - Load 5 Nibbles Into D1

-----

opcode: 1Fnnnnn

cycles: 7

Load all five nibbles of D1 with nnnnn. Any overflow is ignored by the assembler. The assembled digits of nnnnn are stored in the opcode in reverse order so that when the instruction is executed the data will be loaded into the register with the intended orientation. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

D1=A - Copy A to D1 (nibs 0-4)

-----

opcode: 131

cycles: 8

The A field of register A is copied into Data pointer register D1. Carry is not affected.

D1=AS - Copy A to D1 short (nibs 0-3)

-----

opcode: 139

cycles: 7

The lower 4 nibbles of A are copied into the lower 4 nibbles of Data pointer register D1. Carry is not affected.

D1=C - Copy C to D1 (nibs 0-4)

-----

opcode: 135

cycles: 8

The A field of register C is copied into Data pointer register D1. Carry is not affected.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

D1=CS      - Copy C to D1 short (nibs 0-3)  
-----

opcode: 13D  
cycles: 7

The lower 4 nibbles of C are copied into the lower 4 nibbles of Data pointer register D1. Carry is not affected.

D1=D1+ n   - Add n to D1 ( $1 \leq n \leq 16$ )  
-----

opcode: 17x (x=n-1)  
cycles: 7

Increment D1 by n. Adjusts Carry.

D1=D1- n   - Subtract n from D1 ( $1 \leq n \leq 16$ )  
-----

opcode: 1CX (X=n-1)  
cycles: 7

Decrement D1 by n. Adjusts Carry.

D1=HEX hh   - Load D1 with hex constant hh  
-----

opcode: 1Dhh  
cycles: 4

Load the low-order two nibbles of D1 with the hex constant hh. The upper nibbles of D1 remain unchanged. The digits of hh are stored in the opcode in reverse order so that when the instruction is executed the data will be loaded into the register with the intended orientation. See the section on "Loading Data From

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

Memory" earlier in this chapter.

D1=HEX hhhh - Load D1 with hex constant hhhh

-----

opcode: 1Ehhhh  
cycles: 6

Load the low-order four nibbles of D1 with the hex constant hhhh. The upper nibble of D1 remains unchanged. The digits of hhhh are stored in the opcode in reverse order so that when the instruction is executed the data will be loaded into the register with the intended orientation. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

D1=HEX hhhhh - Load D1 with hex constant hhhhh

-----

opcode: 1Fhhhhh  
cycles: 7

Load all five nibbles of D1 with the hex constant hhhhh. The digits of hhhhh are stored in the opcode in reverse order so that when the instruction is executed the data will be loaded into the register with the intended orientation. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

D=-D fs - Two's complement of D into D

-----

fs = A opcode: FB  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: BbB  
cycles: 3 + d

Complement the specified fs field of D. Complement is two's complement if in HEX mode, ten's complement if in DEC mode. Carry is set if the field is not zero, else Carry is cleared.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

D=-D-1 fs - One's complement of D into D

-----

fs = A                      opcode: FF  
                             cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: BbF  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Perform a one's complement on the specified fs field of D. Carry is always cleared.

D=0 fs - Set D equal to 0

-----

fs = A                      opcode: D3  
                             cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: Ab3  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of D to zero. Carry is not affected.

D=C fs - Copy C to D

-----

fs = A                      opcode: D7  
                             cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: Ab7  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Copy the fs field of register C into the corresponding field of register D. Carry is not affected.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

D=C-D fs - C minus D into D

-----  
fs = A opcode: ED  
cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: BaD  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register D to the inverse difference between itself and the corresponding field of register C. Adjusts Carry.

D=D!C fs - D OR C into D

-----  
fs = A opcode: 0EFF  
cycles: 4 + d

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 0EaF  
cycles: 4 + d

Set the fs field of register D to its logical OR with the corresponding field of register C. Carry is not affected.

D=D&C fs - D AND C into D

-----  
fs = A opcode: 0EF7  
cycles: 4 + d

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: 0Ea7  
cycles: 4 + d

Set the fs field of register D to its logical AND with the corresponding field of register C. Carry is not affected.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

D=D+1 fs - Increment D

-----  
fs = A opcode: E7  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Ba7  
cycles: 3 + d

Increment the specified fs field of register D by one. Adjusts Carry.

D=D+C fs - Sum of D and C into D

-----  
fs = A opcode: C3  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Aa3  
cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register D to the sum of itself and the corresponding field of register C. Adjusts Carry.

D=D+D fs - Sum of D and D into D

-----  
fs = A opcode: C7  
cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W) opcode: Aa7  
cycles: 3 + d

Double the specified fs field of register D. Adjusts Carry.



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

D=D-1 fs - Decrement D

-----  
fs = A                      opcode: CF  
                             cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: AaF  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Decrement the specified fs field of register D by one. Adjusts Carry.

D=D-C fs - D minus C into D

-----  
fs = A                      opcode: E3  
                             cycles: 7

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)    opcode: Ba3  
                             cycles: 3 + d

Set the specified fs field of register D to the difference between itself and the corresponding field of register C. Adjusts Carry.

DAT0=A fsd - Load memory from A

-----  
fs = A                      opcode: 146  
                             cycles: 17

fs = B                      opcode: 14E  
                             cycles: 14

fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,W)    opcode: 156a  
                             cycles: 16 + d

fs = d                      opcode: 15Ex (x=d-1)  
                             cycles: 15 + d

The amount of data (d nibbles) specified by fsd will be written to the memory address pointed to by D0 from the specified field of register A. The lowest-order nibble of the register field will be written to the lowest-addressed nibble of memory, proceeding toward the higher-order nibbles. If fs = d, d nibbles are written to

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

memory starting from nibble 0 of the register. See the section on "Storing Data Into Memory" earlier in this chapter.

DAT0=C fsd - Store into memory from C

-----  
fs = A                      opcode: 144  
                             cycles: 17  
  
fs = B                      opcode: 14A  
                             cycles: 14  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,W)      opcode: 154a  
                             cycles: 16 + d  
  
fs = d                      opcode: 15Ax (x=d-1)  
                             cycles: 15 + d

The amount of data (d nibbles) specified by fsd will be written to the memory address pointed to by D0 from the specified field of register C. The lowest-order nibble of the register field will be written to the lowest-addressed nibble of memory, proceeding toward the higher-order nibbles. If fs = d, d nibbles are written to memory starting from nibble 0 of the register. See the section on "Storing Data Into Memory" earlier in this chapter.

DAT1=A fs - Store into memory from A

-----  
fs = A                      opcode: 141  
                             cycles: 17  
  
fs = B                      opcode: 149  
                             cycles: 14  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,W)      opcode: 151a  
                             cycles: 16 + d  
  
fs = d                      opcode: 159x (x=d-1)  
                             cycles: 15 + d

The amount of data (d nibbles) specified by fsd will be written to the memory address pointed to by D1 from the specified field of

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

register A. The lowest-order nibble of the register field will be written to the lowest-addressed nibble of memory, proceeding toward the higher-order nibbles. If  $fs = d$ ,  $d$  nibbles are written to memory starting from nibble 0 of the register. See the section on "Storing Data Into Memory" earlier in this chapter.

DAT1=C fsd - Store into memory from C

|                          |                                              |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| -----                    |                                              |
| $fs = A$                 | opcode: 145<br>cycles: 17                    |
| $fs = B$                 | opcode: 14D<br>cycles: 14                    |
| $fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,U)$ | opcode: 155a<br>cycles: $16 + d$             |
| $fs = d$                 | opcode: 15Dx ( $x=d-1$ )<br>cycles: $15 + d$ |

The amount of data ( $d$  nibbles) specified by fsd will be written to the memory address pointed to by D1 from the specified field of register C. The lowest-order nibble of the register field will be written to the lowest-addressed nibble of memory, proceeding toward the higher-order nibbles. If  $fs = d$ ,  $d$  nibbles are written to memory starting from nibble 0 of the register. See the section on "Storing Data Into Memory" earlier in this chapter.

DCEX fs - Exchange Registers D and C

|                            |                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| -----                      |                                |
| $fs = A$                   | opcode: DF<br>cycles: 7        |
| $fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,U)$ | opcode: AbF<br>cycles: $3 + d$ |

Exchange the  $fs$  fields of registers of D and C. Carry is not affected.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

DSL     fs - D Shift Left

-----  
fs = A                   opcode: F3  
                         cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)   opcode: Bb3  
                         cycles: 3 + d

Shift the contents of the specified fs field of register D left one nibble, without affecting the rest of the register. The nibble shifted off the left end of the field is lost. The new low-order nibble of the field is zero. The Sticky Bit (SB) is not affected.

DSLCL     - D Shift Left Circular

-----  
                         opcode: 813  
                         cycles: 21

Circular shift register D left one nibble. Operates on all 16 digits. The Sticky Bit (SB) is not affected.

DSR     fs - D Shift Right

-----  
fs = A                   opcode: F7  
                         cycles: 7  
  
fs = (P,WP,XS,X,S,M,B,W)   opcode: Bb7  
                         cycles: 3 + d

Shift the contents of the specified fs field of register D right one nibble, without affecting the rest of the register. The nibble shifted off the right end of the field is lost, but the Sticky Bit (SB) is set if the nibble was non-zero. The new high-order nibble of the field is zero.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

DSRB - D Shift Right Bit  
-----

opcode: 81F  
cycles: 20

Shift register D right one bit. Operates on all 16 digits. The bit shifted off the end is lost, but the Sticky Bit (SB) is set if it was non-zero. The ~~new~~ high-order bit of the register is zero.

DSRC - D Shift Right Circular  
-----

opcode: 817  
cycles: 21

Circular shift register D right one nibble. Operates on all 16 digits. The Sticky Bit (SB) is set if the nibble shifted from low-order around to high-order position was non-zero.

GOC label - Go relative on carry  
-----

opcode: 4aa (Carry=0)  
cycles: 10 (GO)  
3 (NO)

Short relative jump to label if Carry is set. label must be in the range:

$\text{addr} - 128 \leq \text{label} \leq \text{addr} + 127$

where addr is the address of the second nibble of the opcode. The address offset aa is in two's complement form and is relative to addr.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

GOLONG label - Go Long  
-----

opcode: 8Caaaa  
cycles: 14

Long relative jump to label unconditionally. label must be in the range:

$\text{addr} - 32768 \leq \text{label} \leq \text{addr} + 32767$

where addr is the address of the third nibble of the opcode. The address offset aaaa is in two's complement form and is relative to addr.

GONC label - Go relative on no carry  
-----

opcode: 5aa (Carry=1)  
cycles: 10 (GO)  
3 (NO)

Short relative jump to label if Carry is clear. label must be in the range:

$\text{addr} - 128 \leq \text{label} \leq \text{addr} + 127$

where addr is the address of the second nibble of the opcode. The address offset aa is in two's complement form and is relative to addr.

GOSBVL label - Gosub very long to label  
-----

opcode: 8Faaaaa  
cycles: 15

Absolute subroutine jump to aaaaa, which is the absolute address of label. See the GOSUB mnemonic.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

GOSUB label - Gosub to label  
-----

opcode: 7aaa  
cycles: 12

Relative subroutine jump to label. label must be in the range:

$$\text{addr} - 2048 \leq \text{label} \leq \text{addr} + 2047$$

where addr is the starting address of the next instruction. The address offset aaa is in two's complement form and is relative to addr.

As with all subroutine jumps, the address (addr) of the instruction following the gosub opcode is pushed onto the hardware return stack, so that when a corresponding return is executed, control resumes with the instruction at address addr.

As the return address is pushed onto the return stack, the bottom-most address on the stack is discarded. Therefore, the return stack always contains 8 addresses, and if pushes exceed pops by 8 levels, the bottom-most return addresses are lost. Since the interrupt system requires one level to process interrupts, only 7 levels of the return stack can be used by code which must execute when interrupts are enabled. See the RTN mnemonic for further information.

GOSUBL label - Gosub long to label  
-----

opcode: 8Eaaaa  
cycles: 15

Long relative subroutine jump to label. label must be in the range:

$$\text{addr} - 32768 \leq \text{label} \leq \text{addr} + 32767$$

where addr is the starting address of the next instruction. The address offset aaaa is in two's complement form and is relative to addr. See the GOSUB mnemonic.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

GOTO label - Jump relative  
-----

opcode: 6aaa  
cycles: 11

Relative jump to label unconditionally. label must be in the range:

$$\text{addr} - 2048 \leq \text{label} \leq \text{addr} + 2047$$

where addr is the address of the second nibble of the opcode. The address offset aaa is in two's complement form and is relative to addr.

GOVING label - Jump very long  
-----

opcode: 8Daaaaa  
cycles: 14

Unconditional jump to aaaaa, which is the absolute address of label.

GOYES label - Jump if Test is True  
-----

opcode: yy  
cycles: included in the accompanying  
Test mnemonic cycle time.

GOYES is a mnemonic to specify part of a CPU test opcode. GOYES must always follow a test mnemonic. If the condition of the test is met, a jump is performed to label with Carry set. label must be in the range

$$\text{addr} - 128 \leq \text{label} \leq \text{addr} + 127$$

where addr is the starting address of the jump offset yy. If the test condition is not met, Carry is cleared and control passes to the next instruction. Compare with RTNYES.



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

INTOFF - Interrupt Off

-----

opcode: 808F  
cycles: 5

Disable the keyboard interrupt system.

INTON - Interrupt On

-----

opcode: 8080  
cycles: 5

Enable the keyboard interrupt system. See the "HP-71 Hardware Specification" for more information.

LC(m) n..n - Load C with constant ( $1 \leq m \leq 6$ )

-----

opcode: 3xn..n ( $x=m-1$ )  
cycles:  $3+m$

Load  $m$  digits of the expression  $n..n$  to the C register beginning at the P pointer position, and proceeding toward higher-order nibbles, with the ability to wrap around the register. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

LCASC \A..A\ - Load C with ASCII constant

-----

opcode: 3mc..c  
          ( $m = 2*(\# \text{ of chars})-1$ ;  
           $c..c = \text{ASCII codes}$ )  
cycles:  $3+2*(\# \text{ of chars})$

Load up to 8 ASCII characters to the C register beginning at the P pointer position, and proceeding toward higher-order nibbles, with the ability to wrap around the register. Each A represents an

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

ASCII character. The ASCII characters are stored in the opcode in reverse order so that when the instruction is executed the data will be loaded into the register with the intended orientation. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

LCHEX h..h - Load C with hex constant  
-----

opcode: 3nh..h (n=# of digits-1)  
cycles: 4+n

Load up to 16 hex digits into the C register beginning at the P pointer position, and proceeding toward higher-order nibbles, with the ability to wrap around the register. The hex digits are stored in the opcode in reverse order so that when the instruction is executed the data will be loaded into the register with the intended orientation. See the section on "Loading Data From Memory" earlier in this chapter.

MP=0 - Clear Module Pulled bit (MP)  
-----

opcode: 828  
cycles: 3

Clears the Module Pulled bit (MP) and pulls the Module Pulled Interrupt line low. See CLRHST mnemonic.

NOP3 - Three nibble No-op  
-----

opcode: 420  
cycles: 10 (GO/RTYES)  
3 (NO)

This mnemonic generates a GOC to the next instruction, effectively skipping three nibbles.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

NOP4        - Four nibble No-op

----

opcode: 6300  
cycles: 11

This mnemonic generates a GOTO to the next instruction, effectively skipping four nibbles.

NOP5        - Five nibble No-op

----

opcode: 64000  
cycles: 11

This mnemonic generates a relative GOTO to +4 nibbles. The fifth nibble in the opcode is a place holder and is jumped over. The mnemonic effectively skips five nibbles.

OUT=C       - Load 3 nibbles of OR

-----

opcode: 801  
cycles: 6

All nibbles of the Output register are loaded with the low-order three nibbles of C (X field).

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

OUT=CS - Load 1 nibble of OR

-----

opcode: 800  
cycles: 4

The least significant nibble of the Output register is loaded with the least significant nibble of the C register.

P=C n - Copy P pointer into C at Nibble n

-----

opcode: 80DN  
cycles: 6

Copy nibble n of register C into the P pointer.

P=P+1 - Increment P Pointer

-----

opcode: 0C  
cycles: 3

Increment the P pointer. If P is incremented past F it will automatically wrap around to 0. Adjusts Carry.

P=P-1 - Decrement P Pointer

-----

opcode: 0D  
cycles: 3

Decrement the P pointer. If P is decremented past 0 it automatically wraps around to F. Adjusts Carry.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

P= n - Set P Pointer to n  
-----

opcode: 2n  
cycles: 2

Set the P pointer to n.

R0=A - Copy A to register R0  
-----

opcode: 100  
cycles: 19

The contents of the working register A is copied to the scratch register R0.

R0=C - Copy C to register R0  
-----

opcode: 108  
cycles: 19

The contents of the working register C is copied to the scratch register R0.

R1=A - Copy A to register R1  
-----

opcode: 101  
cycles: 19

The contents of the working register A is copied to the scratch register R1.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

R1=C        - Copy C to register R1  
-----

opcode: 109  
cycles: 19

The contents of the working register C is copied to the scratch register R1.

R2=A        - Copy A to register R2  
-----

opcode: 102  
cycles: 19

The contents of the working register A is copied to the scratch register R2.

•

R2=C        - Copy C to register R2  
-----

opcode: 10A  
cycles: 19

The contents of the working register C is copied to the scratch register R2.

•

R3=A        - Copy A to register R3  
-----

opcode: 103  
cycles: 19

The contents of the working register A is copied to the scratch register R3.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

R3=C        - Copy C to register R3  
-----

opcode: 10B  
cycles: 19

The contents of the working register C is copied to the scratch register R3.

R4=A        - Copy A to register R4  
-----

opcode: 104  
cycles: 19

The contents of the working register A is copied to the scratch register R4.

R4=C        - Copy C to register R4  
-----

opcode: 10C  
cycles: 19

The contents of the working register C is copied to the scratch register R4.

RESET       - System reset  
-----

opcode: 80A  
cycles: 6

The System Reset Bus Command is issued with all chips performing a local reset. The reset function will vary according to the chip type. See the "HP-71 Hardware Specification" for more information.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

RSTK=C     - Push C to Return Stack

-----

opcode: 06  
cycles: 8

Push the low-order 5 nibbles (A field) of the C register onto the Return Stack. See the GOSUB mnemonic.

RTI         - Return from interrupt

-----

opcode: 0F  
cycles: 9

Return and re-enable the interrupt system. See the RTN mnemonic.

RTN         - Return

-----

opcode: 01  
cycles: 9

Return control to the top address on the hardware return stack. The top address on the hardware return stack is popped off and placed in the program counter PC. As the address is popped off the stack, a zero address is inserted at the bottom of the stack.

Therefore the the hardware return stack always contains 8 addresses, and if more pops (returns) than pushes (gosubs) are performed, zeros will be read off the stack. Such an attempt to "return" to address 0 results in a memory reset, since the memory reset code of the operating system resides at address 0.



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

RTNC -Return on carry

-----

opcode: 400  
cycles: 10 (RTN)  
3 (NO)

Return if Carry is set. See RTN mnemonic.

RTNCC - Return, clear carry

-----

opcode: 03  
cycles: 9

clear

Return and ~~set~~ Carry. See RTN mnemonic.

RTNNC - Return on no carry

-----

opcode: 500 (Carry=1)  
cycles: 10 (RTN)  
3 (NO)

Return if Carry is not set. See RTN mnemonic.

RTNSC - Return, set carry

-----

opcode: 02  
cycles: 9

Return and set Carry. See RTN mnemonic.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

RTNSXM - Return, set External Module Missing bit (XM)

-----

opcode: 00  
cycles: 9

Return and set the External Module Missing bit (XM). Since the opcode is zero, this mnemonic is executed on a jump to a non-existent memory device. See the "HP-71 Hardware Specification" for more information. See also the RTN mnemonic.

RTYES - Return if Test is True

-----

opcode: 00  
cycles: included in the accompanying  
mnemonic cycle time.

If the test condition is not met, Carry is cleared and control passes to the next instruction. Compare with RTYES. RTYES is a mnemonic to specify part of a CPU test opcode. RTYES must always follow a test mnemonic. If the test condition is met, Carry is set and a return is executed. If the test condition is not met, control passes to the instruction following the RTYES. Compare with the RTN and GOYES mnemonics.

SB=0 - Clear Sticky Bit (SB)

-----

opcode: 822  
cycles: 3

Clear the Sticky Bit (SB). See CLRHST mnemonic.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

SETDEC - Set decimal

-----

opcode: 05  
cycles: 3

Set CPU arithmetic mode to decimal.

SETHX - Set hexadecimal mode

-----

opcode: 04  
cycles: 3

Set CPU arithmetic mode to hexadecimal.

SHUTDN - System Shutdown

-----

opcode: 807  
cycles: 5

When this mnemonic is executed the CPU sends out the Shutdown Bus Command and stops its clock. See the "HP-71 Hardware Specification" for more information.

SR=0 - Clear Service Request bit (SR)

-----

opcode: 824  
cycles: 3

Clear the Service Request bit (SR). See the CLRHST mnemonic.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

SREQ?      - Service Request

-----

opcode: 80E

cycles: 7

This mnemonic sets the Service Request bit (SR) if any chip on the system bus requests service. When it is executed, a Service Request Bus Command is issued on the system bus to poll all chips for a Service Request. If any chip requests service, a bus line will be pulled high during the next strobe following the Service Request Bus Command. This value of the bus will be latched into the least significant nibble of the C register. The bus line pulled high determines the device type according to the following table.

| Bit | Device                 |
|-----|------------------------|
| 3   | Unused                 |
| 2   | Card Reader            |
| 1   | HP-IL Mailbox          |
| 0   | Display Driver (timer) |

If any bus line is high, the Service Request bit (SR) will be set. See the "HP-71 Hardware Specification" for more information. See also the ?SREQ and SR=0 mnemonics.

ST=0    n - Clear Program Status bit n

-----

opcode: 84n

cycles: 4

Clear the Program Status bit selected by n.

ST=1    n - Set Program Status bit n

-----

opcode: 85n

cycles: 4

Set the Program Status bit selected by n.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Assembler Instruction Set

ST=C        - C to Status

-----

opcode: 0A  
cycles: 6

Copy the low-order 12 bits of the Status register (X field) into the low-order 12 bits of the C register.

UNCNFG     - Unconfigure

-----

opcode: 804  
cycles: 12

Load the low-order 5 nibbles (A field) of the C register into each Data pointer with the device addressed by the Data pointer unconfiguring. See the "HP-71 Hardware Specification" for more information.

XM=0        - Clear External Module Missing bit (XM)

-----

opcode: 821  
cycles: 3

Clear the External Module Missing bit (XM). This hardware status bit is set by the RTNSXM mnemonic. See the CLRHST mnemonic.

|                     |            |
|---------------------|------------|
| HP-71 CODE EXAMPLES | CHAPTER 17 |
|---------------------|------------|

### 17.1 Machine Code Packing Techniques

1. Take full advantage of existing subroutines, or create beneficial new ones (even short ones).
2. Use A field instead of B field when possible and when speed doesn't matter.
3. Remove unnecessary P=0 instructions. (Most routines exit with pointer set to 0.)
- 4a. If two subroutines have common ending, then end one of them with a GOTO to the common ending.
- 4b. If common code precedes subroutine calls, move that common code to the front end of the subroutine.
5. A RTN should generally not follow a GOSUB instruction.
6. Shorten error messages or delete redundant ones.
7. Remove unnecessary long branches within modules.
8. Code for optimum space, not speed, if speed loss is not significant.
9. Centralize the loading of C with the same Error Number.
10. Setting a data pointer to the same 5 nibble value can be shortened using a GOSUB to set it.
11. Using an LC(5) to load a 1 or 2 nibble constant into C(A) can be shortened with:  
    C=0     A  
    LC(2) =symbol
12. Using load listing, search for routines that are

never referenced, or only referenced once.

13. Using load listing as an aid, search for common sequences of subroutine calls.
14. If the state of the carry is predictably the same for all paths through a section of code, any GOTO instruction to a nearby label can be replaced by a GOC or GONC instruction depending on whether the carry is known to be set or clear, respectively. This type of branch saves 1 nibble, and is referred to as a "Branch Every Time," often abbreviated as "BET" or "B.E.T." in the comment field of the instruction. Such branches should be used with caution and should be clearly commented.

## 17.2 Mainframe File Type Table

The mainframe file type table is as follows. For an explanation of the format of this table, see the "Table Formats" chapter.

### =FTYPE

#### \*\*\* DATA FILE (Interchange DATA File)

```
NIBHEX 110
CON(2) =oDAsod
NIBASC \DATA \
CON(1) 2
CON(4) =fDATA
CON(4) (=fDATA)+1 Secure DATA file
```

#### \*\*\* BASIC FILE

```
NIBHEX 001
CON(2) =oBSsod
NIBASC \BASIC\
CON(1) 4
CON(4) =fBASIC
CON(4) (=fBASIC)+1 Secure BASIC
CON(4) (=fBASIC)+2 Private BASIC
CON(4) (=fBASIC)+3 Secure, private BASIC
```

#### \*\*\* KEY FILE

```
NIBHEX 000
CON(2) =oKYSod
NIBASC \KEY \
CON(1) 2
CON(4) =fKEY
CON(4) (=fKEY)+1 Secure KEYS
```

#### \*\*\* TEXT FILE

```
NIBHEX 440
CON(2) =oTXsod
NIBASC \TEXT \
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```
CON(1) 2
CON(4) 1
CON(4) #EOD1 Secure TEXT
*** LIF1 FILE (same as TEXT)
NIBHEX 440
CON(2) =oTXsod
NIBASC \LIF1 \
CON(1) 1
CON(4) 1
*** SDATA FILE (Series 40 Data File)
NIBHEX 220
CON(2) =o41sod
NIBASC \SDATA\
CON(1) 1
CON(4) #EOD0
*** BIN FILE (Binary File)
NIBHEX 001
CON(2) =oBNsod
NIBASC \BIN \
CON(1) 4
CON(4) =fBIN
CON(4) (=fBIN)+1 Secure BIN
CON(4) (=fBIN)+2 Private BIN
CON(4) (=fBIN)+3 Secure, private BIN
*** LEX FILE (Langauge Extension File)
NIBHEX 001
CON(2) =oLXsod
NIBASC \LEX \
CON(1) 4
CON(4) =fLEX
CON(4) (=fLEX)+1 Secure LEX
CON(4) (=fLEX)+2 Private LEX
CON(4) (=fLEX)+3 Secure, private LEX

*
NIBHEX FF Terminates Table
*
END
```

### 17.3 LEX File Implementing Statements and Functions

This LEX file is taken from the HP-71 Editor ROM. It implements the statements INSERT#, REPLACE#, and DELETE# for TEXT files, and extends the LIST and PLIST statements to include TEXT files. In addition, a number of functions are also implemented to examine and search TEXT files, to detect the pressing of scroll keys, and to aid the parsing of Editor commands. Note that there are two sets of LEX tables chained within this LEX file.



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```
TITLE Titan EDITOR Lexfile <840123.1614>
REL #8

*
* TTTT III & EEEEE DDDD TTTT
* T I & & E D D T
* T I & & E D D T
* T I & EEEEE D D T
* T I & & & E D D T
* T I & & E D D T
* T III && & EEEEE DDDD T
*

* Set assembler flag1 = 0 to assemble the complete
* Text Editor, with Formatter.
*
* Set assembler flag1 = 1 to assemble the short
* Text Editor, without Formatter.

*
RDSYMB SB%RAM
RDSYMB TI%EQU
NIBASC \EDLEX \ * File Name
CON(4) =fLEX File Type
NIBHEX 00 Flags
NIBHEX 1441 Time
NIBHEX 412138 Date
REL(5) FILEND File Length
*
NIBHEX 0F Id
CON(2) 1 Lowest Token
CON(2) 7 Highest Token
REL(5) SCRLEX End of lex table chain
*
NIBHEX F Speed table omitted
CON(4) (TxBtSt)+1-(*) Offset to text table
REL(4) MSGTBL Offset to message table
REL(5) POLHND Offset to poll handler
STITLE Main Table
* Main Table
=xromF0
*
CON(3) 0 01 DELETE#
REL(5) DELETE
NIBHEX D
*
CON(3) 34 02 EDTEXT
REL(5) EDTEXT
NIBHEX D
*
CON(3) 49 03 FILESZR
REL(5) FILSZR
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

 NIBHEX F
*
 CON(3) 66 04 INSERT#
 REL(5) INSERT
 NIBHEX D
*
 CON(3) 81 05 REPLACE#
 REL(5) REPLCE
 NIBHEX D
*
 CON(3) 98 06 SEARCH
 REL(5) SEARCH
 NIBHEX F
*
 CON(3) 15 07 EDPARSE$
 REL(5) EDPARS
 NIBHEX F
 STITLE T e x t T a b l e
* Text Table
TxTbSt Text table start
*
 NIBHEX B DELETE#
 NIBASC \DELETE\
 NIBHEX 10
*
 NIBHEX F EDPARSE$
 NIBASC \EDPARSE$\
 NIBHEX 70
*
 NIBHEX B EDTEXT
 NIBASC \EDTEXT\
 NIBHEX 20
*
 NIBHEX D FILESZR
 NIBASC \FILESZR\
 NIBHEX 30
*
 NIBHEX B INSERT#
 NIBASC \INSERT\
 NIBHEX 40
*
 NIBHEX D REPLACE#
 NIBASC \REPLACE\
 NIBHEX 50
*
 NIBHEX B SEARCH
 NIBASC \SEARCH\
 NIBHEX 60
TxTbEn NIBHEX 1FF Text termination
*
 STITLE Editor messages
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

*
MSGTBL

frmt- IF 1 Short msg table w/o formatter

* ----- merge MB&EDS here -----
*!!
*!!!!!!!!!!!! Message number 5 is placed first because of the !!
*!!!!!!!!!!!! requirement to have a 0 nibble following the !!
*!!!!!!!!!!!! range field. If message number 5 changes, !!
*!!!!!!!!!!!! you must select another message to put in the !!
*!!!!!!!!!!!! first slot! (any message with a length which !!
*!!!!!!!!!!!! is a multiple of 16) !!
 CON(2) 1 Min message #
 CON(2) 11 Max message #
*
=eLINE EQU 5 Line
 CON(2) 16
 CON(2) 5 Message number 5
 CON(1) 4
 NIBASC \Line \
 CON(1) 12
*!!
*
=eEOF EQU 1 Eof
 CON(2) 12
 CON(2) 1 Message number 1
 CON(1) 2
 NIBASC \Eof\
 CON(1) 12
*
=ecnds EQU 2 CDEFHILMPRST
 CON(2) 31
 CON(2) 2 Message number 2
 CON(1) 11
 CON(1) 11
 NIBASC \CDEFHILM\
 NIBASC \PRST\
 CON(1) 12
*
=eUNKNU EQU 3 ? Cmd:
 CON(2) 13
 CON(2) 3 Message number 3
 CON(1) 1
 NIBASC \? \
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =eCMD
 CON(1) 12
*
=eFLNM EQU 4 Filename:
 CON(2) 19

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 CON(2) 4 Message number 4
 CON(1) 14
 CON(2) =eFILE
 CON(1) 4
 NIBASC \name:\
 CON(1) 12
*
* Message number 5 is found at the top of the table.
*
*
=eCMD EQU 6 Cmd:
 CON(2) 14
 CON(2) 6 Message number 6
 CON(1) 3
 NIBASC \Cmd:\
 CON(1) 12
*
=eOKDLT EQU 7 OK to Delete? Y/N:
 CON(2) 43
 CON(2) 7 Message number 7
 CON(1) 10
 NIBASC \OK to De\
 NIBASC \let\
 CON(1) 6
 NIBASC \e? Y/N:\
 CON(1) 12
*
=eYNQ EQU 8 YNQ
 CON(2) 12
 CON(2) 8 Message number 8
 CON(1) 2
 NIBASC \YNQ\
 CON(1) 12
*
=eINVCM EQU 9 Invalid Cmd Strg
 CON(2) 25
 CON(2) 9 Message number 9
 CON(1) 14
 CON(2) =eINVLD
 CON(1) 7
 NIBASC \Cmd Strg\
 CON(1) 12
*
=eWRKG EQU 10 Working...
 CON(2) 26
 CON(2) 10 Message number 10
 CON(1) 9
 NIBASC \Working.\
 NIBASC \..\
 CON(1) 12
*

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

=eDONE EQU 11 Done
 CON(2) 14
 CON(2) 11 Message number 11
 CON(1) 3
 NIBASC \Done\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
 NIBHEX FF Table terminator

frmt- ELSE Short msg table w/o formatter

*----- merge MB&EDM here -----
*!!
*!!!!!!!!!!!! Message number 5 is placed first because of the !!
*!!!!!!!!!!!! requirement to have a 0 nibble following the !!
*!!!!!!!!!!!! range field. If message number 5 changes, !!
*!!!!!!!!!!!! you must select another message to put in the !!
*!!!!!!!!!!!! first slot! (any message with a length which !!
*!!!!!!!!!!!! is a multiple of 16) !!
 CON(2) 1 Min message #
 CON(2) 53 Max message #
*
=eLINE EQU 5 Line
 CON(2) 16
 CON(2) 5 Message number 5
 CON(1) 4
 NIBASC \Line \
 CON(1) 12
*!!
*
=eEOF EQU 1 Eof
 CON(2) 12
 CON(2) 1 Message number 1
 CON(1) 2
 NIBASC \Eof\
 CON(1) 12
*
=ecnds EQU 2 CDEFHILMPRST
 CON(2) 31
 CON(2) 2 Message number 2
 CON(1) 11
 CON(1) 11
 NIBASC \CDEFHILM\
 NIBASC \PRST\
 CON(1) 12
*
=eUNKW EQU 3 ? Cmd:
 CON(2) 13
 CON(2) 3 Message number 3
 CON(1) 1

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 NIBASC \? \
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =eCMD
 CON(1) 12
*
=eFLNM EQU 4 Filename:
 CON(2) 19
 CON(2) 4 Message number 4
 CON(1) 14
 CON(2) =eFILE
 CON(1) 4
 NIBASC \name:\
 CON(1) 12
*
* Message number 5 is found at the top of the table.
*
*
=eCMD EQU 6 Cmd:
 CON(2) 14
 CON(2) 6 Message number 6
 CON(1) 3
 NIBASC \Cmd:\
 CON(1) 12
*
=eOKDLT EQU 7 OK to Delete? Y/N:
 CON(2) 43
 CON(2) 7 Message number 7
 CON(1) 10
 NIBASC \OK to De\
 NIBASC \let\
 CON(1) 6
 NIBASC \e? Y/N:\
 CON(1) 12
*
=eYNQ EQU 8 YNQ
 CON(2) 12
 CON(2) 8 Message number 8
 CON(1) 2
 NIBASC \YNQ\
 CON(1) 12
*
=eINVCM EQU 9 Invalid Cmd Strg
 CON(2) 25
 CON(2) 9 Message number 9
 CON(1) 14
 CON(2) =eINVLD
 CON(1) 7
 NIBASC \Cmd Strg\
 CON(1) 12
*
=eWRKG EQU 10 Working...

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 CON(2) 26
 CON(2) 10 Message number 10
 CON(1) 9
 NIBASC \Working.\
 NIBASC \..\
 CON(1) 12
*
=eDONE EQU 11 Done
 CON(2) 14
 CON(2) 11 Message number 11
 CON(1) 3
 NIBASC \Done\
 CON(1) 12
*
=efmt EQU 12
 CON(2) 68
 CON(2) 12 Message number 12
 CON(1) 10
 NIBASC \ESPNPASP\
 NIBASC \ADF\
 CON(1) 10
 NIBASC \ICOCEJUM\
 NIBASC \ASK\
 CON(1) 7
 NIBASC \IADLPLME\
 CON(1) 12
*
=e2MFL EQU 13 Merge > 5 Files
 CON(2) 32
 CON(2) 13 Message number 13
 CON(1) 9
 NIBASC \Merge > \
 NIBASC \5 \
 CON(1) 14
 CON(2) =eFILE
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \s\
 CON(1) 12
*
=eMULT EQU 14 Multiple Distribution Lists
 CON(2) 41
 CON(2) 14 Message number 14
 CON(1) 10
 NIBASC \Mult Dis\
 NIBASC \tr \
 CON(1) 5
 NIBASC \Lists:\
 CON(1) 12
*
=ePLSIN EQU 15 Insert Page...
 CON(2) 35

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 CON(2) 15 Message number 15
 CON(1) 11
 CON(1) 13
 NIBASC \Insert P\
 NIBASC \age...\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
***** HELP list *****
*
* Copy: [b[e]] C [<file>]
*
=eCOPY EQU 16
 CON(2) 17
 CON(2) 16 Message number 16
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =ebes
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \C\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =e<file
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \]\
 CON(1) 12
*
* Delete: [b[e]] D [<file>[+]]
*
=eDELT EQU 17
 CON(2) 23
 CON(2) 17 Message number 17
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =ebes
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \D\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =e<file
 CON(1) 3
 NIBASC \[+]]\
 CON(1) 12
*
* Exit: E
*
=eEXIT EQU 18
 CON(2) 8
 CON(2) 18 Message number 18
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \E\
 CON(1) 12
*
* Format: F [n][G$]
*
=eFORMI EQU 19
 CON(2) 24
 CON(2) 19 Message number 19
 CON(1) 8

```



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 NIBASC \F [n][G$\
 NIBASC \]\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
 =eHELP EQU 20
 CON(2) 8
 CON(2) 20
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \H\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
 =eINSRT EQU 21
 CON(2) 16
 CON(2) 21
 CON(1) 4
 NIBASC \[1] I\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
 =eLIST EQU 22
 CON(2) 14
 CON(2) 22
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =ebes
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \L\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =enN
 CON(1) 12
*
*
 =eMOVE EQU 23
 CON(2) 17
 CON(2) 23
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =ebes
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \M\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =e<file
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \]\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
 =ePRINT EQU 24
 CON(2) 14
 CON(2) 24
 CON(1) 13

```

Help: H

Message number 20

Insert: [1] I

Message number 21

List: [b[e]] L [n][N]

Message number 22

Move: [b[e]] M [<file>]

Message number 23

Print: [b[e]] P [n][N]

Message number 24

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 CON(2) =ebes
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \P\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =enN
 CON(1) 12
*
* Replace: [b[e]][?] R/str1/str2[/]
*
=eREPLC EQU 25
 CON(2) 38
 CON(2) 25 Message number 25
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =ebe?
 CON(1) 11
 CON(1) 13
 NIBASC \R/str1/s\
 NIBASC \tr2[/]\
 CON(1) 12
*
* Search: [b[e]][?] S/str[/]
*
=eSEARC EQU 26
 CON(2) 25
 CON(2) 26 Message number 26
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =ebe?
 CON(1) 7
 NIBASC \S/str[/]\
 CON(1) 12
*
* Text: [1] T
*
=eTEXT EQU 27
 CON(2) 16
 CON(2) 27 Message number 27
 CON(1) 4
 NIBASC \[1] T\
 CON(1) 12
*
* ^ad: advance page

* Building blocks
* [b[e]]
*
=ebes EQU 50
 CON(2) 20
 CON(2) 50 Message number 50
 CON(1) 6
 NIBASC \[b[e]] \
 CON(1) 12
*
* [<file>]
*
=e<file EQU 51
 CON(2) 22

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 CON(2) 51 Message number 51
 CON(1) 7
 NIBASC \ [<file>\
 CON(1) 12
*
* [b[e]]{?}
*
=ebe? EQU 52
 CON(2) 26
 CON(2) 52 Message number 52
 CON(1) 9
 NIBASC \[b[e]]{?\
 NIBASC \] \
 CON(1) 12
*
* [n]{N}
*
=enN EQU 53
 CON(2) 20
 CON(2) 53 Message number 53
 CON(1) 6
 NIBASC \ [n]{N}\
 CON(1) 12
*
 NIBHEX FF Table terminator

fmt- ENDIF Short msg table w/o formatter.

* Poll handler goes here. Handler for VER$ poll is
* provided
*
POLHND ?B=0 B VER$ poll?
 GOYES hVER$0 Yes.
 GONC hVER$2 No. To hVER$2 w/carry clear.
hVER$0 C=R3
 D1=C
 A=R2
 D1=D1- (VER$en)-(VER$st)-2
 CD1EX
 ?A>C A
 GOYES hVER$1
 D1=C
 R3=C
*
**!! LCASC text to be returned for VER$ here
* Include a leading blank!!
*
VER$st LCASC \ EDT:A\
VER$en DAT1=C (VER$en)-(VER$st)-2
hVER$1 RTNSXM
*
**!! Continue poll handler here: Carry is clear, VER$ poll
* has been handled.

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

*
hVER$2 LC(2) =pLIST2
 ?B=C B
 GOYES LIST00
 RINSXM
*
LIST00 LC(5) =fTEXT
 ?A=C A
 GOYES list01
 RINSXM
list01 GOTO LIST01
*
**!! LEXFILE code goes here
*
 STITLE EDTEXT Keyword Execute

**
** Name: EDTEXT - EDTEXT Keyword Execute
**
** Category: STExec
**
** Purpose:
** Executes EDTEXT keyword
**
** Entry:
** P = 0
** DO past tEDTEXT (at tLITRL)
**
** Exit:
** P = 0
**
** Calls: See CALL statement execute
**
** Uses.....
** See CALL statement execute
**
** Stk lvls: See CALL
**
** History:
**
** Date Programmer Modification
** -----
** 09/28/83 S.W. Added documentation
**

*
 REL(5) EDXTd Offset to EDTEXT decompile
 REL(5) EDXTp Offset to EDTEXT parse
EDTEXT GOVLNG =CALL

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```
*
 STITLE FILESZR Function Execute

**
** Name: FILESZR - FILESZR Function Execute
**
** Category: FNEEXEC
**
** Purpose:
** FILESZR locates the specified TEXT file in and returns
** the number of records in the file. The syntax is:
**
** FILESZR (<file specifier string>)
**
** The returned value is:
**
** If >= 0 Number of records in TEXT file
** If < 0 Negative of the error number. Possible
** errors are:
** Invalid File Spec
** File Not Found
** Invalid File Type
** File Protect
** Illegal Access
**
** Entry:
** String specifying file is on stack
** P = 0
**
** Exit:
** P = 0
**
** Calls: FILXQ$, FINDF+, POSTXT, HDEFLT, DIMSTK, PSHSTK, FNRTN1
**
** Uses.....
** Exclusive: A, B(A), B(S), C, D, R0, R1, D0, D1, SPRBLM, SEOF, SBADRC
** Inclusive: A-D, R0-R3, D0, D1, S11-S0, SIMTR1, SIMTD1, Function
** Scratch
**
** Stk lvls: 6 (FILXQ$)
**
** History:
**
** Date Programmer Modification
** -----
** 09/29/83 FH Designed and coded
**

 SPRBLM EQU 4
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

|                                |                 |                                    |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|
|                                | NIBHEX 411      | Parameter descriptor: One string   |
| FILSZR                         | CDOEX           | Save D0 in RSTKBF                  |
|                                | RSTK=C          | .                                  |
|                                | GOSBVL =R<RSTK  | .                                  |
|                                | GOSUB ave=d1    | Save string start in AVMEME        |
|                                | GOSBVL =FILXQ\$ | Pop file name into A               |
|                                | GOC FILS10      | Branch if valid file name          |
|                                | GOSUB d1mstk    | Restore poor old D1                |
|                                | GOSBVL =POP1S   | Move D1 past string header         |
|                                | CD1EX           | Move D1 past string contents       |
|                                | C=C+A A         | .                                  |
|                                | D1=C            | .                                  |
|                                | GOSUB ave=d1    | Save D1 in AVMEME                  |
|                                | LC(4) =eFSPEC   | Load error code                    |
| FILSer                         | ST=1 sPRBLM     | Set error flag                     |
|                                | CSL A           | Isolate error code in A            |
|                                | CSR A           | .                                  |
|                                | A=C A           | .                                  |
|                                | GOTO FILS20     | Go return negative error code      |
| FILS10                         | GOSUB ave=d1    | Save D1 in AVMEME (string popped)  |
|                                | GOSBVL =FINDF+  | Find file                          |
|                                | GOC FILSer      | Error if not found                 |
|                                | A=0 A           | Search for unreachable record      |
|                                | A=A-1 A         | . which is -1                      |
|                                | R1=A            | .                                  |
|                                | AD1EX           | A = File header addr               |
|                                | GOSUB POSTXT    | Position file, always error return |
|                                | ST=0 sPRBLM     |                                    |
|                                | ?C#0 A          | Real error, not just EOF?          |
|                                | GOYES FILSer    | .                                  |
|                                | A=R0            | Compute # records in file          |
|                                | A=A+1 A         | .                                  |
| FILS20                         | GOSUB d1mstk    | Restore D1                         |
|                                | GOSBVL =HDFLT   | Convert to decimal                 |
|                                | ?ST=0 sPRBLM    | No error?                          |
|                                | GOYES FILS30    |                                    |
|                                | A=-A-1 S        | Make number negative               |
| FILS30                         | SEIHEX          | Return to hex mode                 |
|                                | D1=D1- 16       | Write number to stack              |
|                                | DAT1=A W        |                                    |
|                                | GOSBVL =RSTK<R  | Restore D0                         |
|                                | C=RSTK          | .                                  |
|                                | CDOEX           | .                                  |
| expr                           | GOVLNG =EXPR    | Return                             |
| STITLE DELETE# Keyword Execute |                 |                                    |
|                                | REL(5) DELETD   | Off set to DELETE# decompile       |
|                                | REL(5) DELETP   | Off set to DELETE# parse           |
| DELETE                         | ST=0 sINS       | Set up DELETE# status              |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```
ST=1 sDEL
GOTO REPL10
```

STITLE INSERT# Keyword Execute

```
REL(5) INSRtd Offset to INSERT# decompile
REL(5) INSRtp Offset to INSERT# parse
INSERT ST=1 sINS Set up INSERT# status
ST=0 sDEL
GOTO REPL10
```

STITLE REPLACE# Keyword Execute

\*\*\*\*\*

\*\*

\*\* Name: REPLCE - REPLACE# Statement Execute

\*\*

\*\* Category: STEXEC

\*\*

\*\* Purpose:

\*\* Execute REPLACE# statement for the HP-71 EDITOR ROM.

\*\*

\*\* Entry:

\*\* P = 0

\*\* D0 @ After starting token

\*\*

\*\* Exit:

\*\* P = 0

\*\* To NXTSTM

\*\*

\*\* Calls: OBCOLL,STATSV,GETCH#,MGOSUB,EXPEX-,D1MSTK,POP1R,

\*\* FLTDH,STATRS,REVPOP,SWPBYT,MOVEU0,POSFIL,BSERR,

\*\* ?PRFI+,RPLLIN,FIBADR,NXTSTM

\*\*

\*\* Uses.....

\*\* Exclusive: A-D,R1,R3,sINS,sDEL,STMT01,STMTD1,CHN#SV

\*\* Inclusive: A-D,R0-R4,S11-S0,Statement and Function scratch,

\*\* CHN#SV

\*\*

\*\* Stk lvls: 6 (GETCH#)

\*\*

\*\* Detail:

\*\* Status usage: sINS sDEL

\*\*

\*\* REPLACE# 0 0

\*\* INSERT# 1 0

\*\* DELETE# 1 1

\*\*

\*\* Statement Scratch usage:

\*\*

\*\* STMT0(15-14) Channel number

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

** SIMIRO(9-5) Record number
**
**
**
** Algorithm:
** Set up respective status bits (see detail above)
** Collapse output buffer
** Evaluate channel number, exit if error
** Skip comma token
** Evaluate record number, exit if error
** Save record number in SIMIRO
** If not DELETE#, then
** Skip ";" token
** Evaluate string expression
** Move string from MIHSTK to Output Buffer
** If file is not in RAM, or is secure or private then error
** If file is not TEXT copy code, then error
** Space file out to <record number> giving START of line
** If INSERT# then
** Set LENGTH to 0
** Else
** Compute line length giving LENGTH
** Call RPLLIN to edit file
** Update FIB end-of-data field
** Collapse output buffer
** Go to NXTSTM
**
** History:
**
** Date Programmer Modification
** -----
** 09/12/83 F. Hall Designed and coded
**

* Status Symbols
*
sINS EQU 11
sDEL EQU 9
sBADRC EQU 8
*sI/OBF EQU 10 External symbol
*
ave=d1 GOVLNG =AVE=D1
dlmstk GOVLNG =D1MSTK
swpbyt GOVLNG =SWPBYT
mgosub GOVLNG =MGOSUB
*
invarg LC(4) =eIVARG
 GOTO bserr

```



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

REL(5) REPLCd Offset to REPLACE# decompile
REL(5) REPLCp Offset to REPLACE# parse
REPLCE ST=0 sINS Set up REPLACE# status
 ST=0 sDEL
*
** Collapse output buffer
** Evaluate channel number, exit if error
** Skip comma token
** Evaluate record number, exit if error
*
REPL10 GOSBVL =OBCOLL Collapse output buffer
 D1=(5) =S-R0-1 Save status in S-R0-1
 GOSBVL =STATSV
 GOSUB mgosub Get channel #, save in CHN#SV
 CON(5) =GETCH#
 D0=D0+ 2 Skip comma
 GOSUB mgosub Get record number
 CON(5) =EXPEX-
 GOSUB dlmstk (D1 not valid after MGOSUB here)
 GOSUB poplr
 GOSUB fltdh
 GONC invarg Branch if out of range
*
** If not DELETE#, then
** Skip ";" token
** Evaluate string expression
** Move string from MINSTK to Output Buffer
*
 D1=(5) =S-R0-1 Restore status momentarily
 GOSBVL =STATRS
 ?ST=1 sDEL DELETE# ?
 GOYES REPL20
 D1=D1- 5 Store record # in S-R0-0
 DAT1=A A
 D0=D0+ 2 Skip over ;
 GOSUB mgosub Evaluate string expression
 CON(5) =EXPEX-
 GOSUB dlmstk D1 @ Av mem end
 GOSBVL =REVPOP Pop record string (must be reversed)
 B=0 W B = # bytes of data
 B=A A
 BSRB
 CD1EX C = stg start
 D1=(5) =AVMEME Move AVMEME beyond end of string
 A=A+C A
 DAT1=A A
 D0=C D0 @ Line header = SOURCE START
 D0=D0- 4
 A=B A Write line header
 GOSUB supbyt

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

DAT0=A 4
B=B+1 A Round up to even bytes for LIF std
BSRB
B=B+1 A Add 2 bytes for line header
B=B+B A Convert to nibs
B=B+B A . (B = BLOCK LENGTH)
D1=D1- (AVMEME)-(AVMEMS) Update AVMEMS to new end
A=DAT1 A
A=A+B A
DAT1=A A
A=A-B A D1 = DEST START
D1=A
GOSBVL =MOVEU0 Move string down to output buffer
D1=(5) =S-R0-0 Recall record number
A=DAT1 A
D1=D1+ 5 Restore status
GOSBVL =STAIRS

*
** Space file out to <record number> giving START of line
** If file is not in RAM, or is secure or private then error
** If file is not TEXT copy code, then error
*
REPL20 R1=A Store record number
 D1=(5) =CHN#SV Recall channel #
 A=DAT1 B
 GOSUB POSFIL Position file to requested record
 GONC REPL30 Branch if no error
 ?C#0 A Problem not simply EOF?
 GOYES bserr
REPL25 LC(4) =eEOFIL Error out "End of File"
 GONC bserr . (BET)
REPL30 A=B S Check if file secure
 GOSBVL =?PRFI+
 GOC bserr
 D=D-1 S File in MAIN?
 GOC REPL40
 D=D-1 S File in IRAM?
 GOC REPL40
 LC(4) =eFACCS "Invalid Access"
bserr GOVLNG =BSERR
REPL40 ?ST=1 sBADRC Refuse to edit bad record
 GOYES REPL25

*
** If INSERT# then
** Set LENGTH to 0
** Else
** Compute line length giving LENGTH
** Call RPLLIN to edit file
** Update FIB end-of-data field
** Collapse output buffer
** Go to NXTSTM

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

*
 CD1EX C,RSTK = Start of line
 RSTK=C
 ADOEX A = Start of NEXT line
 ?ST=0 sINS Not INSERT# ?
 GOYES REPL50
 A=C A
 REPL50 C=A-C A Preset LENGTH = 0
 R3=C R3 = LENGTH of previous line
 D1=(5) =STMTD1 Set C = File header address
 C=DAT1 A
 D1=C
 D1=D1+ oFBEGb
 C=DAT1 A
 GOSUB mgosub Replace line
 CON(5) =RPLLIN
 GONC REPL60 Branch if no error
 B=C A
 C=RSTK
 C=B A
 GOTO bserr
 REPL60 D1=(5) =CHN#SV Update FIB's current position
 A=DAT1 A
 GOSBVL =FIBADR
 D1=D1+ 16
 D1=D1+ (oDBEGb)-16
 A=DAT1 A
 C=RSTK . recall abs address of line start
 C=C-A A . make relative to data start
 D1=D1+ 16
 D1=D1+ (oCPOSb)-(oDBEGb)-16
 DAT1=C A
 D1=D1+ (oDLENb)-(oCPOSb) Update data length
 C=DAT1 A . C = data length
 A=R3 . A = offset
 A=A+C A
 DAT1=A A
 GOSBVL =OBCOLL Collapse output buffer
 GOLONG nxtstm Exit to next statement
LIST STITLE LIST Statement Execute

**
** Name: LISTIX - LIST of TEXT files
**
** Category: STEXEC
**
** Purpose:
** Handles POLL to LIST a TEXT file
**
** Entry:

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

** P = 0
** B(B) contains poll#
** A(A) contains file type#
** D1 points to file header
** D0 past file specifier
**
** Exit:
** P = 0
**
** Calls: DECHEX, FRCRDn, RCDSKP, FILSKP, PRPSND, POPUPD
**
** Uses.....
** Exclusive: A-D, D1,D0, R0-R3, S-R1-1, OUTBS
**
** Stk lvls: 6
**
** History:
**
** Date Programmer Modification
** -----
** 09/14/83 S.W. Wrote routine
**

*
LIST01 C=0 W
 A=0 W
 C=C+1 A
 R1=C
 LCHEX 1048575 Biggest# = 5 hex digits
 R3=C
 A=DAT0 B
 LC(2) =tCOMMA
 ?A#C B
 GOYES LIST07 No parms specified?
 D0=D0+ 1
 A=DAT0 A
 ASR A
 D0=D0+ 5
 R1=A
 A=DAT0 B
 LC(2) =tCOMMA
 ?A#C B
 GOYES LIST06 No 2nd parm specified?
*
LIST05 D0=D0+ 2
 A=DAT0 4
 R3=A
 C=R1
 ?C<=A A parm1<=parm2 ?
 GOYES LIST07

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 LC(4) =eIVARG
 RTNSC
*
 LIST06 A=R1
 R3=A
* BCD line#s in R1 & R3
* D1 positioned to start of file
* Convert R1 & R3 to HEX
 LIST07 A=R1
 GOSBVL =DECHEX A(A) contains HEX
 R1=A
 A=R3
 GOSBVL =DECHEX
 R3=A
*
 AD1EX
 GOSBVL =FILSK+
* D1 at file length field
* C(A) at end of file
 D=C A File end
*
 D1=D1+ 5 Step over file length field
 CD1EX
 R2=C Ptr to SOD (Start of Data)
*
 A=R1
 GOSUB FRCRDn Find 1st record to list
 GONC LIST30 Record found?
*
 XM=0
 RTNCC
* D1 pointing to 1st record to list
 LIST30 D1=D1+ 4 Point to data
 AD1EX
 AR3EX A(A)=end rec#; R3=list start
 C=R2 SOD
 GOSUB FRCRDn
 CD1EX
 D1=C Copy D1 into C(A)
 GOC LIST40 C(A) at EOF or EOD
* Position past last record to list
 GOSUB RCDSKP
 LIST40 D0=(5) =S-R1-1 Write out for PRPSND
 DAT0=C A Save ptr past last recrd to list
 C=D A Save ptr to EOF
 RSTK=C
* Pop update address off GOSUB stack which was put there by POLL
 GOSBVL =POPUPD
* R3 contains list start/ S-R1-1 contains list end
 C=R3 Ptr to data start
 LIST50 D1=(5) =OUTBS

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 DAT1=C A Start of buffer for PRPSND
 D1=C
 C=RSTK
 D=C A Restore ptr to EOF
 GOSUB RCDSK+
* List B bytes, starting at D1; C(A) contains ptr to next record
 RO=C
 C=D A
 RSTK=C Save ptr to end of file
 GOSBVL =PRPSND
* C(A)=Ptr to next record
 GOSBVL =CK"ON" Allow ATTN to interrupt LIST
 D1=C
 D1=D1+ 4 Step over 2 bytes at record start
 CD1EX
 GONC LIST50 (B.E.T.)
*
```

```

 STITLE EDTEXT Keyword Parse

**
** Name: EDXTp - EDTEXT parse
**
** Category: STPARS
**
** Purpose:
** Parses EDTEXT statement
**
** Entry:
** P = 0
** D1 past tEDIT
**
** Exit:
** P = 0
**
** Calls: FSPECp, COMCKO, EOLCK, RESPTR, OUTBYT, EXPPAR,
** R3=D10, D1C=R3, GNXTICR, COMCK, CLRPRM
**
** Uses: A-C, D(15-5), D1,D0, R0-R3, S0-S3, S7, S10, XM
** FUNCDO, F-R0-0, F-R0-1
**
** Detail: EDTEXT <filename> [,<command string>]
**
** Algorithm:
** This statement is tokenized as a CALL:
** tEDTEXT tLITRL EDTEXT tPRMST <string> tCVAL ...
** ... <string> tCVAL tPRMEN
**
** Stk lvls: 6
**
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

**
** History:
**
** Date Programmer Modification
** ----- -
** 09/12/83 S.W. Wrote routine
** 10/26/83 S.W. Added check to disallow U.D.F.'s
** 11/16/83 S.W. Added code to disallow imbedded
** quotes in a command stream that is
** not a string expression.
**

*
*
*
 fspece GOVLNG =FSPECE
*
 EDXTp LCHEX F3545845544445C4
 GOSBVL =OUTC15 tLITRL EDTEXT tPRMST
* Call FSPECp
* Save D1/D0 in safe place - (R3 not reliable)
 CDOEX
 DO=(5) =FUNCRO
 DAT0=C A
 DO=DO+ 5
 AD1EX
 DAT0=A A
 DO=C
 D1=A
*
 GOSBVL =FSPECp
 GOC fspece Invalid file specifier?
* Legal file specifier - ensure it's followed by stmt end or comma
 GOSBVL =EOLCK
 GOC EDTP05 Stmt end found ?
 GOSUB comck+ Error exit if no comma
* Restore D1/D0
 EDTP05 DO=(5) =FUNCRO
 C=DAT0 A
 DO=DO+ 5
 A=DAT0 A
 DO=C
 D1=A
*
 GOSUB EDTPSB
* Optional ,<string expr>
 GOSBVL =COMCK
 GONC EDTP55 Comma not found?
 SI=1 9
 GOSUB EDTPSB

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 GONC EDtp57 (B.E.T.)
*
EDtp55 GOSUB EDtp60 Output another null & tCVAL
EDtp57 LC(2) =tPRMEN
 GOTO outbyt
*
EDtp60 GOSUB resptr
 GOSUB "out Output null string
 GOSUB "out
CVAL LC(2) =tCVAL
 GOTO outbyt
*
EDtpSB GOSBVL =R3=D10
 GOSBVL =CLRPRM Clear PRMCNT nibble
 GOSBVL =EXPPAR
 ?ST=1 3 Not a Legal string expr?
 GOYES EDtp15
* Valid string expression found & output
* Now check for & disallow user-defined functions
* D1 no longer needed - either restored from R3 or LEXPTR
 D1=(5) =PRMCNT
 A=DAT1 1
 ?A#0 P User-defined function found?
 GOYES EDtp15
 GOSUB resptr
cval GONC CVAL (B.E.T.)
*
EDtp15 GOSBVL =D1C=R3 Restore D1/D0
 D0=C
*
 GOSUB "out Output leading "
 GOSBVL =GNXTCR
 LCHEX 0D
 ?A=C B
 GOYES msgprm
*
EDtp20 LCASC "\"
 ?A=C B
 GOYES msgprm Don't allow imbedded quotes
 LC(1) "\"
 ?A=C B
 GOYES msgprm
*
 GOSBVL =OUT1T+
 A=DAT1 B
 LCHEX 0D
 ?A=C B
 GOYES EDtp25
 ?ST=1 9 Command string parse?
 GOYES EDtp20
* File specifier parse

```



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 LCASC \ \
 ?A=C B
 GOYES EDTp25
 LCASC \,\
 ?A#C B
 GOYES EDTp20
EDTp25 GOSUB "out
 GONC cval (B.E.T.)
*
"out LCASC \\" Output trailing "
outbyt GOVLNG =OUTBYT
*
resptr GOVLNG =RESPTR
*
numck GOVLNG =NUMCK
*
errx1 ST=1 4
syntxe GOVLNG =SYNTXe Syntax error
*
msgprm ST=1 4
 GOVLNG =IVPARE Invalid Parm
*
comck+ GOSBVL =COMCK+
 RTNC
 GONC syntxe (B.E.T.)
 STITLE REPLACE# Keyword Parse

**
** Name: REPLCp - REPLACE#, DELETE#, INSERT# Parse
**
** Category: STPARS
**
** Purpose:
** Parses REPLACE#, DELETE#, and INSERT# statements
**
** Entry:
** P = 0
** D1 past tREPLC, tINSRT, or tDELET
**
** Exit:
** P = 0
**
** Calls: #CK, NUMCK, COMCK0, OUT1TK, STRGCK
**
** Uses: A-C, D1,D0, S0-S3,S7,S8, R3
**
** Detail: REPLACE# <channel#>,<record#>;<string expr>
** INSERT# has same syntax as REPLACE#
**
** DELETE# <channel#>,<record#>

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

**
** Stk lvls: 5
**
** History:
**
** Date Programmer Modification
** -----
** 09/12/83 S.W. Wrote routine.
**

*
 DELEtp ST=1 8
*
 INSRtp
 REPLCp GOSBVL =#CK
 GOC errx1 No # ?
 D1=D1+ 2 Step over #
 GOSUB numck Parse channel no.
 GOSUB comck+ Output tCOMMA; error if not found
 GOSUB numck Parse record#
 ?ST=1 8 DELETE# parse?
 GOYES resptr
 LC(2) =tSEMIC
 ?A#C B
 GOYES syntxe
 GOSBVL =OUT1TK Output tSEMIC
 GOVLNG =STRNGP
*
*
 STITLE EDTEXT Keyword Decompile

**
** Name: EDTXtd - EDTEXT decompile
**
** Category: STDCMP
**
** Purpose:
** Decompile EDTEXT statement
**
** Entry:
** P = 0
** D1 past tEDTEXT
** D(A) contains end of available memory (AVMEME)
**
** Exit:
** P = 0
** via OUTEL1
**
** Calls: OUTBYT, EXPRDC

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

**
** Uses: A-C, R0-R2, D1,D0, S0,S3,S8,S10,S11
**
** Stk lvls: 5
**
** History:
**
** Date Programmer Modification
** -----
** 09/12/83 S.W. Wrote routine.
**

*
EDTXId
 D1=D1+ 16 Step tLITRL, \EDTEXT\, tPRMST
 GOSBVL =EXPRDC
 D1=D1+ 2 Step over tCVAL
 LCASC \,\
 GOSUB outbyt
 GOSBVL =EXPRDC
 D1=D1+ 4 Step over tCVAL, tPRMEN
 GOVLNG =OUTEL1
*

 STITLE REPLACE# Keyword Decompile

**
** Name: REPLCd - REPLACE#, INSERT#, DELETE# decompile
**
** Category: STDCMP
**
** Purpose:
** Decompiles REPLACE#, INSERT#, DELETE# statements
**
** Entry:
** P = 0
** D1 past tREPLC, tINSRT, or tDELET
** D(A) contains end of available memory (AVMEME)
**
** Exit:
** P = 0
** via FIXDC
**
** Calls: OUTBYT, EXPRDC
**
** Uses: A-C, D1,D0, R0-R2, S0,S3,S8,S10,S11
**
** Stk lvls: 5
**
** History:

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

**
** Date Programmer Modification
** ----- -
** 09/12/83 S.W. Wrote routine
**

*
DELETD
INSRTD
REPLCD LCASC \#\
 GOSUB outbyt
SCRLLD GOVLNG =FIXDC
*

**
** Name: POSFIL, POSTXT - Position Memory Text File to Record n
**
** Category: FILUTL
**
** Purpose:
** Position memory text file to given record. File is
** indicated by channel number (POSFIL), or file header
** (POSTXT).
**
** Entry:
** A(B) = Channel number (POSFIL only)
** A(A) = File header address (POSTXT only)
** R1(A) = Desired line number (first line = line 0)
** P = 0
**
** Exit:
** HARD ERROR EXIT if Channel # not open ("File Not Found")
** ELSE:
** sBADRC = Set if D1 is positioned at a bad record
** R1 = Entry condition.
** P = 0
** Carry clear: Desired record found
** D1 @ Abs address of start of line
** D0 @ Abs address of start of NEXT line
** R0 = Record number of last record in file
** B(S) = File protection nib from FIB
** D(A) = Abs address of EOF
** D(S) = Device code of file (POSFIL only)
** STMTD1 = Fib address (POSFIL only)
** Carry set: Desired record NOT found
** sEOF = Set if D1 is positioned at EOF as defined
** by file chain
** C(A) = Error code:
** File is not in memory (POSFIL only)

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

** File is private
** File is not TEXT file
** Channel number not found
** Premature EOF ("End of File")
** = 0 if requested line is not in file. D1 is
** positioned at EOD or EOF. D1, D, and R1
** exit conditions are valid.
**
** Calls: LOCFIL, FILSK+, FRCRDn
**
** Uses:.....
** Inclusive: A, B, C, D, R0, D0, D1, sEOF, sI/OBF, sBADRC
** STMTD1 (POSFIL only)
**
** Stk lvls: 3
**
** Algorithm:
** Locate file FIB, return error if channel # not found
** Verify that file is in memory
** Fetch file header
** Verify that file type is TEXT
** Verify that file is not private
** Compute file start, EOF
** Call FRCRDn to locate record
** Set up exit conditions
**
** History:
**
** Date Programmer Modification
** -----
** 09/16/83 F. Hall Designed and coded
**

sI/OBF EQU 10
*
** Locate file FIB, return error if channel # not found
** Verify that file is in memory
** Fetch file header
** Verify that file type is TEXT
** Verify that file is not private
** Compute file start, EOF
** Call FRCRDn to locate record
** Set up exit conditions
*
POSFIL GOSBVL =FIBADR Find FIB address (or error out)
 D1=D1+ =oPROTB Read protection nib
 A=DAT1 S . into B(S)
 B=A S
 GOSBVL =?PRFIL Private file?

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 RTNC . RTNYES
 D1=D1+ (oDEVcb)-(oPROTb) Read device code
 C=DAT1 S
 D=C S
 C=C+C S Error out if external file
 GOC POSF40
 D1=D1+ (oFBEGb)-(oDEVcb) Read file address
 A=DAT1 A
POSTXT D1=A Check file type
 D1=D1+ oFTYPb
 C=0 A
 C=DAT1 4
 C=C-1 A
 ?C#0 A Not TEXT file?
 GOYES POSF60
 D1=D1+ (oFLAGh)-(oFTYPb) Read protection nib
 GOSBVL =FILSK+ Compute EOF into D
 D=C A
 D1=D1+ 5 Compute data start into C
 CD1EX
 A=R1 Recall desired record #
 GOSUB FRCRDr Position to desired record
 RTNC Return if record found
 C=0 A
 ?ST=0 sBADRC Was the problem EOF or EOD?
 RTNYES
 LC(2) =eEOFIL "End of file"
 RTNC
 POSF40 LC(4) =eFACCS "Invalid access"
 RTNC
 POSF60 LC(4) =eFTYPE "Invalid File Type"
 RTNC

```

\*\*\*\*\*  
 \*\*\*\*\*

```

**
** Name: FRCRDn, FRCRDr - Find Given TEXT Record
**
** Category: FILUTL
**
** Purpose:
** Given TEXT file record #n (n>0), or #r (r>=0), it locates
** that record.
**
** Entry:
** A(A) = Desired record number. First record is
** 1 for FRCRDn, 0 for FRCRDr.
** C(A) = Abs address of file start of data
** D(A) = Abs address of EOF according to file chain
** P = 0
**

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

** Exit:
** R0 = Record number we are positioned at (FFFF if
** no records in file; end of data mark is not
** counted as a record)
** R1 = Desired record number (>=0)
** B(A) = Number of bytes of data in line according to
** line length header (FFFF if incomplete
** header in corrupt record)line
** sEOF = Set iff D1 is positioned at EOF according to
** file chain
** sBADRC = Set if current record extends beyond EOF.
** This indicates file is corrupt, can occur
** for two reasons:
** a) Only 1 byte left in file (line header
** requires 2 bytes)
** b) Line header present but record length
** extends beyond EOF
** P = 0
** Carry clr: Desired record found
** D1 @ Start of desired record
** D0 @ Start of NEXT record
** Carry set: Desired record NOT found
** D1 @ EOF or EOD mark, or start of last record in
** file if sBADRC set
**
** Calls: PRSREC
**
** Uses: A, B(A), C, R0, R1, D0, D1, sEOF
**
** Stk lvls: 2
**
** Algorithm:
** Save current record = -1
** Save current record address
** Clear sEOF, sBADRC
** 1.0 Parse record header, return "Not found" if no record
** Increment current record #
** If current record # = desired record number, then
** Return "Found"
** If sBADRC is clear, then
** Go to 1.0
** Else
** Return "Not found"
**
** History:
**
** Date Programmer Modification
** -----
** 09/14/83 S.W. Wrote routine.
**

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

\*\*\*\*\*

\*

|              |        |                                  |
|--------------|--------|----------------------------------|
| FRCRDn A=A-1 | A      | Convert line # to record #       |
| FRCRDr R1=A  |        | Save desired record number       |
| A=0          | W      | Save current record number = -1  |
| A=A-1        | A      | .                                |
| RO=A         |        | .                                |
| ST=0         | sEOF   | Clear status                     |
| ST=0         | sBADRC | .                                |
| FRCR10 GOSUB | PRSREC | Parse record                     |
| RTNC         |        | Return if no such record         |
| DO=C         |        | DO = start of next line          |
| A=RO         |        | Increment current record number  |
| A=A+1        | A      | .                                |
| RO=A         |        | .                                |
| C=R1         |        | Are we at desired record number? |
| ?A=C         | A      | .                                |
| GOYES        | rtnc   | . return "Found" if so           |
| ?ST=1        | sBADRC | Return "Not found" if bad record |
| RTNYES       |        |                                  |
| CDOEX        |        | C = start of next line           |
| GONC         | FRCR10 | Loop again (BET)                 |

\*\*\*\*\*

\*\*\*\*\*

\*\*

\*\* Name: PRSREC - Parse Text Record Header

\*\*

\*\*

\*\* Category: FILUTL

\*\*

\*\* Purpose:

\*\* Examine the line length header of a TEXT file record to  
 \*\* determine line length for normal record, or presence of  
 \*\* end-of-data (EOD) mark, or presence of end-of-file (EOF),  
 \*\* or absence of complete line header (corrupt file).

\*\*

\*\* Entry:

\*\* C(A) = Starting address of record  
 \*\* D(A) = EOF from file chain  
 \*\* P = 0

\*\*

\*\* Exit:

\*\* D1 @ Starting address of record  
 \*\* D(A) = EOF from file chain  
 \*\* P = 0

\*\* Carry clear: Record exists

\*\* B(A) = Number of bytes of data in record  
 \*\* C(A) = Starting address of next record  
 \*\* sBADRC = Set if line goes beyond EOF, else unchanged  
 \*\* Carry set: No record present (at EOF, EOD, or no header)



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```
** B(A) = 0 if at EOF or EOD
** = -1 if no line length header present
** sBADRC = Set if no header present, else unchanged
** sEOF = Set if at EOF, else unchanged
**
** Calls: SWPBYT
**
** Uses.....
** Inclusive: A, B(A), C, D1, sEOF, sBADRC
**
** Stk lvls: 1
**
** Algorithm:
** Set #Bytes = 0
** If current position = EOF then
** Set sEOF
** Return "Not found"
** If line header is incomplete, then
** Set sBADRC
** Set #Bytes = -1
** Return "Not found"
** If line header = EOD mark (FFFF), then
** Return "Not found"
** Compute #Bytes in line
** Compute start of next line
** If start of next line > EOF, then
** Set sBADRC
** Return "Found"
**
** History:
**
** Date Programmer Modification
** -----
** 09/19/83 FH Adapted from code by SW
**

PRSR B=0 A Preset #Bytes = 0
 D1=C D1 = start of line
 ?C>=D A At EOF?
 GOYES PRSR10
 D1=D1+ 4 Check if line header present
 CD1EX
 ?C>D A Line header missing?
 GOYES PRSR20
 A=DAT1 4 Read line header
 GOSUB swpbyt Compute B = #Bytes of data
 P= 3
 B=A WP
 C=B A Test for EOF, compute #Bytes
 B=B+1 WP
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 P= 0
 RTNC Return "Not found" if EOD
 BCEX A Restore B = #Bytes, C = #Bytes+1
 CSRB Round to even #bytes (LIF stndrd)
 C=C+1 A Compute total # nibs in record
 C=C+C A . #bytes + 2 for header
 C=C+C A . #nibs + 4 for header
 AD1EX Compute C = start of next line
 D1=A .
 C=A+C A
 ?C<=D A NOT corrupt record?
 GOYES rtncc
 ST=1 sBADRC Set "Bad record"
 rtncc RTNCC Return "Found"
*
 PRSR10 ST=1 sEOF Set EOF flag
 RTNSC Return "Not found"
*
 PRSR20 B=B-1 A Set #bytes = -1
 ST=1 sBADRC Set "Bad record"
 RTNSC Return "Not found"
*

**
** Name: RCDSKP - Record Skip
**
** Category: FILUTL
**
** Purpose:
** Skips over a TEXT file record.
**
** Entry:
** D1 @ Record start (prior to 2 byte length field)
** D(A) = EOF from file chain
** P = 0
**
** Exit:
** P = 0
** Carry clr =>
** D1 @ Current record first character (after
** 2 byte length field)
** B(A) = Number of bytes of data in record
** C(A) = Address of next record
** sEOF = 0
** sBADRC = Set iff current record extends beyond EOF
** Carry set => No record to skip
** D1 = Entry condition, which points either at EOF,
** end of data (FFFF), or at an incomplete
** line header
** sEOF = Set iff D1 points to EOF

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

** sBADRC = Set iff header incomplete, else 0
**
** Calls: PRSREC
**
** Uses: A, B(A), C(A), D1
**
** Stk lvls: 2
**
** History:
**
** Date Programmer Modification
** -----
** 09/14/83 SW Wrote routine.
** 09/19/83 FH Adapted for FILESZR.
**

=RCDSK+ D1=D1- 4 Point to start of record
=RCDSKP CD1EX C = start of line
 ST=0 sEOF Preset status
 ST=0 sBADRC .
 GOSUB PRSREC Parse record
 RTNC Return if no record to skip
 D1=D1+ 4 Move to first character of record
 RTNCC
 STITLE SEARCH# Function Execute
*10 CALL SC @ END
*20 SUB SC
*30 DIM S9$[96],S$[96],T$[96],T1$[96]
*40 DATA \^.@$
*50 DATA ABC
*60 R=0
*70 READ S9$ @ DISP "Pattern: ";S9$
*80 ON ERROR GOTO 270
*90 READ T$ @ DISP "Target: ";T$
*100 IF S9$[LEN(S9$)]="\ " AND S9$[LEN(S9$)-1]#"\ " THEN
* S9$=S9$[1,LEN(S9$)-1]
*110 S$=S9$ @ C$=S$[1,1] @ I=1 @ A0=0 @ R=0
*120 IF C$="" THEN 270
*125 IF C$<>"\" THEN 190
*127 IF S$[2]#"$" THEN 140
*128 IF A0 AND T$<>" " OR C$="@" OR C$="$" THEN 240
*130 IF C$<>"\" THEN 190
*140 IF S$[2,2]="\" THEN 240
*150 S$=S$[2] @ C$=S$[1,1]
*160 R=NOT R
*170 IF C$="^" AND R AND NOT A0 THEN
* A0=1 @ S$=S$[2] @ C$=S$[1,1] @ GOTO 130
*190 IF R AND (C$="." OR C$="@" OR C$="$") OR C$="\ " THEN 240
*200 IF C$="" THEN T1$="" @ GOTO 280
*210 FOR I=1 TO LEN(T$) @ IF C$=T$[I,1] THEN 240

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```
*220 IF A0 THEN 90
*230 NEXT I @ GOTO 90
*240 T1$=T$[I] @ CALL SCN(S$,T1$,(R),M)
*250 IF M THEN 280
*260 I=I+1 @ IF NOT A0 AND I<=LEN(T$) THEN 190
*270 DISP "not found" @ GOTO 300
*280 DISP "found: ";T1$
*290 DISP "Start: ";I;" Length: ";LEN(T1$)
*300 END SUB
*310 SUB SCN(S$,T$,R,M)
*320 DISP S$;" ";T$;R
*330 DIM S1$[96],T1$[96]
*340 S1=1 @ T1=1 @ S3=LEN(S$) @ T3=LEN(T$)
*350 C$=S$[S1,S1]
*360 IF C$="" THEN T$="" @ GOTO 640
*370 IF C$#"\" THEN 405
*380 S1=S1+1 @ C$=S$[S1,S1]
*390 IF C$="" THEN T1=T1-1 @ GOTO 'EXIT'
*400 IF C$#"\" THEN R=NOT R
*405 IF NOT R THEN 440
*410 IF C$="." THEN 475
*420 IF C$="@" THEN S1=S1+1 @ GOTO 530
*430 IF S$[S1]="$" THEN 510
*440 IF C$#T$[T1,T1] THEN 500
*450 S1=S1+1 @ IF S1>S3 THEN
* BEEP 0 @ 'EXIT': T$=T$[1,T1] @ GOTO 640
*460 T1=T1+1 @ IF T1>T3 THEN 480
*470 GOTO 350
*475 IF T1>T3 THEN 500 ELSE 450
*480 IF R AND S$[S1,S1]="@" THEN S1=S1+1 @ GOTO 480
*485 IF R AND S$[S1]="$" THEN 640
*490 IF NOT R AND S$[S1]#"\" THEN R=1 @ S1=S1+1 @ GOTO 480
*500 M=0 @ GOTO 650
*510 IF T1>T3 THEN 'EXIT' ELSE 500
*520 T1=T1+1 @ S1=S1+1 @ IF T1>T3 THEN 500
*530 IF S1>S3 THEN 640
*540 IF NOT R THEN 580
*550 IF S$[S1,S1]="@" THEN S1=S1+1 @ GOTO 530
*560 IF S$[S1,S1]="." THEN 520
*570 IF S$[S1]="$" THEN 640
*580 IF S$[S1,S1]#"\" THEN 610
*590 IF S$[S1,S1]=T$[T3,T3] THEN 610
*600 T3=T3-1 @ IF T3<T1 THEN 500 ELSE 580
*610 S1$=S$[S1] @ T1$=T$[T3]
*620 CALL SCN(S1$,T1$,(R),M) @ IF NOT M THEN 600
*630 T$=T$[1,T3-1]&T1$
*640 M=1
*650 END SUB
 EJECT
RegExp EQU 0
TopLvl EQU 7
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

Short EQU 6
Match EQU 9
First EQU 5
Anchor EQU 11
BackSl EQU 92 Backslash character
*
* 2F89B FUNCRO -- Start of pattern
* 2F8A0 FUNCRO+5 -- End line #
* 2F8A5 FUNCRO+10 -- Start line # (Current Line #)
* 2F8AA FUNCRO+15 -- Start column # - 1
* 2F8AF FUNCRO+20 -- Temp save of STMTD1, End of File
* 2F8B4 FUNCRO+25 -- Current record pointer
* 2F8B9 FUNCRO-2 -- Start of target
* 2F8C0 FUNCRO -- PC
pophex GOSUB poplr
 D1=D1+ 16
fltdh GOVLNG =FLTDH
*
NIBHEX 8 5th parm numeric -- channel #
NIBHEX 8 4th parm numeric -- end line
NIBHEX 8 3rd parm numeric -- start line
NIBHEX 8 2nd parm numeric -- start column
NIBHEX 4 1st parm string -- search string
NIBHEX 55 Requires 5 parameters
SEARCH CDOEX
 DO=(5) =FUNCRO1
 DAT0=C A Save DO in FUNCRO0
 GOSUB pophex
 R0=A R0=Channel #
 GOSUB pophex
 DO=(2) (=FUNCRO)+5
 DAT0=A A (FUNCRO+5)=end line #
 GOSUB pophex
 DO=DO+ 5
 DAT0=A A (FUNCRO+10)=start line#
 R1=A Save start line# in R1 for POSFIL
 GOSUB pophex
 A=A-1 A Is column = zero?
 GONC SEAR05 No, then okay
 A=0 A Yes, then treat it like 1
SEAR05 ST=0 First
 DO=DO+ 5
 DAT0=A A (FUNCRO+15)=start column-1
 A=A-1 A Is column = one?
 GONC SEAR10 No, then don't set First flag
 ST=1 First Yes, then enable anchoring
SEAR10 CD1EX
 R2=C R2=stack pointer
 DO=DO+ 5
 D1=(5) =STMTD1
 C=DAT1 A

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

|        |                                          |                                         |
|--------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
|        | DAT0=C A                                 | (FUNCRO+20)=STMTD1                      |
|        | A=R0                                     | Recall channel #                        |
|        | GOSUB POSFIL                             | Find start line #                       |
|        | GOC err?                                 |                                         |
|        | D0=(5) (=FUNCRO)+20                      |                                         |
|        | C=DAT0 A                                 | Recall value for STMTD1                 |
|        | D0=(2) =STMTD1                           |                                         |
|        | DAT0=C A                                 | Restore STMTD1                          |
|        | C=D A                                    |                                         |
|        | D0=(2) (=FUNCRO)+20                      |                                         |
|        | DAT0=C A                                 | (FUNCRO+20)=End of file                 |
|        | C=R2                                     | Recall stack pointer                    |
|        | CD1EX                                    | D1=stack pointer                        |
|        | D0=D0+ 5                                 |                                         |
|        | DAT0=C A                                 | (FUNCRO+25)=Current record pointer      |
|        | GOSUB SCNPRP                             | Prepare to SCAN                         |
|        | GOC nomtch                               |                                         |
|        | D0=(5) (=FUNCRO)+10                      | Point to FUNCRO+10                      |
|        | C=DAT0 A                                 | Read Current record #                   |
|        | GONC loop                                | (B.E.T.) Start loop                     |
| mferr  |                                          |                                         |
| badrec | GOTO bserr                               |                                         |
| err?   | ?C#0 A                                   |                                         |
|        | GOYES mferr                              |                                         |
|        | C=R2                                     | Recall stack pointer                    |
|        | D1=C                                     |                                         |
|        | GOSBVL =POPMTH                           | Discard pattern string from stack       |
|        | AD1EX                                    | A(A)=Stack pointer                      |
|        | ST=0 Short                               |                                         |
|        | R2=A                                     |                                         |
| nomtch | C=0 W                                    |                                         |
|        | GOTO return                              | Return result = 0                       |
| *      |                                          |                                         |
| poplr  | GOVLNG =POP1R                            |                                         |
| *      |                                          |                                         |
| loop   | C(A)=Current record number, D0=FUNCRO+10 |                                         |
|        | D0=D0- 5                                 | Point to FUNCRO+5                       |
|        | A=DAT0 A                                 | Read End record #                       |
|        | ?A<C A                                   | Past last record to be searched?        |
|        | GOYES nomtch                             | Yes, then report no match               |
|        | D0=D0+ 15                                | Point to FUNCRO+20                      |
|        | C=DAT0 A                                 | Read end of file                        |
|        | D=C A                                    | D=End of file                           |
|        | D0=D0+ 5                                 | Point to FUNCRO+25                      |
|        | C=DAT0 A                                 | Read current record pointer             |
|        | GOSUB PRSREC                             | Parse record length                     |
|        | GOC nomtch                               | If EOF then report no match             |
|        | ?ST=1 sBADRC                             | Pointing at a bad record                |
|        | GOYES badrec                             | Yes, then error out                     |
|        | DAT0=C A                                 | Update current record pointer to nxt ?? |
|        | D1=D1+ 4                                 | Point past record length                |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

|                            |  |                                                                          |
|----------------------------|--|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CD1EX                      |  | C=Start of target                                                        |
| D0=D0+ 5                   |  | Point to FUNCRO+30                                                       |
| DAT0=C A                   |  | Remember start of target                                                 |
| D=C A                      |  | D points to start of target                                              |
| C=C+B A                    |  |                                                                          |
| C=C+B A                    |  | Point past end of data in record                                         |
| R3=C                       |  | R3 points to end of target                                               |
| D0=D0- 15                  |  | Point to FUNCRO+15                                                       |
| ?ST=0 First                |  | Is this the first record?                                                |
| GOYES SEAR30               |  | No, then don't skip any columns                                          |
| C=DAT0 A                   |  | Read start column - 1                                                    |
| ?B<=C A                    |  | Start column > last column?                                              |
| GOYES nxtrec               |  | Yes, then skip to next record                                            |
| D=D+C A                    |  |                                                                          |
| D=D+C A                    |  | Point to starting column in target                                       |
| SEAR30 D0=D0- 15           |  | Point to FUNCRO                                                          |
| C=DAT0 A                   |  | Read pointer to start of pattern                                         |
| D1=C                       |  | Free space starts here                                                   |
| B=C A                      |  | B(A)=Pointer to start of pattern                                         |
| GOSUB SCAN                 |  | Scan for pattern in target                                               |
| GONC fndatc                |  | If found, then return result                                             |
| nxtrec ST=0 First          |  | No longer First                                                          |
| D0=(5) (=FUNCRO)+10        |  | Point to FUNCRO+10                                                       |
| C=DAT0 A                   |  | Read current record number                                               |
| C=C+1 A                    |  | Increment current record number                                          |
| DAT0=C A                   |  | Update current record number                                             |
| GOTO loop                  |  | Loop back to check another record                                        |
| *****                      |  |                                                                          |
| fndatc D0=(5) (=FUNCRO)+10 |  | Point to FUNCRO+10                                                       |
| C=0 W                      |  |                                                                          |
| C=DAT0 A                   |  | Read current record number                                               |
| GOSUB hxdcw                |  | Convert to decimal                                                       |
| SEIHEX                     |  |                                                                          |
| R3=C                       |  | Save record number                                                       |
| D0=(2) (=FUNCRO)+30        |  | Point to FUNCRO+30                                                       |
| C=0 W                      |  |                                                                          |
| C=DAT0 A                   |  | Read start of target                                                     |
| CDEX A                     |  | C(A)=Start of match,D(A)=Start of tar??                                  |
| A=R1                       |  |                                                                          |
| D=C-D A                    |  | D(A)=First char of match                                                 |
| C=A-C A                    |  | C(W)=Length of match                                                     |
| CSRB                       |  | C(W)=Length of match in bytes                                            |
| GOSUB hxdcw                |  | Convert to decimal                                                       |
| SEIHEX                     |  |                                                                          |
| CDEX A                     |  | D(A)=Length of match in decimal,<br>C(A)=First char of match in hex nibs |
| CSRB                       |  | C(W)=First char of match in bytes                                        |
| C=C+1 A                    |  | Convert to option base 1                                                 |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 GOSUB hxdcw Convert to decimal
 C=R3 Recall record number
 CSL W
 CSL W
 CSL W Make room for start col
 C=A X Copy in start col
 CSL W
 CSL W
 CSL W Make room for match length
 LCHEX 008 Initial exponent before normalization
 CDEX X Copy in match length, D(X)=Exponent
 P= 14
NRM00 CSL W Shift one digit
 D=D-1 X Decrement exponent
 ?C=0 P Is number normalized?
 GOYES NRM00 No, then keep shifting
 C=D X Yes, then copy exponent back
 SEIHEX
return A=R2
 ?ST=0 Short
 GOYES retrn1
 A=A+1 A
 A=A+1 A
retrn1 D1=A
 D1=D1- 16
 DAT1=C W
 D0=(5) =FUNCD1
 A=DAT0 A
 D0=A
 GOLONG expr
*
*
* SCNPRP -- Pops the pattern string off stack (D1 points to string??
* Exit: R2 points to end of string
* Short set iff R2 has been adjusted because
* of a trailing backslash
* R0 is (AVMEMS)+21
* D1 and (FUNCRO) = Start of pattern
* Carry set iff pattern was "" or "\"
*
*
* Uses: A(A),C(A),D0,R2,ST(Short)
*
SCNPRP ST=0 Short
 GOSBVL =REVPOP Reverses string and pops it
 CD1EX
 D1=C
 D0=(5) =FUNCRO
 DAT0=C A FUNCRO=Start of pattern
 C=C+A A
 R2=C R2=End of pattern

```



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

|                       |                                                         |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| ?A=0    A             | Is pattern the null string?                             |
| RTNYES                | Yes, then no match found                                |
| D0=C                  |                                                         |
| D0=D0- 2              |                                                         |
| A=DAT0 B              | Read last char of pattern                               |
| LC(2) BackS1          |                                                         |
| ?A#C    B             | Is the last char a backslash?                           |
| GOYES SCNP10          | No, then skip                                           |
| D0=D0- 2              | Back up to next to last char                            |
| AD1EX                 |                                                         |
| D1=A                  | A=Start of pattern                                      |
| CD0EX                 | C=End of pattern - 4                                    |
| ?A>=C    A            | Is the string at least 2 chars?                         |
| RTNYES                | No, then no match found ("\" is illeg??                 |
| D0=C                  | Point to penultimate char                               |
| A=DAT0 B              | Read penultimate char                                   |
| LC(2) BackS1          |                                                         |
| ?A=C    B             | Is it a backslash?                                      |
| GOYES SCNP10          | Yes, then leave pattern alone                           |
| C=R2                  | No, then delete trailing backslash                      |
| C=C-1    A            |                                                         |
| C=C-1    A            |                                                         |
| R2=C                  | Shorten pattern to eliminate backslash                  |
| ST=1    Short         | Remember that it was shortened                          |
| SCNP10 D0=(5) =AVMEMS |                                                         |
| A=DAT0 A              |                                                         |
| C=0    A              |                                                         |
| LC(2) 21              |                                                         |
| A=A+C    A            | Calculate (AVMEMS)+21 for available memory checks later |
| R0=A                  | Save this in R0                                         |
| RTNCC                 |                                                         |

```

*
* SCAN is the search driver, it will try to find the pattern strin??-
* in the specified target string
* Entry: B(A) = Start of pattern
* R2 = End of pattern
* D(A) = Start of target
* R3 = End of target
* D1 = stack pointer (high end of available memory)
* R0 = (AVMEMS)+21
* First should be set only if anchor should cause
* no match (ie first line of search and not first
* column in target line)
* Exit: No match found: Carry set
* Match found: Carry clear and
* D(A) = Start of match
* R1 = End of match
*

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

*
SCAN ST=0 Anchor Not anchored to start of line
 ST=0 RegExp Regular expressions off
 GOSUB PATCHR Get first pattern character
 LC(2) BackSl
 ?A#C B Is it a backslash?
 GOYES L190j No, then skip
L125.1 D0=D0+ 2 Point to second character
 A=DAT0 B Read second character
*
* There must be a second character
* since SCNPRP would not have allowed
* just backslash.
 LCASC \$\
 ?A#C B Is second character a $?
 GOYES L140 No, then continue
 D0=D0+ 2
 AD0EX
 C=R2
 ?A#C B Is second character the last?
 GOYES L140 No, then okay
 C=R3 Yes, then "\$" returns .LLL000
 where LLL is the target string
 length plus 1.
 ?ST=0 Anchor Are we anchored?
 GOYES L125.2 No, then match eol
 ?C#D A Is start = end?
 RTNYES No, then \$ doesn't match
L125.2 D=C A Start of match = Past end of string
 End is same
MATCH+ R1=C Point D1 to end of string
 RTNCC Return indicating success
L130 GOSUB PATCH+ Move to next char and read it
 LC(2) BackSl
L190j ?A#C B Is it a backslash?
 GOYES L190 No, then skip checking special chars
L140 A=B A
 D0=A
 D0=D0+ 2 Point to next char (temporarily)
 A=DAT0 B Read next char
 LC(2) BackSl
 ?A=C B Is it a second backslash?
 GOYES L240j Yes, then call SCANSB
L150 B=B+1 A Move to next character
 B=B+1 A
L160 GOSUB RETOGL Toggle regular expressions flag
L170 ?ST=0 RegExp Are regular expressions active?
 GOYES L190.2 No, then skip looking for special cha??
 ?ST=1 Anchor Has anchor been specified already?
 GOYES L190 Yes, then treat ^ like any other char
 GOSUB PATCHR Get current pattern char
 LCASC \$\ No, then check for ^

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

|        |              |                                                                    |
|--------|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | ?A#C B       | Is it an ^?                                                        |
|        | GOYES L190.1 | No, then check for other special char??                            |
|        | ?ST=1 First  | Is anchoring allowed?                                              |
|        | RTNYES       | No, then return indicating no match                                |
|        | ST=0 RegExp  | Clear regular expression flag, it wil??<br>be turned back on later |
|        | ST=1 Anchor  | Now anchored                                                       |
|        | GOTO L125.1  | Loop back to start                                                 |
| L190   | ?ST=0 RegExp | Are regular expressions active?                                    |
|        | GOYES L190.2 | No, then skip checking for spec. char??                            |
|        | GOSUB PATCHR | Get current pattern string                                         |
| L190.1 | LCASC \. \   |                                                                    |
|        | ?A=C B       | Is current char a .?                                               |
|        | GOYES L240   | Yes, then call SCANSB                                              |
|        | LC(1) \\$\   |                                                                    |
|        | ?A=C B       | Is it a \$?                                                        |
|        | GOYES L240   | Yes, then call SCANSB                                              |
|        | LC(2) \@ \   |                                                                    |
| L240j  | ?A=C B       | Is it an @?                                                        |
|        | GOYES L240   | Yes, then call SCANSB                                              |
| L190.2 | GOSUB PATCHR | Read current pattern char                                          |
|        | LC(2) Backsl |                                                                    |
|        | ?A=C B       | Is it a backslash?                                                 |
|        | GOYES L240   | Yes, then call SCANSB                                              |
| L200   | C=R2         | Recall ptr to end of pattern                                       |
|        | ?B<C A       | At end of pattern?                                                 |
|        | GOYES L210   | No, then continue looking                                          |
|        | C=D A        | Yes, then match up to this point                                   |
|        | GOTO MATCH+  |                                                                    |
| L210   | C=R3         | Recall ptr to end of target                                        |
|        | ?C<=D A      | At end of target?                                                  |
|        | RTNYES       | Yes, then return indicating no match                               |
|        | C=D A        |                                                                    |
|        | D0=C         | Point to target character                                          |
|        | C=DAT0 B     | Read target character                                              |
|        | ?A=C B       | Does pattern match target char?                                    |
|        | GOYES L240   | Yes, then call SCANSB                                              |
|        | ?ST=1 Anchor | No, then is pattern anchored?                                      |
|        | RTNYES       | Yes, then return indicating no match                               |
|        | D=D+1 A      | No, then move to next target characte??                            |
|        | D=D+1 A      |                                                                    |
|        | GOTO L210    | See if this target char matches patte??                            |
| L240   | ST=1 TopLvl  | Calling SCANSB from top level                                      |
|        | GOSUB SCANSB |                                                                    |
|        | GOC RTNCC    | Return if match found                                              |
|        | ?ST=1 Anchor | Is anchor set?                                                     |
|        | RTNYES       | Yes, then return indicating no match                               |
|        | D=D+1 A      |                                                                    |
|        | D=D+1 A      | No, then move to next target characte??                            |
|        | C=R3         | Recall ptr to end of target string                                 |
|        | ?C<=D A      | At end of target?                                                  |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 RTNYES Yes, then return indicating no match
 GONC L190 (B.E.T.) No, then see if next char ma??
RTNCC RTNCC
*
* SCANSB is a recursive subroutine.
*
* Register usage:
* E ST(TopLvl) = Set if called at top level
* E R0 = (AVMEMS)+21
* S R1 = Pointer past end of matched string. (T3)
* E R2 = Pointer past end of search string.
* E R3 = Pointer past end of target string.
* E S B = Current position in search string. (S1)
* E S D = Current position in target string. (T1+T2)
* E D1 = Stack pointer.
* E S RSTK = Return address
* E S RegExp = Set iff regular expressions are active
*
* In the table above, lines with an E are entry conditions
* and lines with an S are stacked for each recursion
*
* Exit:
* Match(S9) and Carry set iff match found
* R1 = Points past match string (if matched)
* Not changed if no match found
* ST(TopLvl) clear
*
* Uses: A,C,R1,D0,S0,S7,S9,S10,S11,available memory
*
*
*
*
memerr GOVLNG =MEMERR Report insufficient memory
SCANSB
 CD1EX
 D1=C Copy stack pointer to C
 A=R0 Recall limit of avail mem
 ?A>C A Enough memory?
 GOYES memerr No, then error
 D1=D1- 5
 C=R1
 DAT1=C A 1 <- R1
 D1=D1- 5
 C=B A
 DAT1=C A 2 <- B(A)
 D1=D1- 5
 C=D A
 DAT1=C A 3 <- D(A)
 ?ST=1 TopLvl
 GOYES SCNSB1
 C=R1

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

|        |        |                                    |                                      |
|--------|--------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
|        | D=C    | A                                  |                                      |
|        | D=D-1  | A                                  |                                      |
|        | D=D-1  | A                                  | D(A)=Ptr to start of target for sub  |
| SCNSB1 | ST=0   | TopLvl                             |                                      |
|        | D1=D1- | 5                                  |                                      |
|        | C=RSTK |                                    |                                      |
|        | DAT1=C | A                                  | 4 <- RSTK                            |
|        | D1=D1- | 1                                  |                                      |
|        | C=ST   |                                    |                                      |
|        | DAT1=C | P                                  | 5 <- RegExp (S0)                     |
| L340   | C=R3   |                                    |                                      |
|        | R1=C   |                                    | Copy end of target to end of match   |
| L350   |        |                                    |                                      |
| L360   | C=R2   |                                    | Recall end of pattern                |
|        | ?C>B   | A                                  | At end of pattern string?            |
|        | GOYES  | L370                               | No, then continue                    |
|        | C=D    | A                                  | Yes, then target up to this point... |
|        | R1=C   |                                    | ...has been matched                  |
|        | GOTO   | L640                               | Return and indicate success          |
| *      |        |                                    |                                      |
| PATCH+ | B=B+1  | A                                  | Increment pattern pointer            |
|        | B=B+1  | A                                  |                                      |
| PATCHR | A=B    | A                                  | Copy pattern pointer to A            |
|        | D0=A   |                                    | Then to D0                           |
|        | A=DAT0 | B                                  | Read the pattern character           |
|        | RINCC  |                                    | Return                               |
| *      |        |                                    |                                      |
| *      | RETOGL | Toggles regular expressions on/off |                                      |
| RETOGL | ?ST=1  | RegExp                             | Is the RegExp bit set now?           |
|        | GOYES  | RETOG0                             | Yes, then clear it                   |
|        | ST=1   | RegExp                             | No, then set it                      |
|        | RTN    |                                    | Return                               |
| RETOG0 | ST=0   | RegExp                             | Clear RegExp bit                     |
|        | RINCC  |                                    | Return                               |
| *      |        |                                    |                                      |
| L370   | GOSUB  | PATCHR                             | Get the current pattern char         |
|        | LC(2)  | BackS1                             |                                      |
|        | ?A#C   | B                                  | Is it a backslash?                   |
|        | GOYES  | L405                               | No, then continue                    |
| L380   | GOSUB  | PATCH+                             | Skip backslash and read next char    |
| L390   | C=R2   |                                    | Recall end of pattern                |
|        | ?C>B   | A                                  | At end of pattern?                   |
|        | GOYES  | L400                               | No, then continue                    |
|        | D=D-1  | A                                  | Yes, then have matched               |
|        | D=D-1  | A                                  | not counting current target char     |
|        | GOTO   | EXIT                               | Return indicating match              |
| *      |        |                                    |                                      |
| L400   | LC(2)  | BackS1                             |                                      |
|        | ?A=C   | B                                  | Is it a second backslash?            |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

|      |        |        |                                              |
|------|--------|--------|----------------------------------------------|
|      | GOYES  | L405   | Yes, then don't toggle RegExp                |
|      | GOSUB  | RETOGL | No, then toggle RegExp                       |
| L405 | ?ST=0  | RegExp | Are regular expressions active?              |
|      | GOYES  | L440   | No, then skip looking for special characters |
| L410 | LCASC  | \\.\\  |                                              |
|      | ?A#C   | B      | Is it a .?                                   |
|      | GOYES  | L420   | No, then continue                            |
| L475 | C=R1   |        | Yes, then recall end of target               |
|      | ?D<C   | A      | Is there a character to skip?                |
|      | GOYES  | L450   | Yes, then okay                               |
|      | GOTO   | L500   | No, then indicate match not found            |
| *    |        |        |                                              |
| L420 | LCASC  | \\@\\  |                                              |
|      | ?A#C   | B      | Is it an @?                                  |
|      | GOYES  | L430   | No, then continue                            |
|      | GOTO   | L550.1 | Yes, then process it                         |
| L430 | LCASC  | \\\$\\ |                                              |
|      | ?A#C   | B      | Is it a \$?                                  |
|      | GOYES  | L440   | No, then continue                            |
|      | C=R1   |        | Recall end of target                         |
|      | ?D<C   | A      | At end of target string?                     |
|      | GOYES  | L500   | No, then report failure                      |
|      | GOTO   | EXIT   | Yes, then report success                     |
| *    |        |        |                                              |
| L440 | C=D    | A      | Copy target string pointer to C              |
|      | D0=C   |        | then to D0                                   |
|      | C=DAT0 | B      | Read current target char                     |
|      | ?A=C   | B      | Does this match pattern char?                |
|      | GOYES  | L450   | Yes, then advance to next                    |
|      |        |        | No, then report failure                      |
| L500 | ST=0   | Match  | Indicate match not found                     |
|      | GOTO   | SCNRTN | Return                                       |
| *    |        |        |                                              |
| L450 | B=B+1  | A      | Advance pattern ptr to next char             |
|      | B=B+1  | A      |                                              |
|      | C=R2   |        | Recall end of pattern                        |
|      | ?B<C   | A      | Past end of pattern?                         |
|      | GOYES  | L460   | No, then continue                            |
| EXIT | C=D    | A      | Copy current char ptr to C                   |
|      | C=C+1  | A      |                                              |
|      | C=C+1  | A      | Move past current char                       |
|      | R1=C   |        | Set this as end of match                     |
| L640 | ST=1   | Match  | Indicate match found                         |
|      | GOTO   | SCNRTN | Return                                       |
| *    |        |        |                                              |
| L460 | D=D+1  | A      | Advance target pointer                       |
|      | D=D+1  | A      |                                              |
|      | C=R1   |        | Recall end of target                         |
|      | ?D>=C  | A      | Past end of target?                          |
|      | GOYES  | L480   | Yes, then check for end of pattern           |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

|        |       |        |                                                         |
|--------|-------|--------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| *      | GOTO  | L350   | No, then continue processing pattern                    |
| L480   | GOSUB | PATCHR | Recall current pattern character                        |
|        | B=B+1 | A      | Increment to next pattern char                          |
|        | B=B+1 | A      |                                                         |
|        | ?ST=0 | RegExp | Are regular expressions active?                         |
|        | GOYES | L490NR | No, then check for \                                    |
|        | LCASC | \@\\   |                                                         |
|        | ?A#C  | B      | Is it an @?                                             |
|        | GOYES | L480.2 | No, then look for \$                                    |
|        | C=R2  |        | Recall ptr to start of pattern                          |
|        | ?B>=C | A      | At end of pattern?                                      |
|        | GOYES | L640   | Yes, then report success                                |
|        | GONC  | L480   | (B.E.T.) No, then loop back to check for more @'s or \$ |
| L480.2 | LCASC | \\\$\\ | Yes, then check for \$                                  |
|        | ?A#C  | B      | Is it a \$?                                             |
|        | GOYES | L500   | No, then no match found                                 |
|        | C=R2  |        | Yes, then check if its the end of pat??                 |
|        | ?B>=C | A      | At end of pattern?                                      |
|        | GOYES | L640   | Yes, then report success                                |
|        | GONC  | L500   | target string matches                                   |
|        |       |        | (B.E.T.) No, then no match found                        |
| *      |       |        |                                                         |
| L490NR | LC(2) | BackS1 | Check first for backslash                               |
|        | ?A#C  | B      | Is it a backslash?                                      |
|        | GOYES | L500   | No, then report no match found                          |
|        | ST=1  | RegExp | Yes, then turn on regular expressions                   |
|        | GONC  | L480   | (B.E.T.) Now check if @ or \$ follows                   |
| *      |       |        |                                                         |
| L520   | D=D+1 | A      | Increment target ptr to next char                       |
|        | D=D+1 | A      |                                                         |
|        | C=R1  |        | Recall end of target                                    |
|        | ?D>=C | A      | Past end of target?                                     |
|        | GOYES | L500j  | Yes, then no match found                                |
| L550.1 | B=B+1 | A      | Increment pattern ptr to next char                      |
|        | B=B+1 | A      |                                                         |
| L530   | C=R2  |        | Recall end of pattern                                   |
|        | ?B>=C | A      | Past end of pattern?                                    |
|        | GOYES | L640   | Yes, then report match                                  |
| L540   | ?ST=0 | RegExp | Are regular expressions active?                         |
|        | GOYES | L580   | No, then skip checking for special ch??                 |
| L550   | GOSUB | PATCHR | Recall current pattern character                        |
|        | LCASC | \@\\   |                                                         |
|        | ?A#C  | B      | Is it an @?                                             |
|        | GOYES | L560   | No, then continue                                       |
|        | GONC  | L550.1 | Yes, then ignore it                                     |
|        |       |        | (Two @'s in a row are same as one).                     |
| *      |       |        |                                                         |
| L560   | LCASC | \\.\\  |                                                         |
|        | ?A=C  | B      | Is it a .?                                              |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

|        |          |        |                                         |
|--------|----------|--------|-----------------------------------------|
|        | GOYES    | L520   | Yes, then skip a target char            |
| L570   | LCASC    | \\\$\\ |                                         |
|        | ?A#C     | B      | Is it a \$?                             |
|        | GOYES    | L580.1 | No, then continue                       |
|        | C=R2     |        | Yes, then recall end of pattern         |
|        | C=C-1    | A      | Calculate addr of last char in patter?? |
|        | C=C-1    | A      |                                         |
|        | ?B<C     | A      | Is this the last char in pattern?       |
|        | GOYES    | L580.1 | No, then continue                       |
|        | GOTO     | L640   | Yes, then report match found            |
| *      |          |        |                                         |
| L580   | GOSUB    | PATCHR | Recall current pattern character        |
| L580.1 | LC(2)    | BackS1 |                                         |
|        | ?A=C     | B      | Is it a backslash?                      |
|        | GOYES    | L610   | Yes, then do recursion                  |
| L590   | C=R1     |        | Recall end of target                    |
|        | D0=C     |        | Point past end of target                |
|        | D0=D0- 2 |        | Back up to last char in target          |
|        | C=DAT0   | B      | Read last char in target                |
|        | ?A=C     | B      | Does this match the first pattern cha?? |
|        | GOYES    | L610   | Yes, then do recursion                  |
| L600   | C=R1     |        | Recall end of target                    |
|        | C=C-1    | A      |                                         |
|        | C=C-1    | A      | Move it back one character              |
|        | R1=C     |        | Save this as new end of target          |
|        | ?D<C     | A      | Is the target pointer past end?         |
|        | GOYES    | L580   | No, then keep looking for a match       |
|        |          |        | with this shorter @ match field         |
| L500j  | GOTO     | L500   | Yes, then no match found                |
| *      |          |        |                                         |
| L610   |          |        | Ready for recursion                     |
| L620   | GOSUB    | SCANSB | Make recursive call                     |
|        | GONC     | L600   | Resume search                           |
|        | GOTO     | L640   | Report success                          |

|        |          |                  |
|--------|----------|------------------|
| SCNRIN | C=ST     |                  |
|        | C=DAT1   | P                |
|        | ST=C     | 5 -> RegExp (S0) |
|        | D1=D1+ 1 |                  |
|        | C=DAT1   | A                |
|        | RSTK=C   | 4 -> RSTK        |
|        | D1=D1+ 5 |                  |
|        | C=DAT1   | A                |
|        | D=C      | A                |
|        | D1=D1+ 5 | 3 -> D(A)        |
|        | C=DAT1   | A                |
|        | B=C      | A                |
|        | D1=D1+ 5 | 2 -> B(A)        |
|        | C=DAT1   | A                |
|        | D1=D1+ 5 |                  |



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

?ST=1 Match Was a match found?
RTNYES Yes, then skip restoring R1
 Note: R1 was left pointing at end
 of match by subroutine
 1 -> R1

R1=C
RTNCC
HXDCW GOVLNG =HXDCW

EJECT

The string returned is in the following format on the stack??

 21 20 19 18 13 12 7 6 1
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| P6 | | P5|P4| P3 | | P2 | | P1 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
 ^ ^ ^
 | | |
 | | Command
 | Option char
 Error code

Comma EQU 11
NEXT ST=0 Comma
NEXT+ B=0 A
NEXT00 CD1EX
 D1=C
 ?C<=D A At eol?
 RTNYES Yes, then char type=0
 D1=D1- 2 Point to next char
 A=DAT1 B Read next char
 LC(2) \ \
 ?A=C B Is it a blank?
 GOYES NEXT00 Yes, then ignore it
 ?ST=1 Comma Already had a comma
 GOYES NEXT05 Yes, then don't allow another
 LC(1) \,\
 ST=1 Comma Now have a comma or don't care anymore??
 ?A=C B Is it a comma?
 GOYES NEXT00 Yes, then ignore it
NEXT05 B=B+1 A Char type=1?
 GOSBVL =DRANGE Is it a digit?
 GONC NEXTDG Yes, then char type=1
 B=B+1 A Char type=2?
 LC(2) \.\
 ?A=C B Is it a .?
 RTNYES Yes, then char type=2
 LC(1) \#\
 ?A=C B Is it a #?
 RTNYES Yes, then char type=2

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

|        |        |            |                            |
|--------|--------|------------|----------------------------|
|        | B=B+1  | A          | Char type=3?               |
|        | LC(1)  | \+\        |                            |
|        | ?A=C   | B          | Is it a +?                 |
|        | RTNYES |            | Yes, then char type=3      |
|        | B=B+1  | A          | Char type=4?               |
|        | LC(2)  | \?\        |                            |
|        | ?A=C   | B          | Is it a "??                |
|        | RTNYES |            | Yes, then char type=4      |
| NEXT10 | B=B+1  | A          | Char type=5                |
|        | RTNSC  |            |                            |
| NEXTDG | GOSUB  | ZEROS      |                            |
| ZerPrm | EQU    | 10         |                            |
|        | ST=0   | ZerPrm     |                            |
|        | C=A    | B          |                            |
|        | B=C    | W          |                            |
| NEXTD1 | CD1EX  |            |                            |
|        | D1=C   |            |                            |
|        | ?C<=D  | A          |                            |
|        | GOYES  | NXTD3.     |                            |
|        | D1=D1- | 2          |                            |
|        | A=DAT1 | B          |                            |
|        | GOSBVL | =DRANGE    |                            |
|        | GOC    | NEXTD3     |                            |
|        | BSLC   |            |                            |
|        | BSLC   |            |                            |
|        | ?B=0   | P          |                            |
|        | GOYES  | NEXTD2     |                            |
|        | GOSUB  | NINES      |                            |
|        | B=C    | W          |                            |
|        | A=B    | A          |                            |
| NEXTD2 | B=A    | B          |                            |
|        | GOC    | NEXTD1     | (B.E.T.)                   |
| NINES  | LCASC  | \999999\   |                            |
|        | RTNSC  |            |                            |
| NEXTD3 | D1=D1+ | 2          | Reininclude this character |
| NXTD3. | GOSUB  | ZEROS      |                            |
|        | A=B    | W          |                            |
|        | ?A#C   | W          |                            |
|        | GOYES  | NEXTD4     |                            |
|        | ST=1   | ZerPrm     |                            |
| NEXTD4 | GOSUB  | NINES      |                            |
|        | ?A<=C  | W          |                            |
|        | GOYES  | NEXTD5     |                            |
|        | A=C    | W          |                            |
| NEXTD5 | B=0    | A          |                            |
|        | GOTO   | NEXT10     |                            |
| *      |        |            |                            |
| *      |        |            |                            |
| ZEROS  | LCASC  | \00000000\ |                            |
|        | RTNCC  |            |                            |
| *      |        |            |                            |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

|        |                    |                                                                     |
|--------|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | NIBHEX 411         | One string parameter                                                |
| EDPARS | CDOEX              |                                                                     |
|        | D0=(5) (=FUNCD0)-5 |                                                                     |
|        | DAT0=C A           | Save PC                                                             |
|        | CD1EX              |                                                                     |
|        | R3=C               | Save stack pointer in R3                                            |
|        | LC(4) #F0~ecmds    | Message number of cmd letters                                       |
|        | R0=C               |                                                                     |
|        | GOSBVL =FPOLL      | Poll will change R0 to some other                                   |
|        | CON(2) =pTRANS     | message number if translation occurs                                |
|        | D0=(5) =SCRICH     | Put cmd letters in SCRICH memory                                    |
|        | C=R0               |                                                                     |
|        | GOSBVL =TBMSG\$    | Initialize SCRICH to cmd letters                                    |
|        | C=R3               |                                                                     |
|        | D1=C               | Restore stack pointer                                               |
|        | GOSBVL =POP1S      | Get string from stack                                               |
|        | CD1EX              |                                                                     |
|        | D0=C A             | D0=Start of source                                                  |
|        | C=A A              | C(A)=Length                                                         |
|        | GOSBVL =D1@AVS     | A=(AVMEMS)                                                          |
|        | D1=(4) =FUNCD0     |                                                                     |
|        | DAT1=A A           | Initialize FUNCD0 as end of option st??                             |
|        | D1=D1+ 5           |                                                                     |
|        | DAT1=A A           | Initialize FUNCD1 as start of opt str??                             |
|        | D1=A               | D1=Start of dest                                                    |
|        | GOSBVL =MOVEU3     |                                                                     |
|        | CDOEX              |                                                                     |
|        | D0=(5) =AVMEME     |                                                                     |
|        | DAT0=C A           | Update (AVMEME) to stack pointer<br>(Parameter has been popped off) |
|        | GOSUB ZEROS        |                                                                     |
|        | R1=C               |                                                                     |
|        | R2=C               |                                                                     |
|        | R3=C               | Initialize parameters P1,P2,P3                                      |
|        | C=0 S              |                                                                     |
|        | LCASC \ \          |                                                                     |
|        | R0=C               | Initialize parameters P4,P5>Error                                   |
|        | GOSBVL =D=AVMS     |                                                                     |
|        | CLRST              | Clear status bits                                                   |
| STATE1 | ST=1 Comma         |                                                                     |
|        | GOSUB NEXT+        |                                                                     |
|        | ?ST=1 ZerPrm       |                                                                     |
|        | GOYES ZEROP1       |                                                                     |
|        | GOSUB TYPJMP       |                                                                     |
|        | REL(3) EDPERR      | Eol                                                                 |
|        | REL(3) SV1N-2      | Digit                                                               |
|        | REL(3) SV1.-2      | . or #                                                              |
|        | REL(3) EDPERR      | +                                                                   |
|        | REL(3) SV5-5       | ?                                                                   |
|        | REL(3) SV4-4       | Letter                                                              |

\*

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

*
ZEROP3 P=P+1
ZEROP2 P=P+1
ZEROP1 P=P+1
 C=R0
 CPEX 15
 GOTO EDPER?
*
*
SV1.-2 GOSUB ZEROS
 C=A B
 A=C W
SV1N-2 R1=A
 ST=1 0
STATE2 GOSUB NEXT
 ?ST=1 ZerPrm
 GOYES ZEROP2
 GOSUB TYPJMP
 REL(3) STATE9
 REL(3) SV2N-3
 REL(3) SV2.-3
 REL(3) EDPERR
 REL(3) SV5-5
 REL(3) SV4-4
*
*
SV3-6 ?ST=1 ZerPrm
 GOYES ZEROP3
 R3=A
 ST=1 2
STATE6 GOSUB NEXT
 ?B=0 P
 GOYES STAT9j
 LCHEX 5
 ?B#C P
 GOYES EDPERR
SV5-8 ?ST=1 4
 GOYES EDPERR
 GOSUB SV5
STATE8 GOSUB NEXT
 ?B#0 P
 GOYES EDPERR
STAT9j GOTO STATE9
*
EDPERR C=R0
 P= 15
 LCHEX 7
EDPER? R0=C
 P= 0
 GOTO EDP80
*

```

First parameter found

Eol  
 Digit  
 . or #  
 +  
 ?  
 Letter

Is parameter zero?  
 Yes, then error

Third parameter found

Option already specified?  
 Yes, then error

Is it an Eol?  
 No, then error

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

*
SV5 B=A A
 BSLC
 BSLC
 A=R0
 B=A B
 A=B A
 R0=A
 ST=1 4 Fifth parameter found
 RTNCC

*
SV2.-3 GOSUB ZEROS
 C=A B
 A=C W
SV2N-3 R2=A
 ST=1 1 Second parameter found
STATE3 GOSUB NEXT
 LCHEX 4
 ?B=C P
 GOYES SV5-5
 ?B<C P
 GOYES EDPERR
 Fall into SV4-4

*
* Translate from CDEFHILMPRST to
* ABCDEFGHIJKL
SV4-4 GOSBVL =CONVUC
 DO=(5) =SCRICH
 B=A A
 LC(2) \A\
 P= 11
SV4-41 A=DAT0 B
 ?A=B B
 GOYES SV4-42
 C=C+1 A
 DO=DO+ 2
 P=P-1
 GONC SV4-41 Loop back for next possible cmd
 C=R0
 C=B B Return invalid command letter
 P= 15
 LCHEX 4 Error in parameter 4 (command)
 GOTO EDPER?

*
SV5-5 GOSUB SV5
STATE5 GOSUB NEXT
 LCHEX 5
 ?B=C P
 GOYES SV4-4

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 GOTO EDPERR
*
*
*
 SETP6S CD1EX
 D1=C
 D0=(5) =FUNCD1
 DAT0=C A
 ST=1 5 Parameter 6 found
 RIN
*
SV4-43 GOSUB SETP6S Set start of P6 to (D1)
 D0=D0- 5 Point at FUNCD0
 C=DAT0 A Read end of 6th parameter
 D1=C This is new current loc
 ST=1 5 Sixth parameter found
* Do we need to indicate that this parm has been found????
 GOTO STATE9
SV4-42 A=R0
 A=C B
 R0=A
 P= 0
 LCASC \J\ Is it a replace command?
 ?A=C B
 GOYES SV4-43
 C=C+1 A
 ?A=C B Is it a search command?
 GOYES SV4-43
STATE4 GOSUB NEXT
 GOSUB TYPJMP
 REL(3) STATE9 Eol
 REL(3) SV3-6 Digit
 REL(3) EDPERR . or
 REL(3) EDPERR +
 REL(3) EDPERR ?
 REL(3) SV6-7 L
*
*
SV6-7 D1=D1+ 2 Include this char in parm 6
 A=R0
 LCASC \B\
 ?A#C B Is it a delete command?
 GOYES SV4-43 No, then P6 is rest of line
 GOSUB SETP6S Set start of P6 to (D1)
SV6-71 D1=D1- 2
 CD1EX
 D1=C
 ?C<D A
 GOYES STATE7
 A=DAT1 B
 LC(2) \ \

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```
?A=C B
GOYES SV6-72
LC(1) \+\
?A=C B
GOYES SV6-72
LC(1) \,\
?A#C B
GOYES SV6-71
SV6-72 D1=D1+ 2 Don't include ",", "+", or " " in P6
 CD1EX
 D1=C
 D0=D0- 5 Point to FUNCDO
 DAT0=C A P6 ends here
STATE7 GOSUB NEXT
 LCHEX 3
 ?B#C P
 GOYES STAT71
 GOTO SV5-8
STAT71 ?B=0 P
 GOYES STATE9
 GOTO EDPERR
STATE9
 GOSUB PARMIB
```

\*  
\* A bit set in the following table indicates that the  
\* corresponding parameter may not be specified  
\*

|           | Parameter # | 123456              |   |
|-----------|-------------|---------------------|---|
| NIBHEX 63 |             | 011011 blank (Goto) | @ |
| NIBHEX 41 |             | 001010 Copy         | A |
| NIBHEX 40 |             | 001000 Delete       | B |
| NIBHEX 73 |             | 111011 Exit         | C |
| NIBHEX 30 |             | 110000 Format       | D |
| NIBHEX 30 |             | 110000 Help         | E |
| NIBHEX 63 |             | 011011 Insert       | F |
| NIBHEX 00 |             | 000000 List         | G |
| NIBHEX 40 |             | 001010 Move         | H |
| NIBHEX 00 |             | 000000 Print        | I |
| NIBHEX 40 |             | 001000 Replace      | J |
| NIBHEX 40 |             | 001000 Search       | K |
| NIBHEX 63 |             | 011011 Text         | L |

PARMIB C=RSTK  
A=R0

\* Note that LSD of ASCII blank is 0.  
B=0 A  
B=A P  
B=B+B A  
C=B+C A  
D0=C  
A=DAT0 B  
C=SI

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 A=A&C B
 ?A=0 B
 GOYES EDP80
 C=0 A
 SB=0
EDP70 C=C+1 A
 ASRB
 ?SB=0
 GOYES EDP70
 A=R0
 CSRC
 A=C S
 R0=A
*
* Now its time to build stack entry.
*
EDP80 GOSBVL =D1=AVE D1&C(A) = (AVMEME)
 CR1EX R1=Start of stack item
 D1=D1- 12
 DAT1=C 12 Write out P1
 C=R2
 D1=D1- 12
 DAT1=C 12 Write out P2
 C=R3
 D1=D1- 12
 DAT1=C 12 Write out P3
 C=R0 Recall P4,P5
 D1=D1- 2
 DAT1=C B Write out P4
 CSR A
 CSR A
 D1=D1- 2
 DAT1=C B Write out P5
 LCHEX 3
 CSLC
 D1=D1- 2
 DAT1=C B Write out error code
 D0=(5) =FUNCD0
 C=DAT0 A Read end of last parameter
 C(A)=Start of source
 D0=D0+ 5
 A=DAT0 A Read start of last parameter
 A(A)=End of source
 GOSBVL =MOVED2 Move final string onto stack
 D0=(5) (=FUNCD0)-5
 C=DAT0 A
 D0=C
 ST=0 0 Restore PC
 GOVLNG =ADHEAD Don't return from ADHEAD
*
TYPJMP C=B A

```



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

 GOVLNG =TBLJMC
*
 EJECT
 NIBHEX 811 one argument: numeric.
MSG$ GOSUBL poplr Pop; error if cplx or string.
 GOSUBL fltdh De-normalize, round.
 GONC MSG$07 NC= neg real; null message.
 ?XM=0 Real>1E6, NaN or Inf?
 GOYES MSG$15 No.
* Yes. Null message.
MSG$07 A=0 A Null message.
MSG$09 R0=A Store msg# in R0.
 SETHEX (DEC mode from MSG$15.)
 D1=D1+ 16 D1 past stack item.
 GOSBVL =R3=D10
 GOSBVL =FPOLL Poll for translation.
 CON(2) =pTRANS
*
 GOSBVL =D0=AVS Set D0= AvMemSt.
 C=R0 Fetch message number.
 GOSBVL =TBMSG$ Build msg in avail mem.
 GOVLNG =ERRM$f Put it on stack, exit.
*
* ----- EXIT
*
MSG$15 GOSBVL =HEXDEC Arg back to decimal.
 LCHEX 00256
 ?A>=C X Msg number>256?
 GOYES MSG$07 Yes. Null msg.
 R0=A Save msg number.
 ASR W LEX ID# to A(X).
 ASR A
 ASR A
 ?A>=C A LES ID# > 256?
 GOYES MSG$07 Yes. Null msg.
 GOSBVL =A-MULT Multiply LEX ID# by 256.
 C=R0 Fetch msg number.
 C=0 M C(A)= msg#.
 A=A+C A
 GOSBVL =DECHEX e.g., converts 17025 to 1119.
 GOC MSG$09 (BET)
*
 EJECT
SCRLEX NIBHEX 25 Id
 CON(2) 2 Lowest Token
 CON(2) 3 Highest Token
 NIBHEX 00000 End of lex table chain
*
 NIBHEX F Speed table omitted
 CON(4) (L2TbSt)+1-(*) Offset to text table
 CON(4) 0 No message table
 CON(5) 0 No poll handler

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 STITLE Main Table
* Main Table
*
 CON(3) 11 02 SCROLL
 REL(5) SCROLL
 NIBHEX D
*
 CON(3) 0 03 MSG$
 REL(5) MSG$
 NIBHEX F
 STITLE Text Table
* Text Table
 L2TbSt Text table start
*
 NIBHEX 7 MSG$
 NIBASC \MSG$\
 NIBHEX 30
*
 NIBHEX B SCROLL
 NIBASC \SCROLL\
 NIBHEX 20
 L2TbEn NIBHEX 1FF Text termination
*
 SCRLlp GOVLNG =FIXP
*
 REL(5) SCRLld
 REL(5) SCRLlp
 SCROLL GOSUBL mgosub Evaluate expression
 CON(5) =EXPEXC
 GOSBVL =D1=AVE
 A=DAT1 A
 GOSUBL pophex Pop hex number off stack
 A=A-1 A Convert to option base 0
 GONC SCRL10 If non-zero then skip
 A=0 A Use zero
 SCRL10 B=0 A
 B=A B Copy to B(A)
 D0=(5) =WINDLN
 A=DAT0 B Read window length
 C=0 A
 LC(2) 95
 C=C-A B C(B)=Start of last window
 ?B>C B Is specified start>last start?
 GOYES SCRL20 No, then okay
 C=B A Yes, then just use last start
 SCRL20 A=C B
 SCRL30 LC(5) =DSPBFS
 C=C+A A
 C=C+A A Calculate address of character
 D0=C Point to this character
 C=DAT0 B Read character at this spot

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```
?C#0 B Is it a null?
GOYES SCRL40 No, then okay
A=A-1 A Yes, then look one char
GONC SCRL30 If not at start of buf, then loop bac??
A=0 A Otherwise, just use 0
SCRL40 D0=(4) =FIRSTC
DAT0=A B Write out calculated FIRSTC
D0=D0- (FIRSTC)-((DSPSTA)+3)
C=DAT0 A
CSTEX
BitsOk EQU 1
ST=0 BitsOk
CSTEX
DAT0=C A
GOSBVL =SCRLLR
nxtstm GOVLNG =NXTSIM
*
*
* End of LEXFILE
*
FILEND
END
```

17.4 LEX File Showing Use of Speed Table

Following is a small sample LEX file with a speed table. This example is simply for illustration, since speed tables are appropriate for lex files with a very large number of tokens, which we have omitted here for space considerations.

This LEX file defines the following tokens:

| Token Number | Token  | LEX File Token Symbol | Description                |
|--------------|--------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1            | FUNCT  | FUNCT                 | A function                 |
| 2            | BAT    | BAT                   | A statement                |
| 3            | BATTER | BAT                   | A longer statement         |
| 4            | TOKEN  | XTOKEN                | An arbitrary token         |
| 5            | QUIT   | QUIT                  | A non-programmable command |

This LEX file includes the necessary external references to the poll handler address, the various execution addresses, and the end-of-file. This example contains a SPEED table which for so few keywords is wasteful and probably wouldn't be used if this were a real LEX file.

TITLE Lexical Analyzer Tables--ID=FE  
\* This file was generated on Wed Dec 15, 1982 2:58 pm  
\* File Header

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

|                   |                        |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| NIBASC \TESTFILE\ | File Name              |
| CON(4) =fLEX      | File Type              |
| NIBHEX 00         | Flags                  |
| NIBHEX 8541       | Time                   |
| NIBHEX 512128     | Date                   |
| REL(5) =FILEND    | File Length            |
|                   |                        |
| NIBHEX EF         | Id                     |
| CON(2) 1          | Lowest Token           |
| CON(2) 5          | Highest Token          |
| NIBHEX 00000      | End of lex table chain |

\* Speed Table

|                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| NIBHEX 0                   | Speed table exists     |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) A |                        |
| CON(3) 0 B                 |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) C |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) D |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) E |                        |
| CON(3) 24 F                |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) G |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) H |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) I |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) J |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) K |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) L |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) M |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) N |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) O |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) P |                        |
| CON(3) 37 Q                |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) R |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) S |                        |
| CON(3) 48 T                |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) U |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) V |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) W |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) X |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) Y |                        |
| CON(3) (TxTbEn)-(TxTbSt) Z |                        |
| NIBHEX 0                   | Speed table exists     |
| CON(4) (TxTbSt)+1-(*)      | Offset to text table   |
| CON(4) 0                   | No message table       |
| REL(5) =POLHND             | Offset to poll handler |
| STITLE Main Table          |                        |

\* Main Table

=xromFE

|               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| CON(3) 24     | 01 A function |
| REL(5) =FUNCx |               |
| NIBHEX F      |               |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

* CON(3) 15 02 A statement
 REL(5) =BATx
 NIBHEX D

* CON(3) 0 03 A longer statement
 REL(5) =BATRx
 NIBHEX D

* =XTOKEN EQU #04
 CON(3) 48 04 A token
 NIBHEX 00000
 NIBHEX 0

* CON(3) 37 05 A non-programmable command
 REL(5) =QUITx
 NIBHEX 1
 STITLE T e x t T a b l e
* Text Table
 TxTbSt Text table start
*
 NIBHEX B A longer statement
 NIBASC \BATTER\
 NIBHEX 30

* NIBHEX 5 A statement
 NIBASC \BAT\
 NIBHEX 20

* NIBHEX 9 A function
 NIBASC \FUNCT\
 NIBHEX 10

* NIBHEX 7 A non-programmable c
 NIBASC \QUIT\
 NIBHEX 50

* NIBHEX 9 A token
 NIBASC \TOKEN\
 NIBHEX 40
 TxTbEn NIBHEX 1FF Text termination
 END

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

## 17.5 Foreign Language Translation of Messages

See the chapter titled "Message Handling" for a complete description of the construction and implementation of message tables. Language translators are LEX files with one purpose: to translate messages from master LEX files. These messages are displayed for errors, warnings, and system messages, for the ERRM\$ and MSG\$ (MSG\$ is found in LEX file #82), and for the g-LERRM keystroke.

### 17.5.1 One-shot Mainframe Translator

This Spanish translator for mainframe messages would ALWAYS produce Spanish translations, as long as it is present in memory; hence the term "one-shot". To disable the translation, it must be purged from memory.

```
TITLE LEXFILE<840123.1614>
*
* This file was generated on Wed Oct 19, 1983 9:46 am
* File Header
 NIBASC \ESP001 \ File Name (for lack of better one...)
 CON(4) =fLEX File Type
 NIBHEX 00 Flags
 NIBHEX 6490 Time
 NIBHEX 910138 Date
 REL(5) FILEND File Length
*
 NIBHEX 10 Id
 CON(2) 255 Lowest Token
 CON(2) 0 Highest Token
 NIBHEX 00000 End of lex table chain
*
 NIBHEX F Speed table omitted
 CON(4) (TxTbSt)+1-(*) Offset to text table
 REL(4) MSGTBL Offset to message table
 REL(5) POLHND Offset to poll handler
 STITLE Main Table
* Main Table
=xrom01
 STITLE Text Table
* Text Table
 TxTbSt Text table start
 TxTbEn NIBHEX 1FF Text termination
 STITLE Mainframe Messages: Espanol
*
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

\* NOTE ! NOTE ! NOTE ! NOTE ! NOTE ! NOTE ! NOTE ! NOTE ! NOTE

```
*
* | The following Spanish messages are not meant to be
* | the official translations of the mainframe messages.
* | Please excuse the attempt at translation -- this is
* | only meant to be an example of a complete translator
* | LEX file.
*
```

MSGTBL

```
CON(2) 1 Min message #
CON(2) 249 Max message #
```

```
* -- Note that message 00 need not be included because
* message 00 from the mainframe is a null message.
* I.e., MSG$(0) does not have to be translated.
```

\*----- Math messages -----

```
*!!
* Message number 8 is placed first because the first !!
* nibble past the range field MUST be 0 !! Message !!
* number 8 has a total length of 16; if this is !!
* changed, another message with length=16 (or a !!
* multiple of 16) MUST be placed first. !!
```

```
*
* /Zero
*sZRDIV EQU 8 !!
* /Cero
* !!
CON(2) 16 !!
CON(2) 8 Message number 8 !!
CON(1) 4 !!
NIBASC \Cero\ !!
CON(1) 12 !!
```

```
*!!
*
* Underflow
```

```
*
*sUNFLW EQU 1 Valor Menudo
CON(2) 23
CON(2) 1 Message number 1
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sVALOR
CON(1) 6
NIBASC \ Menudo\
CON(1) 12
```

```
*
* Overflow
```

```
*
*sOVFLW EQU 2 Valor Rebosado
CON(2) 11
CON(2) 2 Message number 2
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sVALOR
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sREBOS
```



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

 CON(1) 12
*
* EXPONENT(0)
*
=sEXP0 EQU 3 EXPONENT(0)
 CON(2) 8
 CON(2) 3 Message number 3
 CON(1) 14
 CON(2) =eEXP0
 CON(1) 12
*
* TAN=Inf
*
=sTNINF EQU 4 TAN=Inf
 CON(2) 8 TAN=Inf
 CON(2) 4 Message number 4
 CON(1) 14
 CON(2) =eTNINF
 CON(1) 12
*
* 0^neg
*
=s0^NEG EQU 5 0^neg
 CON(2) 8 0^neg
 CON(2) 5 Message number 5
 CON(1) 14
 CON(2) =e0^NEG
 CON(1) 12
*
* 0^0
*
=s0^0 EQU 6 0^0
 CON(2) 8 0^0
 CON(2) 6 Message number 6
 CON(1) 14
 CON(2) =e0^0
 CON(1) 12
*
* 0/0
*
=sZRO/0 EQU 7 0/0
 CON(2) 8 0/0
 CON(2) 7 Message number 7
 CON(1) 14
 CON(2) =eZRO/0
 CON(1) 12
*
* message number 8 is found at the top of the table
*
* Neg^Non-int
*
=sNEG^X EQU 9 Neg^(Nro ni Entero)
 CON(2) 45
 CON(2) 9 Message number 9
 CON(1) 10
 NIBASC \Neg^(Nro\

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 NIBASC \ ni\
 CON(1) 7
 NIBASC \ Entero)\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
 SQR(neg)
*
 =sSQR- EQU 10 SQR(neg)
 CON(2) 8
 CON(2) 10 Message number 10
 CON(1) 14
 CON(2) =eSQR-
 CON(1) 12
*
*
 Invalid Arg
*
 =sIVARG EQU 11 Operacion Prohibida
 CON(2) 14
 CON(2) 11 Message number 11
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sOPERA
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sPROHI
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \a\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
 LOG(0)
*
 =sLN0 EQU 12 LOG(0)
 CON(2) 8
 CON(2) 12 Message number 12
 CON(1) 14
 CON(2) =eLN0
 CON(1) 12
*
*
 LOG(neg)
*
 =sLOG- EQU 13 LOG(neg)
 CON(2) 8
 CON(2) 13 Message number 13
 CON(1) 14
 CON(2) =eLOG-
 CON(1) 12
*
*
 Inf/Inf
*
 =sIF/IF EQU 14 Inf/Inf
 CON(2) 8
 CON(2) 14 Message number 14
 CON(1) 14
 CON(2) =eIF/IF
 CON(1) 12
*
*
 Inf-Inf
*
 =sIF-IF EQU 15 Inf-Inf

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

CON(2) 8
CON(2) 15 Message number 15
CON(1) 14
CON(2) =eIF-IF
CON(1) 12
*
*
=sIF*ZR EQU 16 Inf*0
CON(2) 8
CON(2) 16 Message number 16
CON(1) 14
CON(2) =eIF*ZR
CON(1) 12
*
*
=s1^INF EQU 17 1^Inf
CON(2) 8
CON(2) 17 Message number 17
CON(1) 14
CON(2) =e1^INF
CON(1) 12
*
*
=sINF^0 EQU 18 Inf^0
CON(2) 8
CON(2) 18 Message number 18
CON(1) 14
CON(2) =eINF^0
CON(1) 12
*
*
=sSIGOP EQU 19 Signaled Op
CON(2) 22
CON(2) 19 Operacion de Senal
CON(1) 13 Message number 19
CON(2) =sOPERA
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sDE
CON(1) 4
NIBASC \Senal\
CON(1) 12
*
*
=sUNORC EQU 20 Sin Orden
CON(2) 24
CON(2) 20 Message number 20
CON(1) 8
NIBASC \Sin Orde\
NIBASC \n\
CON(1) 12
*

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

*
=sINX EQU 21 Inexacto
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 21 Message number 21
 CON(1) 14
 CON(2) =eINX
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \o\
 CON(1) 12

*
*----- System Errors -----
*
* Low Battery
*
=sLOBAT EQU 22 Pilas Descargadas
 CON(2) 41
 CON(2) 22 Message number 22
 CON(1) 10
 NIBASC \Pilas De\
 NIBASC \sca\
 CON(1) 5
 NIBASC \rgadas\
 CON(1) 12

*
* System Error
*
=sSYSER EQU 23 Error de Sistema
 CON(2) 34
 CON(2) 23 Message number 23
 CON(1) 4
 NIBASC \Error\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sDE
 CON(1) 6
 NIBASC \Sistema\
 CON(1) 12

*
* Insufficient Memory
*
=sMEM EQU 24 Memoria Insuficiente
 CON(2) 47
 CON(2) 24 Message number 24
 CON(1) 10
 NIBASC \Memoria \
 NIBASC \Ins\
 CON(1) 8
 NIBASC \uficient\
 NIBASC \e\
 CON(1) 12

*
* Module Pulled
*
=sMPI EQU 25 Enchufe Arrancado
 CON(2) 41

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

CON(2) 25 Message number 25
CON(1) 10
NIBASC \Enchufe \
NIBASC \Arr\
CON(1) 5
NIBASC \ancado\
CON(1) 12

```

\* Configuration

\* Configuracion

```

=s2MROM EQU 26 Configuracion
CON(2) 33
CON(2) 26 Message number 26
CON(1) 11
CON(1) 12
NIBASC \Configur\
NIBASC \acion\
CON(1) 12

```

\* Invalid AF

\* AF Invalido

```

=sAF EQU 27 Message number 27
CON(2) 13
CON(2) 27
CON(1) 1
NIBASC \AF\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sINV-0
CON(1) 12

```

\* ----- Program Errors -----

\* Subscript

```

=sSUBSC EQU 28 Suscripto
CON(2) 24
CON(2) 28 Message number 28
CON(1) 8
NIBASC \Suscript\
NIBASC \o\
CON(1) 12

```

\* Record Ovfl

\* Registro Rebosado

```

=sRECOR EQU 29 Message number 29
CON(2) 25
CON(2) 29
CON(1) 7
NIBASC \Registro\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sREBOS
CON(1) 12

```

\* Stmt Not Found

\*

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

=sSTMNF EQU 30 Se Falta Planteo
 CON(2) 23
 CON(2) 30 Message number 30
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sFALIA
 CON(1) 6
 NIBASC \Planteo\
 CON(1) 12

*
* Data Type

=sDATTY EQU 31 Data Invalida
 CON(2) 17
 CON(2) 31 Message number 31
 CON(1) 3
 NIBASC \Data\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sINV-A
 CON(1) 12

*
* No Data

=sNODAT EQU 32 Se Falta Dato
 CON(2) 17
 CON(2) 32 Message number 32
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sFALIA
 CON(1) 3
 NIBASC \Dato\
 CON(1) 12

*
* FN Not Found

=sFNNTF EQU 33 Se Falta FN
 CON(2) 13
 CON(2) 33 Message number 33
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sFALIA
 CON(1) 1
 NIBASC \FN\
 CON(1) 12

*
* XFN Not Found

=sXFNNF EQU 34 Se Falta XFN
 CON(2) 15
 CON(2) 34 Message number 34
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sFALIA
 CON(1) 2
 NIBASC \XFN\
 CON(1) 12

*
* XWORD Not Found

=sXWORD EQU 35 Se Falta XWORD

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

CON(2) 19
CON(2) 35 Message number 35
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sFALTA
CON(1) 4
NIBASC \XWORD\
CON(1) 12

*
* Parameter Mismatch

=sPRMIS EQU 36 Valores Sin Parejos
CON(2) 31
CON(2) 36 Message number 36
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sVALOR
CON(1) 1
NIBASC \es\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sSIN
CON(1) 6
NIBASC \Parejos\
CON(1) 12

*
* String Ovfl

=sSTROV EQU 37 Letrero Rebosado
CON(2) 23
CON(2) 37 Message number 37
CON(1) 6
NIBASC \Letrero\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sREBOS
CON(1) 12

*
* Numeric Input

=sNUMIN EQU 38 Asiento Numerico
CON(2) 27
CON(2) 38 Message number 38
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sASIEN
CON(1) 8
NIBASC \ Numeric\
NIBASC \o\
CON(1) 12

*
* Too Many Inputs

=sTOOMI EQU 39 Asientos Demasiados
CON(2) 21
CON(2) 39 Message number 39
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sASIEN
CON(1) 1
NIBASC \s \

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sDEMAS
CON(1) 1
NIBASC \os\
CON(1) 12
*
*
Too Few Inputs
*
=sTOOFI EQU 40
CON(2) 31
CON(2) 40
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sASIEN
CON(1) 10
NIBASC \s Tan Po\
NIBASC \cos\
CON(1) 12
*
*
Chnl# Not Found
*
=sCHNL# EQU 41
CON(2) 40
CON(2) 41
CON(1) 9
NIBASC \Asignaci\
NIBASC \on\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sDE
CON(1) 4
NIBASC \Canal\
CON(1) 12
*
*
FOR w/o NEXT
*
=sFwoNX EQU 42
CON(2) 24
CON(2) 42
CON(1) 2
NIBASC \FOR\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sSIN
CON(1) 3
NIBASC \NEXT\
CON(1) 12
*
*
NEXT w/o FOR
*
=sNXwoF EQU 43
CON(2) 24
CON(2) 43
CON(1) 3
NIBASC \NEXT\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sSIN
CON(1) 2
Asientos Tan Pocos
Message number 40
Message number 41
Message number 42
Message number 43

```



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

 NIBASC \FOR\
CON(1) 12
*
*
RTN w/o GOSUB
*
=sRwGS EQU 44 RTN Sin GOSUB
CON(2) 26
CON(2) 44 Message number 44
CON(1) 2
NIBASC \RTN\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sSIN
CON(1) 4
NIBASC \GOSUB\
CON(1) 12
*
*
Invalid IMAGE
*
=sINVIM EQU 45 IMAGE Invalido
CON(2) 19
CON(2) 45 Message number 45
CON(1) 4
NIBASC \IMAGE\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sINV-0
CON(1) 12
*
*
Invalid USING
*
=sINVUS EQU 46 USING Invalido
CON(2) 19
CON(2) 46 Message number 46
CON(1) 4
NIBASC \USING\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sINV-0
CON(1) 12
*
*
IMAGE Ovfl
*
=sIMGOV EQU 47 IMAGE Rebosado
CON(2) 19
CON(2) 47 Message number 47
CON(1) 4
NIBASC \IMAGE\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sREBOS
CON(1) 12
*
*
Invalid TAB
*
=sIVTAB EQU 48 TAB Invalido
CON(2) 15
CON(2) 48 Message number 48
CON(1) 2
NIBASC \TAB\

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sINV-0
CON(1) 12
*
*
Sub Not Found
*
=sSPGNF EQU 49 Se Falta Subprograma
CON(2) 31
CON(2) 49 Message number 49
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sFALTA
CON(1) 10
NIBASC \Subprogr\
NIBASC \ama\
CON(1) 12
*
*
Var Context
*
=sVCNIX EQU 50 Contexto Invalido
CON(2) 25
CON(2) 50 Message number 50
CON(1) 7
NIBASC \Contexto\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sINV-0
CON(1) 12
*
*
Invalid Stat Array
*
=sIVSAR EQU 51 Matriz de Estadisticos
CON(2) 21
CON(2) 51 Message number 51
CON(1) 5
NIBASC \Matriz\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sDESTA
CON(1) 12
*
*
Invalid Statistic
*
=sIVSTA EQU 52 Estadistica Invalida
CON(2) 14
CON(2) 52 Message number 52
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sESTAD
CON(1) 0
NIBASC \a\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sINV-A
CON(1) 12
*
*
Invalid Stat Op
*
=sIVSOP EQU 53 Operacion de Estadisticos
CON(2) 11
CON(2) 53 Message number 53

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

CON(1) 13
CON(2) =SOPERA
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =SDESTA
CON(1) 12
*
* End of File
*
=SEOFIL EQU 54 Fin de Archivo
CON(2) 18
CON(2) 54 Message number 54
CON(1) 2
NIBASC \Fin\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =SDE
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =SARCHI
CON(1) 12
*
* Invalid Transform
*
=sILTFM EQU 55 Transform Invalida
CON(2) 11
CON(2) 55 Message number 55
CON(1) 14
CON(2) =eTFM
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sINV-A
CON(1) 12
*
* Transform Failed
*
=sIFFLD EQU 56 Se Fallo la Transform
CON(2) 18
CON(2) 56 Message number 56
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sFALLO
CON(1) 2
NIBASC \la \
CON(1) 14
CON(2) =eTFM
CON(1) 12
*
*
*----- File and Device Errors -----
* File Not Found
*
=sFnEND EQU 57 Archivo Desconocido
CON(2) 14
CON(2) 57 Message number 57
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sARCHI
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sDESCO

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \o\
 CON(1) 12
*
* Invalid Filespec
*
=sFSPEC EQU 58 Archivo Especificacion
 CON(2) 40
 CON(2) 58 Message number 58
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sARCHI
 CON(1) 11
 CON(1) 14
 NIBASC \ Especific\
 NIBASC \icacion\
 CON(1) 12
*
* File Exists
*
=sFEXST EQU 59 Archivo Existe
 CON(2) 23
 CON(2) 59 Message number 59
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sARCHI
 CON(1) 6
 NIBASC \ Existe\
 CON(1) 12
*
* Illegal Access
*
=sFACCS EQU 60 Acceso Prohibido
 CON(2) 24
 CON(2) 60 Message number 60
 CON(1) 5
 NIBASC \Acceso\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sPROHI
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \o\
 CON(1) 12
*
* File Protect
*
=sFPROT EQU 61 Archivo Protegido
 CON(2) 29
 CON(2) 61 Message number 61
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sARCHI
 CON(1) 9
 NIBASC \ Protegi\
 NIBASC \do\
 CON(1) 12
*
* File Open
*
=sFOPEN EQU 62 Archivo Abierto

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 CON(2) 25
 CON(2) 62 Message number 62
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sARCHI
 CON(1) 7
 NIBASC \ Abierto\
 CON(1) 12
*
* Invalid File Type
*
=sFTYPE EQU 63 Tipo Invalido de Archivo
 CON(2) 23
 CON(2) 63 Message number 63
 CON(1) 3
 NIBASC \Tipo\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sINV-0
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sDE
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sARCHI
 CON(1) 12
*
* Device Not Found
*
=sDVCNF EQU 64 Accesorio Desconocido
 CON(2) 30
 CON(2) 64 Message number 64
 CON(1) 8
 NIBASC \Accesori\
 NIBASC \o\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sDESCO
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \o\
 CON(1) 12
*
* Line Too Long
*
=sL2LNG EQU 65 Enunciado Rebosado
 CON(2) 27
 CON(2) 65 Message number 65
 CON(1) 8
 NIBASC \Enunciad\
 NIBASC \o\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sREBOS
 CON(1) 12
*
*
*----- Card Reader Errors -----
* Write Protected
*
=sPROTD EQU 66 Prot Contra Escribir

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

CON(2) 47
CON(2) 66 Message number 66
CON(1) 10
NIBASC \Prot Con\
NIBASC \tra\
CON(1) 8
NIBASC \Escribi\
NIBASC \r\
CON(1) 12

*
* Not This File

=SNOTIN EQU 67 Archivo Equivocado
CON(2) 31
CON(2) 67 Message number 67
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sARCHI
CON(1) 10
NIBASC \Equivoc\
NIBASC \ado\
CON(1) 12

*
* Verify Fail

=sVFYER EQU 68 Se Fallo la Verificacion
CON(2) 40
CON(2) 68 Message number 68
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sFALLO
CON(1) 11
CON(1) 14
NIBASC \la Verif\
NIBASC \icacion\
CON(1) 12

*
* Unknown Card

=sUNKCD EQU 69 Carta Desconocida
CON(2) 22
CON(2) 69 Message number 69
CON(1) 4
NIBASC \Carta\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sDESCO
CON(1) 0
NIBASC \a\
CON(1) 12

*
* R/W Error

=sRWERR EQU 70 Se Fallo el Traslado
CON(2) 31
CON(2) 70 Message number 70
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sFALLO

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

CON(1) 10
NIBASC \el Trasl\
NIBASC \ado\
CON(1) 12
*
*
Too Fast
*
*
=sTUFAS EQU 71 Demasiado Rapido
CON(2) 25
CON(2) 71 Message number 71
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sDEMAS
CON(1) 7
NIBASC \o Rapido\
CON(1) 12
*
*
Too Slow
*
*
=sTUSLO EQU 72 Demasiado Despacio
CON(2) 29
CON(2) 72 Message number 72
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sDEMAS
CON(1) 9
NIBASC \o Despac\
NIBASC \io\
CON(1) 12
*
*
Wrong Name
*
*
=sURQNH EQU 73 Nombre Desconocido
CON(2) 24
CON(2) 73 Message number 73
CON(1) 5
NIBASC \Nombre\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sDESCO
CON(1) 0
NIBASC \o\
CON(1) 12
*
*
File Too Big
*
*
=sF2BIG EQU 74 Archivo Rebosado
CON(2) 11
CON(2) 74 Message number 74
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sARCHI
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sREBOS
CON(1) 12
*
*
*----- Syntax Errors -----??
*
* Syntax

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

*
=sSYNTAX EQU 75 Sintaxis
 CON(2) 22
 CON(2) 75 Message number 75
 CON(1) 7
 NIBASC \Sintaxis\
 CON(1) 12
*
) Expected
*
=sPRNEX EQU 76 Se Falta Parentesis
 CON(2) 29
 CON(2) 76 Message number 76
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sFALTA
 CON(1) 9
 NIBASC \Parentes\
 NIBASC \is\
 CON(1) 12
*
Quote Expected
*
=sQUOEX EQU 77 Se Falta Comillas
 CON(2) 25
 CON(2) 77 Message number 77
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sFALTA
 CON(1) 7
 NIBASC \Comillas\
 CON(1) 12
*
Excess Chars
*
=sEXCHR EQU 78 Letras Demasiadas
 CON(2) 28
 CON(2) 78 Message number 78
 CON(1) 6
 NIBASC \Letras \
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sDEMAs
 CON(1) 1
 NIBASC \as\
 CON(1) 12
*
Illegal Context
*
=sILCNT EQU 79 Contexto Prohibido
 CON(2) 28
 CON(2) 79 Message number 79
 CON(1) 7
 NIBASC \Contexto\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sPROHI
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \o\

```



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

 CON(1) 12
*
* Invalid Expr
*
=sILEXP EQU 80 Expression Invalida
 CON(2) 27
 CON(2) 80 Message number 80
 CON(1) 8
 NIBASC \Expresio\
 NIBASC \n\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sINV-A
 CON(1) 12
*
* Invalid Parm
*
=sILPAR EQU 81 Valor Invalido
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 81 Message number 81
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sVALOR
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sINV-0
 CON(1) 12
*
* Missing Parm
*
=sMSPAR EQU 82 Se Falta Valor
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 82 Message number 82
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sFALTA
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sVALOR
 CON(1) 12
*
* Invalid Var
*
=sILVAR EQU 83 Variable Invalida
 CON(2) 25
 CON(2) 83 Message number 83
 CON(1) 7
 NIBASC \Variable\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sINV-A
 CON(1) 12
*
* Precedence
*
=sPRCER EQU 84 Precedencia
 CON(2) 28
 CON(2) 84 Message number 84
 CON(1) 10
 NIBASC \Preceden\
 NIBASC \cia\
 CON(1) 12

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```
*
*
=sILKEY EQU 85 Invalid Key
 CON(2) 19
 CON(2) 85 Tecla Invalida
 CON(1) 4 Message number 85
 NIBASC \Tecla\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sINV-A
 CON(1) 12
```

```
*
*
=sROWRN EQU 86 Operand Expected
 CON(2) 25
 CON(2) 86 Se Falta Operando
 CON(1) 13 Message number 86
 CON(2) =sFALIA
 CON(1) 7
 NIBASC \Operando\
 CON(1) 12
```

```
*
*
=sR1WRN EQU 87 Operator Expected
 CON(2) 25
 CON(2) 87 Se Falta Operario
 CON(1) 13 Message number 87
 CON(2) =sFALIA
 CON(1) 7
 NIBASC \Operario\
 CON(1) 12
```

```
*
*
=sTFWRN EQU 88 TFM WRN L###: <msg>
 CON(2) 31 TFM WRN L###: <msg>
 CON(2) 88 Message number 88
 CON(1) 8
 NIBASC \TFM WRN \
 NIBASC \L\
 CON(2) 47
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \:\
 CON(2) 31
 CON(1) 12
```

```
*
*
*----- Card Reader Messages -----
*
* Pull ### of ###
*
=sPLLC# EQU 89 Saque ### de ###
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 89 Message number 89
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sSAQU
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =s#de#
CON(1) 12
*
* Pull Card
=sPLLC EQU 90 Saque Carta
CON(2) 21
CON(2) 90 Message number 90
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sSAQU
CON(1) 5
NIBASC \ Carta\
CON(1) 12
*
* Wrt: Align then ENDLN
=sUALGN EQU 91 Esc: Alinee y ENDLN
CON(2) 15
CON(2) 91 Message number 91
CON(1) 2
NIBASC \Esc\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sALGN
CON(1) 12
*
* Vfy: Align then ENDLN
=sVALGN EQU 92 Ver: Alinee y ENDLN
CON(2) 15
CON(2) 92 Message number 92
CON(1) 2
NIBASC \Ver\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sALGN
CON(1) 12
*
* Read: Align then ENDLN
=sRALGN EQU 93 Leer: Alinee y ENDLN
CON(2) 17
CON(2) 93 Message number 93
CON(1) 3
NIBASC \Leer\
CON(1) 13
CON(2) =sALGN
CON(1) 12
*
* Prot: Align then ENDLN
=sPALGN EQU 94 Prot: Alinee y ENDLN
CON(2) 17
CON(2) 94 Message number 94
CON(1) 3

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 NIBASC \Prot\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sALGN
 CON(1) 12
*
* Unpr: Align then ENDLN
*
=sUALGN EQU 95 Dsprot: Alinee y ENDLN
 CON(2) 21
 CON(2) 95 Message number 95
 CON(1) 5
 NIBASC \Dsprot\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sALGN
 CON(1) 12
*
* Cat: Align then ENDLN
*
=sCALGN EQU 96 Cat: Alinee y ENDLN
 CON(2) 15
 CON(2) 96 Message number 96
 CON(1) 2
 NIBASC \Cat\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sALGN
 CON(1) 12
*
* Trk ### Done
*
=sTRKDN EQU 97 Pista ### Acabado
 CON(2) 35
 CON(2) 97 Message number 97
 CON(1) 5
 NIBASC \Pista \
 CON(2) 63
 CON(1) 6
 NIBASC \Acabado\
 CON(1) 12
*

*
**** Building Block words for messages.
*
* (trk ### of ###)
*
=sTRKOF EQU 229 (pista ### de ###)
 CON(2) 26
 CON(2) 229 Message number 229
 CON(1) 6
 NIBASC \ (pista\
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =s#de#
 CON(1) 0

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 NIBASC \)\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sVALOR EQU 230 Valor
 CON(2) 16
 CON(2) 230 Message number 230
 CON(1) 4
 NIBASC \Valor\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sREBOS EQU 231 Rebosado
 CON(2) 24
 CON(2) 231 Message number 231
 CON(1) 8
 NIBASC \Rebosad\
 NIBASC \o\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sPROHI EQU 232 Prohibid
 CON(2) 24
 CON(2) 232 Message number 232
 CON(1) 8
 NIBASC \Prohibi\
 NIBASC \d\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sOPERA EQU 233 Operacion
 CON(2) 24
 CON(2) 233 Message number 233
 CON(1) 8
 NIBASC \Operacio\
 NIBASC \n\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sESTAD EQU 234 Estadistic
 CON(2) 26
 CON(2) 234 Message number 234
 CON(1) 9
 NIBASC \Estadist\
 NIBASC \ic\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sARCHI EQU 235 Archivo
 CON(2) 20
 CON(2) 235 Message number 235

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

 CON(1) 6
 NIBASC \Archivo\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sFALTA EQU 236 Se Falta
 CON(2) 24
 CON(2) 236 Message number 236
 CON(1) 8
 NIBASC \Se Falta\
 NIBASC \ \
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sINVAL EQU 237 Invalid
 CON(2) 22
 CON(2) 237 Message number 237
 CON(1) 7
 NIBASC \ Invalid\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sINV-O EQU 238 Invalido
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 238 Message number 238
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sINVAL
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \o\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sINV-A EQU 239 Invalida
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 239 Message number 239
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sINVAL
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \a\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sDE EQU 240 de
 CON(2) 14
 CON(2) 240 Message number 240
 CON(1) 3
 NIBASC \ de \
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sDESTA EQU 241 de Estadisticos

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 CON(2) 16
 CON(2) 241 Message number 241
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sDE
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sESTAD
 CON(1) 1
 NIBASC \os\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sSIN EQU 242 Sin
 CON(2) 16
 CON(2) 242 Message number 242
 CON(1) 4
 NIBASC \ Sin \
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sDEMAS EQU 243 Demasiad
 CON(2) 22
 CON(2) 243 Message number 243
 CON(1) 7
 NIBASC \Demasiad\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sASIEN EQU 244 Asiento
 CON(2) 20
 CON(2) 244 Message number 244
 CON(1) 6
 NIBASC \Asiento\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sDESCO EQU 245 Desconocid
 CON(2) 28
 CON(2) 245 Message number 245
 CON(1) 10
 NIBASC \ Descono\
 NIBASC \cid\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sSAQU EQU 246 Saque
 CON(2) 16
 CON(2) 246 Message number 246
 CON(1) 4
 NIBASC \Saque\
 CON(1) 12
*

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

*
=s#de# EQU 247 *** de ***
 CON(2) 15
 CON(2) 247 Message number 247
 CON(1) 0
 NIBASC \ \
 CON(2) 47
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sDE
 CON(2) 47
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sALGN EQU 248 : Alinee y ENDLN
 CON(2) 39
 CON(2) 248 Message number 248
 CON(1) 11
 CON(1) 15
 NIBASC \: Alinee\
 NIBASC \ y ENDLN\
 CON(1) 12
*
*
=sFALLO EQU 249 Se Fallo
 CON(2) 24
 CON(2) 249 Message number 249
 CON(1) 8
 NIBASC \Se Fallo\
 NIBASC \ \
 CON(1) 12
*
*
 NIBHEX FF Table terminator
*
* Poll handler goes here. Handler for VER$ poll is
* provided
*
POLHND ?B=0 B VER$ poll?
 GOYES hVER$0 Yes.
 GONC hVER$2 No. To hVER$2 w/carry clear.
hVER$0 C=R3
 D1=C
 A=R2
 D1=D1- (VER$en)-(VER$st)-2
 CD1EX
 ?A>C A
 GOYES hVER$1
 D1=C
 R3=C
*
**!! LCASC text to be returned for VER$ here

```



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

* Include a leading blank!!
*
VER$st LCASC \ ESP001\ For lack of any better name....
VER$en DAT1=C (VER$en)-(VER$st)-2
hVER$1 RTNSXM
*
**!! Continue poll handler here: Carry is clear, VER$ poll
* has been handled.
*
hVER$2
 ?B=0 P Eliminate pTEST poll, which
 GOYES EXIT is in the following range.
 A=B A Poll number to A (for RANGE).
*
 NIBHEX 33 This is a LC(4)...
 CON(2) =pTRANS pTRANS in C(B)
 CON(2) =pWARN pWARN in C(3-2)
*
 GOSBVL =RANGE Poll number in range?
 GOC EXIT No.
MSGhnd A=R0 Fetch msg number in A(3-0).
 A=0 B
 ASL A
 ?A#0 A If m/f message, A(A)=0.
 GOYES EXIT
 A=R0 M/f message. Change LEX#
 A=A+1 XS to 01.
 R0=A
*
 One message in the mainframe (message #88)
* has a type{5} insertion (indirect msg number).
* This indirect msg number must also be translated,
* with a nested pTRANS poll. But only if the
* present poll is pMEM, pERROR or pWARN.
* At this point, if the present poll is pTRANS,
* exit with XM=0 ("handled").
*
 LC(2) =eIFURN (hex 58) "TFM WRN Lnnn:"
 ?B>C P Don't poll for pTRANS poll.
 GOYES HANDLD pTRANS poll! (pTRANS=EF)
 ?A#C B Message #88? (58 hex)
 GOYES EXIT No. Exit poll.
 C=R2 Yes. C(8-5)= insert msg number.
 GOSBVL =CSRC5 Shift msg number to C(A).
 CROEX Put in R0.
 R2=C Store R0 in R2 during poll.
 GOSBVL =POLL Poll to translate insertion
 CON(2) =pTRANS message. (Slow poll because
* nested.)
 RTNC Carry set= error from poll.
 C=R0 Transltd msg to C(A).
 GOSBVL =CSLC5 Shift transltd msg to C(8-5).

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 CR2EX Store back in R2.
 R0=C Original R0 back to R0.
EXIT C=-C-1 A Clear carry.
 RTNSXM
*
HANDLD XM=0 "Handled" for pTRANS poll.
 RTNCC
*
* End of LEXFILE
*
FILEND
 END

```

### 17.5.2 One-shot HPIL Translator

This Spanish translator for HPIL messages would ALWAYS provide Spanish translation, as long as it was present in memory. (Due to a late-discovered bug in HPIL, for any HPIL message translator to work it must be positioned in the file chain search order before the HPIL ROM. The easiest way to do this is for the user to copy the translator into system RAM; this causes it to come before the HPIL ROM in the file chain search. Subsequent releases of the HPIL ROM will correct this problem.) To disable the translation, the translator file must be purged from RAM.

In order for this particular example to work properly, the mainframe translator shown in the previous example must also be in memory. (This is not true in general; this example was constructed in conjunction with the previous translator.)

```

 TITLE LEXFILE<840123.1614>
*
* This file was generated on Wed Oct 19, 1983 9:47 am
* File Header
 NIBASC \ESP255 \ File Name (for lack of better one...)
 CON(4) =fLEX File Type
 NIBHEX 00 Flags
 NIBHEX 7490 Time
 NIBHEX 910138 Date
 REL(5) FILEND File Length
*
 NIBHEX FF Id
 CON(2) 255 Lowest Token
 CON(2) 0 Highest Token
 NIBHEX 00000 End of lex table chain
*
 NIBHEX F Speed table omitted
 CON(4) (TxBtSt)+1-(*) Offset to text table
 REL(4) MSGTBL Offset to message table

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 REL(5) POLHND Offset to poll handler
 STITLE Main Table
* Main Table
=xromFF
 STITLE Text Table
* Text Table
 TxTbSt Text table start
 TxTbEn NIBHEX 1FF Text termination
 STITLE HPIL Message Table: Espanol
MSGTBL
* HPIL error messages (Espanol) <840123.1614>
*
*
* NOTE ! NOTE ! NOTE ! NOTE ! NOTE ! NOTE ! NOTE ! NOTE ! NOTE
*
* +-----+
* | The following Spanish messages are not meant to be |
* | the official translations of the HPIL ROM messages. |
* | Please excuse the attempt at translation -- this is |
* | only meant to be an example of a complete translator |
* | LEX file. |
* |
* | The translation of message 00 is shown as an example. |
* | Since "HPIL" is a copywrited and widely accepted term, |
* | it is not recommended that it be changed. It is |
* | done here to demonstrate the implementation of a |
* | translated message prefix. Any error or warning |
* | taken from this table will have the "HPCC" prefix |
* | displayed. E.g., "HPCC ERR:Se Falta Medio". |
* +-----+
*
*
* -----
* The following equates define the message numbers for
* building blocks from the "01" table -- the Spanish
* translated mainframe messages.
* E.g., sEXCHR=4E, so 1EXCHR=104E (hex).
*
*
1EXCHR EQU 256+(=sEXCHR) Letras Demasiadas
1MSPAR EQU 256+(=sMSPAR) Se Falta Valor
1ILPAR EQU 256+(=sILPAR) Valor Prohibido
1ILEXP EQU 256+(=sILEXP) Expresion Invalida
1SYNTAX EQU 256+(=sSYNTAX) Sintaxis
1FPROT EQU 256+(=sFPROT) Archivo Protegido
1FnFND EQU 256+(=sFnFND) Archivo Desconocido
1FEXST EQU 256+(=sFEXST) Archio Existe
1DVCNF EQU 256+(=sDVCNF) Se Falta Accesorio
1INV-O EQU 256+(=sINV-O) Estado Invalido
1SYSER EQU 256+(=sSYSER) Error de Sistema
1DATTY EQU 256+(=sDATTY) Data Invalida
1IVARG EQU 256+(=sIVARG) Valor Invalido
1MEM EQU 256+(=sMEM) Memoria Insuficiente

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

*-----
*
 CON(2) 128 Min message #
 CON(2) 193 Max message #
*
*!!
* Message number 00 can be placed first because its !!
* total length is 16 nibbles. The first nibble past !!
* the range field MUST be a 0 !!! If message 00 is !!
* changed, another message with length=16 (or a !!
* multiple of 16) MUST be placed first!! !!
*00 HPIL !!
=sHPIL EQU 00 HPCC (HP Circuito de Canje)
 CON(2) 16 !!
 CON(2) 00 Message number 00 !!
 CON(1) 4 !!
 NIBASC \HPCC \ !!
 CON(1) 12 !!
*!!
*
* Message number 128 is a duplicate
* of message 00, so that MSG$(255000)
* will provide a translation.
*
=sHPIL* EQU 128
 CON(2) 8
 CON(2) 128 Message number 128
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sHPIL
 CON(1) 12

*01 ASSIGN IO Needed
*
=sNOASN EQU 129 Se Necesita ASSIGN IO
 CON(2) 27
 CON(2) 129 Message number 129
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sNECES
 CON(1) 8
 NIBASC \ASSIGN I\
 NIBASC \O\
 CON(1) 12

*03 Excess Chars
*
=sXCESS EQU 131 Letras Demasiadas
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 131 Message number 131
 CON(2) 15
 CON(4) =1EXCHR
 CON(1) 12

*04 Missing Parm
*

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

=sMSPAR EQU 132 Se Falta Valor
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 132 Message number 132
 CON(2) 15
 CON(4) =1MSPAR
 CON(1) 12

*05
* Illegal Parm
=sILPAR EQU 133 Valor Prohibido
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 133 Message number 133
 CON(2) 15
 CON(4) =1ILPAR
 CON(1) 12

*06
* Illegal Expr
=sILEXP EQU 134 Expresion Invalida
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 134 Message number 134
 CON(2) 15
 CON(4) =1ILEXP
 CON(1) 12

*07
* Syntax
=sSYNTAX EQU 135 Sintaxis
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 135 Message number 135
 CON(2) 15
 CON(4) =1SYNTAX
 CON(1) 12

*
* Errors 16-31 are tape errors
*

*16
* File Protect
=sfPROT EQU 144 Archivo Protegido
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 144 Message number 144
 CON(2) 15
 CON(4) =1FPROT
 CON(1) 12

*17
* End of Medium
=sEOTAP EQU 145 Fin de Medio
 CON(2) 23
 CON(2) 145 Message number 145
 CON(1) 6
 NIBASC \Fin de \
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sMEDIO
 CON(1) 12

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

|         |                   |                           |
|---------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| *18     |                   | Tape stall-Invalid Medium |
| *       |                   |                           |
| =sSTALL | EQU 146           | Medio Invalido            |
|         | CON(2) 14         |                           |
|         | CON(2) 146        | Message number 146        |
|         | CON(1) 13         |                           |
|         | CON(2) =sMEDIO    |                           |
|         | CON(2) 15         |                           |
|         | CON(4) =1INV-0    |                           |
|         | CON(1) 12         |                           |
| *19     |                   | Not LIF-Invalid Medium    |
| *       |                   |                           |
| =sNOLIF | EQU 147           | Medio Invalido            |
|         | CON(2) 8          |                           |
|         | CON(2) 147        | Message number 147        |
|         | CON(1) 13         |                           |
|         | CON(2) =sSTALL    |                           |
|         | CON(1) 12         |                           |
| *20     |                   | No Medium                 |
| *       |                   |                           |
| =sNOTAP | EQU 148           | Se Falta Medio            |
|         | CON(2) 27         |                           |
|         | CON(2) 148        | Message number 148        |
|         | CON(1) 8          |                           |
|         | NIBASC \Se Falta\ |                           |
|         | NIBASC \ \        |                           |
|         | CON(1) 13         |                           |
|         | CON(2) =sMEDIO    |                           |
|         | CON(1) 12         |                           |
| *22     |                   | File Not Found            |
| *       |                   |                           |
| =sNFILE | EQU 150           | Archivo Desconocido       |
|         | CON(2) 11         |                           |
|         | CON(2) 150        | Message number 150        |
|         | CON(2) 15         |                           |
|         | CON(4) =1FnFND    |                           |
|         | CON(1) 12         |                           |
| *23     |                   | New medium-Invalid Medium |
| *       |                   |                           |
| =sNEWTA | EQU 151           | Medio Invalido            |
|         | CON(2) 8          |                           |
|         | CON(2) 151        | Message number 151        |
|         | CON(1) 13         |                           |
|         | CON(2) =sSTALL    |                           |
|         | CON(1) 12         |                           |
| *24     |                   | No data -Invalid Medium   |
| *       |                   |                           |
| =sBLANK | EQU 152           | Medio Invalido            |
|         | CON(2) 8          |                           |
|         | CON(2) 152        | Message number 152        |
|         | CON(1) 13         |                           |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 CON(2) =sSTALL
 CON(1) 12
*25 Record #-Invalid Medium
*
=sRECRD EQU 153 Medio Invalido
 CON(2) 8
 CON(2) 153 Message number 153
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sSTALL
 CON(1) 12
*26 Checksum-Invalid Medium
*
=sCHSUM EQU 154 Medio Invalido
 CON(2) 8
 CON(2) 154 Message number 154
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sSTALL
 CON(1) 12
*28 Size of File
*
=sTSIZE EQU 156 Archivo Tamano
 CON(2) 35
 CON(2) 156 Message number 156
 CON(1) 11
 CON(1) 13
 NIBASC \Archivo \
 NIBASC \Tamano\
 CON(1) 12
*30 File Exists
*
=sEFILE EQU 158 Archio Existe
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 158 Message number 158
 CON(2) 15
 CON(4) =1FEXST
 CON(1) 12
*31 Directory Full
*
=sDIRFL EQU 159 Directorio Esta Lleno
 CON(2) 49
 CON(2) 159 Message number 159
 CON(1) 10
 NIBASC \Director\
 NIBASC \io \
 CON(1) 9
 NIBASC \Esta Lle\
 NIBASC \no\
 CON(1) 12
*
* Errors 32-47 are HPIL Errors
*
```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

*32 Device Not Found
*
=sTERM EQU 160 Se Falta Accesorio
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 160 Message number 160
 CON(2) 15
 CON(4) =1DVCNF
 CON(1) 12

*34 Device Not Ready
*
=sNORDY EQU 162 Accesorio No Esta Listo
 CON(2) 38
 CON(2) 162 Message number 162
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sACCES
 CON(1) 11
 CON(1) 13
 NIBASC \ No Esta\
 NIBASC \ Listo\
 CON(1) 12

*35 Loop Broken
*
=sLTIMO EQU 163 Circuito Interrumpido
 CON(2) 49
 CON(2) 163 Message number 163
 CON(1) 10
 NIBASC \Circuito\
 NIBASC \ In\
 CON(1) 9
 NIBASC \terrumpi\
 NIBASC \do\
 CON(1) 12

*36 Frame Error- Message Error
*
=sFLOST EQU 164 Error de Marco
 CON(2) 27
 CON(2) 164 Message number 164
 CON(1) 8
 NIBASC \Error de\
 NIBASC \ \
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sMARCO
 CON(1) 12

*37 Frame Overrun- Message Error
*
=sOVRUN EQU 165 Error de Marco
 CON(2) 8
 CON(2) 165 Message number 165
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sFLOST
 CON(1) 12

```



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

|             |            |                                   |
|-------------|------------|-----------------------------------|
| *38         |            | Frame Changed- Message Error      |
| *           |            |                                   |
| =sLPERR EQU | 166        | Error de Marco                    |
| CON(2)      | 8          |                                   |
| CON(2)      | 166        | Message number 166                |
| CON(1)      | 13         |                                   |
| CON(2)      | =sFLOST    |                                   |
| CON(1)      | 12         |                                   |
| *39         |            | Unexpected Message                |
| *           |            |                                   |
| =sUNEXP EQU | 167        | Marco Desconocido                 |
| CON(2)      | 34         |                                   |
| CON(2)      | 167        | Message number 167                |
| CON(1)      | 13         |                                   |
| CON(2)      | =sMARCO    |                                   |
| CON(1)      | 11         |                                   |
| CON(1)      | 11         |                                   |
| NIBASC      | \ Descono\ |                                   |
| NIBASC      | \cido\     |                                   |
| CON(1)      | 12         |                                   |
| *40         |            | Frame Lost- Message Error         |
| *           |            |                                   |
| =sXXXXX EQU | 168        | Error de Marco                    |
| CON(2)      | 8          |                                   |
| CON(2)      | 168        | Message number 168                |
| CON(1)      | 13         |                                   |
| CON(2)      | =sFLOST    |                                   |
| CON(1)      | 12         |                                   |
| *41         |            | Invalid Mode                      |
| *           |            |                                   |
| =sBADMD EQU | 169        | Estado Invalido                   |
| CON(2)      | 24         |                                   |
| CON(2)      | 169        | Message number 169                |
| CON(1)      | 5          |                                   |
| NIBASC      | \Estado\   |                                   |
| CON(2)      | 15         |                                   |
| CON(4)      | =1INV-0    |                                   |
| CON(1)      | 12         |                                   |
| *42         |            | Frame Timeout (SCI)- Loop Broken  |
| *           |            |                                   |
| =sFRTOI EQU | 170        | Circuito Interrumpido             |
| CON(2)      | 8          |                                   |
| CON(2)      | 170        | Message number 170                |
| CON(1)      | 13         |                                   |
| CON(2)      | =sLTIMO    |                                   |
| CON(1)      | 12         |                                   |
| *43         |            | Frame Timeout (Loop)- Loop Broken |
| *           |            |                                   |
| =sFRTOL EQU | 171        | Circuito Interrumpido             |
| CON(2)      | 8          |                                   |
| CON(2)      | 171        | Message number 171                |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sLTIMO
 CON(1) 12
*44 System Error (Bad cur addr)
*
=sSYSer EQU 172 Error de Sistema
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 172 Message number 172
 CON(2) 15
 CON(4) =1SYSER
 CON(1) 12

*45 Self-test failed
*
=sTESTIF EQU 173 Falta Verificarse
 CON(2) 41
 CON(2) 173 Message number 173
 CON(1) 10
 NIBASC \Falta Ve\
 NIBASC \rif\
 CON(1) 5
 NIBASC \icarse\
 CON(1) 12

*47 Device Type
*
=sDTYPE EQU 175 Tipo de Accesorio
 CON(2) 25
 CON(2) 175 Message number 175
 CON(1) 7
 NIBASC \Tipo de \
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sACCES
 CON(1) 12

*
*52 Aborted
*
=sABORTI EQU 180 Se Ha Abortado
 CON(2) 35
 CON(2) 180 Message number 180
 CON(1) 11
 CON(1) 13
 NIBASC \Se Ha Ab\
 NIBASC \ortado\
 CON(1) 12

*53 Invalid Device Spec
*
=sDSPEC EQU 181 Especific'n de Accesorio
 CON(2) 40
 CON(2) 181 Message number 181
 CON(1) 11
 CON(1) 14
 NIBASC \Especifi\

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 NIBASC \c'n de \
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sACCES
 CON(1) 12
*54 Not numeric- Data Type
*
=sNNUMR EQU 182
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 182 Message number 182
 CON(2) 15
 CON(4) =1DATTY
 CON(1) 12
*56 Invalid Arg
*
=sRANGE EQU 184 Valor Invalido
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 184 Message number 184
 CON(2) 15
 CON(4) =1IVARG
 CON(1) 12
*57 No Loop
*
=sNMBX EQU 185 Se Falta Circuito
 CON(2) 41
 CON(2) 185 Message number 185
 CON(1) 10
 NIBASC \Se Falta\
 NIBASC \ Ci\
 CON(1) 5
 NIBASC \rcuito\
 CON(1) 12
*59 Insufficient memory
*
=sNORAM EQU 187 Memoria Insuficiente
 CON(2) 11
 CON(2) 187 Message number 187
 CON(2) 15
 CON(4) =1MEM
 CON(1) 12
*60 RESTORE IO Needed
*
=sOFFED EQU 188 Se Necesita RESTORE IO
 CON(2) 29
 CON(2) 188 Message number 188
 CON(1) 13
 CON(2) =sNECES
 CON(1) 9
 NIBASC \RESTORE \
 NIBASC \IO\
 CON(1) 12
*

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

*
* Error messages 64-end are building blocks
*
*
=sMARCO EQU 190 Marco
 CON(2) 16
 CON(2) 190 Message number 190
 CON(1) 4
 NIBASC \Marco\
 CON(1) 12
*
=sACCES EQU 191 Accesorio
 CON(2) 24
 CON(2) 191 Message number 191
 CON(1) 8
 NIBASC \Accesori\
 NIBASC \o\
 CON(1) 12
*
=sMEDIO EQU 192 Medio
 CON(2) 16
 CON(2) 192 Message number 192
 CON(1) 4
 NIBASC \Medio\
 CON(1) 12
*
=sNECES EQU 193 Se Necesita
 CON(2) 31
 CON(2) 193 Message number 193
 CON(1) 11
 CON(1) 11
 NIBASC \Se Neces\
 NIBASC \ita \
 CON(1) 12
*
 NIBHEX FF Table terminator
*
* Poll handler goes here. Handler for VER$ poll is
* provided
*
POLHND ?B=0 B VER$ poll?
 GOYES hVER$0 Yes.
 GONC hVER$2 No. To hVER$2 w/carry clear.
hVER$0 C=R3
 D1=C
 A=R2
 D1=D1- (VER$en)-(VER$st)-2
 CD1EX
 ?A>C A
 GOYES hVER$1
 D1=C

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```

R3=C
*
**!! LCASC text to be returned for VER$ here
* Include a leading blank!!
*
VER$st LCASC \ ESP255\ For lack of a better name....
VER$en DAT1=C (VER$en)-(VER$st)-2
hVER$1 RTNSXM
*
**!! Continue poll handler here: Carry is clear, VER$ poll
* has been handled.
*
hVER$2
 ?B=0 P Eliminate pTEST poll, which
 GOYES EXIT is in the following range.
 A=B A Poll number to A (for RANGE).
*
 NIBHEX 33 This is a LC(4)...
 CON(2) =pTRANS pTRANS in C(B)
 CON(2) =pWARN pWARN in C(3-2)
*
 GOSBVL =RANGE Poll number in range?
 GOC EXIT No.
MSGhnd C=R0 Msg number to C(3-0).
 A=C A Copy msg num to A.
 P= 2
*
 LCHEX FF Now load ID # of LEX file.
 P= 0 HPIL LEX#.
 ?A#C A Right LEX file?
 GOYES EXIT No. Don't translate.
 CSTEEX Yes. Set bit7 (adds
 ST=1 7 128 to message number,
 CSTEEX unless this bit already
 R0=C set -- just in case.)
 B=B+1 P pTRANS poll?
 GOC HANDLD Yes. Exit "handled".
*
* ! At this point, any message which has a type {5}
* ! insertion must be checked. These messages are
* ! known at the time the msg table is constructed.
* ! If we are handling such a message, a separate
* ! (nested) pTRANS poll might have to be issued to
* ! translate the inserted message; but only issue
* ! the nested poll if you are currently handling a
* ! a pMEM, pERROR or pWARN poll (pTRANS has already
* ! exited). To issue the nested poll, fetch the
* ! indirect msg number from R2, put it in C(A), then
* ! CROEX Put it in R0(A).
* ! R2=C Store R0 in R2 during poll.
* ! GOSBVL =POLL Issue pTRANS poll.

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Code Examples

```
* ! CON(2) =pTRANS
* ! RTNC Carry set if error in poll.
* ! C=R2
* ! CROEX Original R0 back to R0.
* ! And restore insert message number back in R2.
* NOTE: HPIL ROM does not have any type {5} insertions.
*
EXIT C=-C-1 A Clear carry.
 RTNSXM
*
HANDLD XM=0 pTRANS poll "Handled".
 RTNCC
*
* End of LEXFILE
*
FILEND
 END
```

### 17.5.3 Selectable Translator

The chapter entitled "Message Handling" describes the scheme behind a selectable translator. This example is built from the two in the previous subsections; it could be easily extended to include many more languages.

The structure of the controlling LEX file is described below, followed by example satellite LEX files.

#### CONTROLLING LEX FILE:

- 1) Provides keyword to select a language (Keyword and syntax has not been decided upon).
- 2) When language is selected, it searches the LEX system buffer for the entries for SATELLITE LEX FILE #1, SATELLITE LEX FILE #2, and so on. In each entry it replaces the address with one which will point to the appropriate language table in that satellite file.
- 3) Also when a language is selected, it opens a system buffer (number defined by bTRANS symbol) to store the current language. If the buffer exists, it simply modifies it.
- 4) Provides Poll handler for pCONFIG which repeats step 2, using the language stored in the system buffer bTRANS as a reference.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

- 5) Provides Poll handler for VER\$ for the entire entourage of LEX files, supplying a string such as "TRANS:ESP" (indicating the language in effect; e.g., ESP = ESPANOL).

SATELLITE LEX FILE #1:

```

TITLE LEXFILE<840123.1614>
*
* This file was generated on Wed Oct 19, 1983 9:46 am
* File Header
 NIBASC \TRANS01 \ File Name (for lack of better one...??
 CON(4) =fLEX File Type
 NIBHEX 00 Flags
 NIBHEX 6490 Time
 NIBHEX 910138 Date
 REL(5) FILEND File Length
*
 NIBHEX 10 Id
 CON(2) 255 Lowest Token
 CON(2) 0 Highest Token
 NIBHEX 00000 End of lex table chain
*
 NIBHEX F Speed table omitted
 CON(4) (TxTbSt)+1-(*) Offset to text table
 CON(4) 0000 No message table.
 REL(5) rtnsxm No poll handler.
 STITLE Main Table
* Main Table
=xrom01
 STITLE Text Table
* Text Table
 TxTbSt Text table start
 TxTbEn NIBHEX 1FF Text termination
*
 POLHND Poll handler for all translators
 in this satellite file.
 ?B=0 P Eliminate pTEST poll, which
 GOYES EXIT is in the following range.
 A=B A Poll number to A (for RANGE).
*
 NIBHEX 33 This is a LC(4)...
 CON(2) =pTRANS pTRANS in C(B)
 CON(2) =pWARN pWARN in C(3-2)
*
 GOSBVL =RANGE Poll number in range?
 GOC EXIT No.
MSGhnd A=R0 Fetch msg number in A(3-0).
 A=0 B

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

ASL A
?A#0 A If m/f message, A(A)=0.
GOYES EXIT
A=R0 M/f message. Change LEX#
A=A+1 XS to 01.
R0=A

* One message in the mainframe (message #88)
* has a type{5} insertion (indirect msg number).
* This indirect msg number must also be translated,
* with a nested pTRANS poll. But only if the
* present poll is pMEM, pERROR or pWARN.
* At this point, if the present poll is pTRANS,
* exit with XM=0 ("handled").
*

LC(2) =eTFWRN (hex 58) "TFM WRN Lnnn:"
?B>C P Don't poll for pTRANS poll.
GOYES HANDLD pTRANS poll! (pTRANS=EF)
?A#C B Message #88? (58 hex)
GOYES EXIT No. Exit poll.
C=R2 Yes. C(8-5)= insert msg number.
GOSEVL =CSRC5 Shift msg number to C(A).
CROEX Put in R0.
R2=C Store R0 in R2 during poll.
GOSEVL =POLL Poll to translate insertion
CON(2) =pTRANS message. (Slow poll because
* nested.)

RTNC Carry set= error from poll.
C=R0 Transltd msg to C(A).
GOSEVL =CSLC5 Shift transltd msg to C(8-5).
CR2EX Store back in R2.
R0=C Original R0 back to R0.
EXIT C=-C-1 A Clear carry.
rtnsxm RTNSXM
*
HANDLD XM=0 "Handled" for pTRANS poll.
RTNCC
*
*

```

STITLE Spanish table

```

* -----
* -- Truncated LEX file for Spanish translation --
* (identical to a LEX file, but no file header)
*
NIBHEX 10 Id
CON(2) 255 Lowest Token
CON(2) 0 Highest Token
NIBHEX 00000 End of lex table chain
*
NIBHEX F Speed table omitted
CON(4) (TxTbSt)+1-(*) Offset to text table
REL(4) SPANms Offset to message table

```



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

 REL(5) POLHND Offset to poll handler
* Main Table
* When Spanish is selected, the entry in
* LEX system buffer should point to the
* label SPANtb.
=SPANtb
* Text Table
 TxTbSt Text table start
 TxTbEn NIBHEX 1FF Text termination
*
*
* Message Table (Spanish)
*
 SPANms
 CON(2) 1 Min message #
 CON(2) 249 Max message #
*
=sZRDIV EQU 8 /Cero
 CON(2) 16
 CON(2) 8 Message number 8

 entire message table as shown in previous example .

*
 NIBHEX FF Message table terminator.
*
*
* STITLE German table
* -----
* -- Truncated LEX file for German translation --
* (identical to a LEX file, but no file header)
*
 NIBHEX 10 Id
 CON(2) 255 Lowest Token
 CON(2) 0 Highest Token
 NIBHEX 00000 End of lex table chain
*
 NIBHEX F Speed table omitted
 CON(4) (TxTbSt)+1-(*) Offset to text table
 REL(4) GERMms Offset to message table
 REL(5) POLHND Offset to poll handler
* Main Table
* When German is selected, the entry in
* the LEX system buffer should point to
* the label GERMtb.
=GERMtb
* Text Table
 TxTbSt Text table start
 TxTbEn NIBHEX 1FF Text termination
* Message Table (German)

```

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Code Examples

```

*
GERMes
 CON(2) 1 Min message #
 CON(2) 249 Max message #
*
.....
. ... entire message table as translated into German .
.....
*
 NIBHEX FF Message table terminator.

 .
 .
 more language tables as desired
 .
 .

* End of LEXFILE
*
FILEND
 END

```

SATELLITE LEX FILE #2:

This would be constructed the same as satellite LEX file #1, except that it would contain translators for the HPIL ROM, for example. The poll handler for pTRANS, pMEM, pERROR and pWARN would be the same as that found in the example for the one-shot HPIL translator.

ADDITIONAL SATELLITE LEX FILES:

An additional LEX files would be constructed for each translation of a master LEX file. E.g, one satellite file for the Text Editor, one for the MATH ROM, etc. Each satellite file would contain several message tables, one for each language.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Resource Allocation

|                           |            |
|---------------------------|------------|
| HP-71 RESOURCE ALLOCATION | CHAPTER 18 |
|---------------------------|------------|

There are several logical and physical resources in the operating system, such as ID numbers or fixed RAM locations, which will from time to time need to be allocated to OEMs or HP application projects. This chapter lists the current allocations for those system resources, such as LEX IDs, system buffer numbers, or poll numbers, that may be reserved out of a range of possible values.

HP-71 Operating system resources will be allocated in a conservative manner by arrangement with HP. If you wish to market software which requires that you reserve certain of these allocations for your exclusive use, please contact Systems Engineering Support in the HP Portable Computer Division Product Support Group at (503) 757-2000 for further information.

#### 18.1 Device Types, Classes and Codes

A brief attempt to explain the very different functions of these similar-sounding terms:

A device type is a nibble which resides in a plug-in device's configuration ID. A value of 0-5 identifies a memory-type device. A value of F identifies a memory-mapped I/O device (such as HPIL mailbox). Because of the restrictions on Device Codes, device types of 6-E are not allowed.

A device class is a nibble which resides in a plug-in device's configuration ID. It is meaningful only for memory-mapped I/O devices, and identifies what sort of memory-mapped device it is. While the device type was used to inform the configuration code that the device should be configured in memory-mapped I/O space, the device class actually identifies what it is, so the support code (HPIL ROM, or whatever) can find it. This nibble becomes part of the configuration table entry.

The device code has nothing to do with the system configuration. It is used within the COPY command to identify memory OR non-memory devices to which the mainframe does NOT know how to copy. For example, EEPROM is a memory device to which the mainframe does not know how to copy; ":TAPE" is a non-memory device to which the mainframe does not know how to copy. Here is an example of how they are used:

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Resource Allocation

MEMORY: If a "COPY TO :PORT(1)" is executed and the mainframe code sees something other than a RAM in PORT(1), it will issue a pCOPY poll seeking some handler which can copy to said device. The device is identified with a device code, which is, in this case, the device type + 1 (as determined from looking at the configuration tables). If, for example, PORT(1) contains an EEPROM (device type = 2), this poll will seek a handler which can copy to something with a device code of 3. Legal device codes are 0-6, although COPY will not poll if the destination has a device code of 0 or 1.

NON-MEMORY: If a "COPY ':TAPE'" is executed, a pFILXQ poll will allow HPIL to recognize ':TAPE', and handle the poll by saying that ':TAPE' has a device code of 8. A subsequent pCOPY poll will look for a handler for a device type of 8. The HPIL ROM will respond and handle the copy. All HPIL-recognized devices have a device code of 8; more specific identification is possible through the "internal coding" fields on the pFILXQ and pCOPYx polls.

Device code 7 is the card reader.

This number goes by several names, among them "Device ID" (in pFILXQ documentation) and "Device Type" (in pCOPYx documentation).

Here are the current allocations of device types, classes and codes:

#### 18.1.1 Device Types

- 0 = RAM
- 1 = ROM
- 2 = EEPROM
- 3 = (unassigned)
- 4 = (unassigned)
- 5 = (unassigned)
- F = Memory-mapped I/O

#### 18.1.2 Device Class

- 0 = HPIL mailbox
- 1-F = (unassigned)

#### 18.1.3 Device Codes

- 0 = System RAM
- 1 = Independent RAM
- 2-6 = Device type + 1

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Resource Allocation

7 = Card reader  
8 = HPIL  
9-F = (unassigned)

## 18.2 File Types

The following file types are currently allocated for the HP-71 product:

### MAINFRAME FILE TYPES

| Type  | Description                      | Security: | Hex Numeric Value |      |      |      |
|-------|----------------------------------|-----------|-------------------|------|------|------|
|       |                                  |           | Normal            | S*   | P*   | E*   |
| BASIC | Tokenized BASIC program          |           | E214              | E215 | E216 | E217 |
| BIN   | HP-71 Microcode                  |           | E204              | E205 | E206 | E207 |
| DATA  | Fixed Data                       |           | E0F0              | E0F1 | n/a  | n/a  |
| LEX   | Language Extension               |           | E208              | E209 | E20A | E20B |
| KEY   | Key Assignment                   |           | E20C              | E20D | n/a  | n/a  |
| SDATA | Stream Data                      |           | E0D0              | n/a  | n/a  | n/a  |
| TEXT  | ASCII text, in LIF Type 1 format |           | 0001              | E0D5 | n/a  | n/a  |

### APPLICATIONS FILE TYPES

| Type  | Description           | Security: | Hex Numeric Value |      |      |      |
|-------|-----------------------|-----------|-------------------|------|------|------|
|       |                       |           | Normal            | S*   | P*   | E*   |
| FORTH | Forth vocabulary file |           | E218              | E219 | E21A | E21B |

\* S indicates secure, P indicates Private, E indicates executable

## 18.3 Special Physical Key Code Allocations

A LEX file may wish to "push" keys by grabbing the key definition poll. In order to force a key definition poll, the LEX file may put a special physical keycode (PKC) into the keybuffer (possibly during the SREQ poll) which it will recognize as its own and not as a real key. To avoid conflict, LEX files need to be assigned a unique PKC for this purpose.

### Special PKC Allocations

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Resource Allocation

| Application | Keycode(s) |
|-------------|------------|
| HPIL        | FF         |
| Wand        | FE         |

#### 18.4 LEX IDs

There are 256 LEX IDs within the HP-71, numbered 00 to FF (Hex). They are allocated as described in this section. The first two (IDs 00 and 01) are used by the mainframe. One hundred and fifty LEX IDs are reserved for external or custom products.

An important feature of HP-71 LEX IDs is the ability to allocate portions of a LEX ID. Each LEX ID controls a set of keyword tokens and message numbers which are allocated individually or on a range basis. A particular application may use only a portion of the 255 keywords or 255 message numbers within one LEX ID. Another application can be allocated the next partition of entries within the same LEX ID, and so on. This allows full utilization of LEX IDs.

A summary of the current allocation of LEX IDs is provided below. A further breakdown of the token/message range allocations within the LEX IDs is provided following the summary.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Resource Allocation

LEX ID ALLOCATION SUMMARY

| LEX ID RANGE<br>(Hex) |    | CATEGORY                                  | TOKENS  | MESSAGES |
|-----------------------|----|-------------------------------------------|---------|----------|
| 00 - 01               |    | MAINFRAME                                 |         |          |
| 02 - 51               |    | APPLICATIONS                              |         |          |
| 02 - 10               |    | MATHEMATICS                               |         |          |
|                       | 02 | Math                                      | All     | All      |
|                       | 03 | Curve Fit                                 | All     | All      |
| 11 - 1F               |    | ENGINEERING                               |         |          |
| 20 - 29               |    | BUSINESS                                  |         |          |
| 2A - 2E               |    | INFORMATION MANAGEMENT                    |         |          |
| 2F - 33               |    | LANGUAGES                                 |         |          |
|                       | 2F | FORTH/Assembler                           | All     | All      |
| 34 - 38               |    | TOOLS                                     |         |          |
|                       | 34 | Debugger                                  | All     | All      |
| 39 - 4C               |    | GENERAL PURPOSE                           |         |          |
|                       | 39 | Editor                                    | All     | All      |
| 4D - 51               |    | MISCELLANEOUS                             |         |          |
| 52 - 5B               |    | USER'S LIBRARY                            |         |          |
|                       | 52 | First LEX ID                              | 01 - 03 | 0        |
|                       | 53 | Second LEX ID                             | 01      | 01       |
| 5C - 5E               |    | TEMPORARY/SCRATCH                         |         |          |
| 5F - AE               |    | EXTERNAL PRODUCTS<br>(3rd Party, ISVs...) |         |          |
| AF - E0               |    | CUSTOM PRODUCTS                           |         |          |
| E1 - F4               |    | CUSTOM PRODUCTS - SPECIAL                 |         |          |
| F5 - FF               |    | PIL and I/O                               |         |          |
|                       | F5 | Wand                                      | All     | All      |
|                       | FF | HPIL                                      | All     | All      |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Resource Allocation

Some detailed information:

All BASIC ROM applications sold by HP will respond to the VER\$ poll to indicate the appropriate version of the software. This requires all BASIC ROM applications to include a LEX file containing no keywords, but the appropriate code to indicate the proper VER\$. The last LEX ID for Custom Products - Special (244) will be used as the LEX ID to VER\$ response of BASIC applications. This LEX ID may also be used for keywords by a particular custom application, without conflict.

The Temporary/Scratch LEX IDs allow users to generate their own temporary and personal LEX files without the intervention of HP needed. This guarantees that usage of this ID does not conflict with an HP supported or custom ROM.

The User's Library LEX files are collections of keywords and functions collected from HP-71 users. As additional keywords are received, the User's Library will release updated versions of these LEX files.

A further breakdown of certain LEX ID allocations is given below.

18.4.1 LEX ID 52 Hex - First User's Library ID

KEYWORD/FUNCTION TOKEN ALLOCATIONS  
-----

- |    |                                                                                       |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 01 | KEYWAIT\$<br>Hold machine in low-power state until a key is placed in the key buffer. |
| 02 | SCROLL<br>Display a scrolled line.                                                    |
| 03 | MSG\$<br>Returns translated error message by polling language translator LEX files.   |

18.4.2 LEX ID 53 Hex - Second User's Library ID

KEYWORD/FUNCTION TOKEN ALLOCATIONS  
-----



HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Resource Allocation

01     DEBUG  
       Accesses Hard-configured Debugger ROM

MESSAGE NUMBER ALLOCATIONS  
 -----

01     Debugger Not Found

18.5   Poll Process Number Allocations

Following is a list of poll numbers defined for the mainframe.

| Symbolic<br>Name | Process #<br>(HEX) | Brief Description                   |
|------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| -----            |                    |                                     |
| pVER\$           | 00                 | VER\$ poll                          |
| pDEVCP           | 01                 | Device Parse                        |
| pFILDC           | 02                 | File Spec Decompile                 |
| pFILXQ           | 03                 | File Execute - allows dedicated dvc |
| pFSPCp           | 04                 | File Spec Parse                     |
| pFSPCx           | 05                 | File Spec Execute                   |
| pCAT             | 06                 | CAT on non-mainframe device         |
| pCAT\$           | 07                 | CAT\$ of non-mainframe file         |
| pCOPYx           | 08                 | COPY execute: unknown Device >8     |
| pCREAT           | 09                 | Create file in external device      |
| pDIDST           | 0A                 | Device ID store in RAM @ D1         |
| pFPROT           | 0B                 | SECURE/UNSECURE/PRIVATE             |
| pLIST            | 0C                 | LIST of non-mainframe file          |
| pMERGE           | 0D                 | MERGE file dealing w/ funny device  |
| pPRTCL           | 0E                 | Print class                         |
| pPRTIS           | 0F                 | Printer IS                          |
| pPURGE           | 10                 | PURGE on non-mainframe device       |
| pRNAME           | 11                 | RENAME on non-mainframe device      |
| pENTER           | 12                 | Enter data from HP-IL               |
| pPIL2            | 13                 | Reserved for HPIL                   |
| pPIL3            | 14                 | Reserved for HPIL                   |
| pPIL4            | 15                 | Reserved for HPIL                   |
| pPIL5            | 16                 | Reserved for HPIL                   |
| pFINDF           | 17                 | Find file                           |
| pRDCBF           | 18                 | Read current record to file buffer  |
| pRDNBF           | 19                 | Write buffer out & read next record |
| pWRCBF           | 1A                 | Write file buffer to current record |
| pKYDF            | 1B                 | Build key defn in KEYRD             |
| pWTKY            | 1C                 | Waiting for key in KEYRD            |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Resource Allocation

|         |    |                                           |
|---------|----|-------------------------------------------|
| pIMXQT  | 1D | IMAGE execution starts                    |
| pIMCHR  | 1E | Unrecognized IMAGE char in parse.         |
| pIMXCH  | 1F | Unrecognized IMAGE symbol in execution.   |
| pIMbck  | 20 | IMAGE: bckwd search processing            |
| pIMcpi  | 21 | IMAGE: cmplx field initialization         |
| pIMcpw  | 22 | IMAGE: work on complex number             |
| pCRT=8  | 23 | Create non-HP-71 type file                |
| pWCRD8  | 24 | Write card, copycode=8                    |
| pEOFIL  | 25 | End of file reached in READ #/PRINT #     |
| pPRIN#  | 26 | PRINT # on non-HP-71 type file            |
| pREAD#  | 27 | READ # on non-HP-71 type file             |
| pSREC#  | 28 | RESTORE # on non-HP-71 type file          |
| pCURSR  | 29 | Cursor Up/Down non-BASIC file type        |
| pDATLN  | 2A | Return file data length on non-HP-71 file |
| pEDIT   | 2B | EDIT with non-BASIC file type             |
| pFASCH  | 2C | Search for filetype by mnemonic           |
| pFTYPE  | 2D | File type                                 |
| pLIST2  | 2E | LIST non-BASIC/non-KEY file               |
| pMRGE2  | 2F | MERGE non-BASIC/non-KEY file              |
| pRUNft  | 30 | RUN with unknown File Type                |
| pRUNnB  | 31 | RUN non-BASIC file                        |
| pPRGPR  | 32 | PURGE of non-RAM file                     |
| pCRDAB  | 33 | Abort card read poll                      |
| pRCRD   | 34 | Read card poll                            |
| pWCRD   | 35 | Write card poll                           |
| pCALRS  | 36 | To restore information from CALL stack    |
| pCALSV  | 37 | To save information on CALL stack         |
| pCMLPX  | 38 | Complex math                              |
| pREN    | 39 | Renumber a XWORD stmt with line #         |
| pRTINTp | 3A | Return Type unknown                       |
| pTIMR#  | 3B | Timer # > 3 in ON TIMER/OFF TIMER stmts   |
| pTRFMx  | 3C | Supply Transform Handler Address          |
| pFNIN   | 3D | Entering user-defined function            |
| pFNOUT  | 3E | Exiting user-defined function             |

----- Poll numbers allocated after mainframe release ----- date --??  
pWAND 40 For additional barcode decoders. 01/27/84  
----- (end of poll numbers allocate after mainframe release) -----??

|        |    |                                          |
|--------|----|------------------------------------------|
| pTRANS | EF | Poll to Translate a Message              |
| pTEST  | F0 | Test poll for timing POLLs.              |
| pMEM   | F1 | Insufficient Memory                      |
| pERROR | F2 | Error message about to go out.           |
| pWARN  | F3 | Warning msg about to go out.             |
| pPARSE | F4 | Parse take-over poll - FAST Poll         |
| pBSCen | F5 | Entering BASIC interpreter               |
| pBSCex | F6 | Exiting BASIC interpreter                |
| pZERPG | F7 | Zero addresses/RAM associated w/ Program |
| pExcpt | F8 | Exception check after statement          |
| pSREQ  | F9 | Service request (if SREQ<>0)             |
| pMNLp  | FA | Main Loop                                |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Resource Allocation

|         |    |                                  |
|---------|----|----------------------------------|
| pCONFIG | FB | Configuration                    |
| ppWROF  | FC | Power off                        |
| pDSWKY  | FD | Deep Sleep Wakeup -- key or not  |
| pDSWKN  | FE | Deep Sleep Wakeup -- no key down |
| pCLDST  | FF | Cold start                       |

#### 18.6 Reserved RAM Allocations

Reserved RAM is a section of fixed address RAM provided by the operating system for use by application software on an allocation basis.

|       |       |                                     |
|-------|-------|-------------------------------------|
| 2F986 | Bit 0 | Math ROM (Complex image status bit) |
|       | Bit 1 | Available                           |
|       | Bit 2 | "                                   |
|       | Bit 3 | "                                   |
| 2F987 |       | "                                   |
| .     |       | "                                   |
| .     |       | "                                   |
| .     |       | "                                   |
| 2F9E5 |       | "                                   |

#### 18.7 System Buffer ID Allocations

| Buffer Name | Description                | Range in Hex Start Stop |
|-------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| bSTMT       | Statement buffer           | 801                     |
| bIEXKY      | Immediate execute key      | 802                     |
| bFIB        | File information           | 803                     |
| bASSGN      | ASSIGN# information        | 804                     |
| bFILE       | Temp for file manipulation | 805                     |
| bSTAT       | Statistics                 | 806                     |
| bCARD       | Card reader                | 807                     |
| bSTART      | STARTUP command            | 808                     |
| bECOMD      | External command           | 809                     |
| bINLIN      | INLINE statement           | 80A                     |
|             | Available                  | 80B                     |
|             | Available                  | 80C                     |
|             | Available                  | 80D                     |
| bKBDIS      | KEYBOARD IS key defs       | 80E                     |
| bPILSV      | HPIL save area             | 80F                     |
| bPILAI      | ASSIGNIO names             | 810                     |
| bSTMXQ      | HPIL statement execution   | 811                     |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
 HP-71 Resource Allocation

|        |                            |         |
|--------|----------------------------|---------|
| bMATH  | Math ROM                   | 812     |
| bSOLVE | SOLVE (Math ROM)           | 813     |
| bINTEG | INTEGRAL (Math ROM)        | 814     |
| bMATIO | Matrix IO (Math ROM)       | 815     |
|        | Available                  | 816     |
| bCFIT  | (Curve Fitting ROM)        | 817     |
| bCHISQ | Chi Sq (Curve Fitting ROM) | 818     |
| bGRAD. | Gradient (Curve Fit ROM)   | 819     |
| bWAND  | Wand Status/Cksum Info     | 81A     |
| bTRANS | Message Translator         | BFA     |
| bCHARS | Alternate Character Set    | BFB     |
| bLEX   | LEX file addresses         | BFC     |
|        | Unused                     | BFD     |
| bROMTB | ROM Configuration Table    | BFE     |
| bSCRTC | Scratch buffers            | E00 FFF |

#### 18.8 GOSUB Stack Item Type Allocations (RETURN Types)

- 0 Return to program
- 1 Return to keyboard
- 2 ON TIMER 1 ... GOSUB
- 3 ON TIMER 2 ... GOSUB
- 4 ON TIMER 3 ... GOSUB
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8 Return to assembly language code
- 9 Special (to be allocated)
- 10 Special (to be allocated)
- 11 Special (to be allocated)
- 12 Special (to be allocated)
- 13 Special (to be allocated)
- 14 Special (to be allocated)
- 15 Boundary Address
  - If address = 0
    - Environment boundary
  - else
    - Update address

#### 18.9 System Flag Allocations

| Flag  | Mnemonic | Function |
|-------|----------|----------|
| ----- | -----    | -----    |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Resource Allocation

\*\*

\*\* TEST AND MODIFY FLAGS

\*\*

|     |        |                            |
|-----|--------|----------------------------|
| -1  | flQIET | Quiet Mode                 |
| -2  | flBEEP | Beep On                    |
| -3  | flCTON | Continuous On              |
| -4  | flINX  | Inexact result             |
| -5  | flUNF  | Underflow                  |
| -6  | flOVF  | Overflow                   |
| -7  | flDVZ  | Divide by Zero             |
| -8  | flIVL  | Invalid operation          |
| -9  | flUSER | User Mode set              |
| -10 | flRAD  | RAD trig mode              |
| -11 | flINFR | Round to Infinity          |
| -12 | flNEGR | Negative Round             |
| -13 | flFXEN | FIX/ENG flag               |
| -14 | flSCEN | SCI/ENG flag               |
| -15 | flLC   | Lower Case enabled         |
| -16 | flBASE | Base Option (high bit!)    |
| -17 | flDG0  | Display digit bit 0        |
| -18 | flDG1  | Display digit bit 1        |
| -19 | flDG2  | Display digit bit 2        |
| -20 | flDG3  | Display digit bit 3        |
| -21 | flPDWN | Don't pwr loop down autom. |
| -22 | flEXTD | Use extended addressing    |
| -23 | flEOT  | Entry terminated by EOT    |
| -24 | flNZ4  | "                          |
| -25 | flBPLD | Beep LOUD                  |
| -26 | flNOPR | Don't Prompt               |
| -27 |        | Alternate message language |

\*\*

\*\* TEST ONLY FLAGS

\*\*

|     |        |                             |
|-----|--------|-----------------------------|
| -42 | flMPI  | Module pulled               |
| -43 | flDORM | Machine is dormant          |
| -44 | flRTN  | Always Return from MEMERR   |
| -45 | flCLOC | Clock mode (1 sec update)   |
| -46 | flEXAC | EXACT flag                  |
| -47 | flCMDS | Command Stack Active        |
| -48 | flCTRL | Control key hit             |
| -49 | flPWDN | DSLEEP called from PWR down |
| -50 | flMKOF | Req set TRNOF in MAINLP     |
| -51 | flTNOF | Turnoff at MAINLP           |
| -52 | flVIEW | VIEW key pressed            |
| -53 |        | Reserved for Future Use     |
| -54 |        | Reserved for Future Use     |
| -55 |        | Reserved for Future Use     |
| -56 |        | Reserved for Future Use     |
| -57 | flAC   | AC Annunciator              |
| -58 | flUSRX | User Mode suspend           |
| -59 | flRPTD | Key repeated                |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
HP-71 Resource Allocation

|     |        |                         |
|-----|--------|-------------------------|
| -60 | flALRM | Alarm Annunciator       |
| -61 | flBAT  | Low Battery Annunciator |
| -62 | flPRGM | Program Annunciator     |
| -63 | flSUSP | Suspend Annunciator     |
| -64 | flCALC | Calc Mode Annunciator   |

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Glossary

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| GLOSSARY | APPENDIX A |
|----------|------------|

**Absolute address**

An address which is equal to the exact physical address of the location it designates.

**BET**

Abbreviation for "Branch Every Time." Refers to a GOC or GONC machine instruction which is known to always be equivalent to a GOTO because the state of the carry is predicatably set or clear, respectively. This is a packing technique which saves 1 nibble (GOTO takes 4 nibbles while GOC and GONC take only 3) but should be used with caution and should always be clearly labeled as a BET.

**CALL stack**

The CALL stack is used to store the local environment of a program or subprogram which has called a subprogram or user-defined function.

**File chain**

The data structure by which the HP-71 file system stores multiple files in main RAM or in independent RAM.

**General purpose buffer**

Alternate name for a system buffer.

**Independent RAM**

A plug-in RAM memory module which has been declared as an independent file system by the FREE PORT command.

**IRAM**

Abbreviation for Independent RAM.

**I/O buffer**

Alternate name for a system buffer.

**Main loop**

The outermost loop of the HP-71 operating system; the control loop. See the "System Control" chapter for further information.

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Glossary

PC

Abbreviation for "Program Counter." The CPU program counter register is referred to as the PC register, and contains the address of the next instruction the CPU will execute. When the operating system is interpreting a BASIC file, the address of the next token to be interpreted is also loosely referred to as the "PC" of the interpreter, and it is stored in register D0.

RAM

Abbreviation for random access memory.

Relative address

An offset address; usually used to describe the contents of a field which contains an absolute address from which the absolute address of the field start has been subtracted, generating a positive or negative offset.

ROM

Abbreviation for read-only memory.

Saturn

The HP internal code name for the CPU and bus architecture used in the HP-71.

System buffer

An operating system resource in main RAM which can be created by a LEX file for data storage. Sometimes referred to as an I/O buffer or a general purpose buffer.

Titan

The HP internal code name for the HP-71 computer.



---

HP-71 Software IDS - Detailed Design Description  
Table of Contents

sion 79.10.13 of RUNIT's INDEX program

Index-

1/X15, 9-8  
12-Form Mathematical operand, 13-15, 13-17  
15-Form Mathematical operand, 13-15, 13-17

## A

ACOS15, 9-8  
ACTIVE, 3-14  
AD15S, 9-8  
AD2-15, 9-8  
ADD, 14-4  
ADD1.5, 3-2  
ADDONE, 9-8  
Address updating  
    In system buffers, 3-32  
    On GOSUB Stack, 3-40  
    System RAM pointers, 3-13, 3-15  
Address zeroing, 3-53  
ADDRSS, 9-18  
ADHEAD, 9-5  
Adjustment Factor, 15-2  
ADRS40, 9-18  
Alarms Scheduling, 15-3  
ALMSRV, 5-4  
ALRM1, 3-17  
ALRM2, 3-17  
ALRM3, 3-17  
ALRM4, 3-17  
ALRM5, 3-17  
ALRM6, 3-17  
Alternate Character Set Buffer, 12-2  
ANNAD1, 3-2  
ANNAD2, 3-2  
ANNAD3, 3-3  
ANNAD4, 3-3  
Annunciators, 3-3  
ARG15, 9-8  
ARGPR+, 9-10  
ARGPRP, 9-10  
ARGST-, 9-10  
ARGSTA, 9-10  
Array  
    Creation, 13-14  
    Destroying, 13-14  
    Dope Vector, 13-6  
    Tokenization, 7-13  
ARRYCK, 9-14

ARYDC, 7-17, 9-1  
ASCICK, 7-17, 9-1  
ASIN15, 9-8  
Assembler Instruction Set, 16-1  
ASSIGN Buffer, 11-25, 12-1  
ASSIGN#, 11-25  
ATAN15, 9-8  
ATNDIS, 3-10  
ATNFLG, 3-10  
ATTN key processing, 4-4  
AUTINC, 3-16  
Available Memory  
    End, 3-38, 3-50  
    Management, 3-50  
    Start, 3-37, 3-50  
AVMEME, 3-14, 3-37, 3-38  
AVMEMS, 3-14, 3-34, 3-35, 3-37, 3-55

## B

## BASIC

    Application standards, 8-2  
    File type, 11-8  
    Interpreter, 5-1

## BASIC file

    Application standards preserving the main environment, 8-2  
    Application version number, 8-3  
    Chaining, 8-1  
    Compiling line number references, 8-1  
    Extending system capability, 8-1  
    Packing techniques, 8-2  
    Program line, 7-1  
    ROM generation, 8-1  
    Statement chaining, 7-1  
    Type, 11-8  
    VER\$, 8-3

BF2STK, 9-5

BIASA+, 9-11

BIASC+, 9-11

BIN Subprogram, 11-11

BIN File, 11-10

Binary Error Exit, 6-32

Binary Program, 6-31

    Ending, 6-32

BLDDSP, 9-2

BSERR, 10-7

## Buffer

    Alternate Character buffer, 12-2  
    ASSIGN buffer, 11-25, 12-1  
    Card buffer, 11-24, 12-1  
    Configuration buffer, 2-7, 3-26

Index-2

- External Command buffer, 12-3
- File I/O buffers, 12-4
- File Information Buffer, 11-25, 12-3
- Immediate Execute buffer, 12-13
- LEX Entry buffer, 12-12
- Startup buffer, 12-13
- Statement buffer, 3-31, 5-6
- Statistic buffer, 12-13
- System buffer, 3-31, 3-33
- System buffer (permanent), 3-32
- System buffer (scratch), 3-33
- System buffer address updating, 3-32
- System buffer automatic deletion, 3-32
- System buffer format, 3-31
- System buffer ID allocation, 18-9
- System buffer utilities, 9-16

**Bus**

- C bus command, 16-58
- Service Request bus command, 16-105
- Shutdown bus command, 16-104
- System Reset bus command, 16-100

**C**

- CALL, 3-55, 11-10
  - Binary to BASIC During Poll Response, 6-29, 6-33
  - Environment Save Area, 3-43, 3-45
  - Environment Save Block, 3-40, 3-43, 3-45
  - Funny functions in parameter list, 7-14
  - Local environment, 3-43
  - Parameter count, 3-24, 3-46
  - PRMPTR, 3-46
  - Stack, 3-44
  - Subprogram Save Stack, 3-43
- CALSTK, 3-14, 3-43, 3-44
- Card Reader Buffer, 12-1
- Carriage return, 9-2
- CAT CARD, 12-2
- CATCHR, 9-14
- CHAIN, 11-10
- Channel Number Save RAM, 3-25
- Character Set, 12-2
  - Alternate, 12-2
  - Standard, 12-2
- Characterization Nibble, 6-4
- Chip ID, 2-4
- CHN#SV, 3-25
- CHNLST, 3-14
- CKSREQ, 5-4
- CLASSA, 9-11
- CLCBFR, 3-13, 3-34, 3-35

- CLCOLL, 10-19
- CLCSTK, 3-14, 3-34, 3-35, 3-37
- Clock Speed, 3-25
- Clock System, 15-1
  - Considerations, 15-4
  - Servicing, 5-4
  - Timer, 15-1
- CLOSEF, 9-6, 11-25
- CLRFRFC, 9-9
- CMDPTR, 3-16
- CMOS test word, 3-49
- CMOSTW, 3-9
- CNTADR, 3-15, 3-46
- CNVWUC, 9-14
- COLLAP, 6-30, 10-19
- COMCK, 9-14
- Command Stack, 3-35
  - Altering number of stack levels, 3-35
- Complex, 13-5
  - Array internal representation, 13-9
  - Internal representation, 13-6
  - Short, 13-5
  - Short array internal representation, 13-8
  - Short internal representation, 13-6
- Configuration
  - At E0000 and F0000, 2-8
  - Buffer, 2-7, 3-26
  - Chip ID, 2-4
  - Device class, 2-4
  - Device number, 2-4
  - Device type, 2-4
  - Garbage dump, 2-10
  - IRAM, 3-47
  - Port number, 2-4
  - Routine, 2-3
  - Sequence, 2-4
  - Startup, 2-2
- Constant, 7-12
- COPY
  - Card to file, 11-24
  - File copy code, 11-1, 11-5, 12-4, 12-5
  - File to card, 11-24
  - Save Stack usage, 3-38
  - To/from card, 11-24
  - To/from external media, 11-25
  - To/from other memory devices, 11-25
- COS15, 9-8
- CPU Instruction Set, 16-1
- CRDFIL, 11-24
- CREATEF, 11-27
- CRTF, 9-6
- CSPEED, 3-25

Index-4

CURREN, 3-30, 3-46, 3-56  
Current line, 3-20  
CURRL, 3-20  
CURRST, 3-13, 3-30, 3-46, 3-55  
CURSOR, 3-10

## D

Daisy chain, 2-2  
DATA File, 11-15  
Data Types, 13-1  
DATPTR, 3-15, 3-46  
DBLPI4, 9-11  
DBLSUB, 9-11  
DD1CTL, 3-3  
DD1END, 3-3  
DD1ST, 3-3  
DD2CTL, 3-3  
DD2END, 3-3  
DD2ST, 3-3  
DD3CTL, 3-2  
DD3END, 3-2  
DD3ST, 3-2  
Decompile, 4-13  
    Algorithm, 4-13  
    Array, 7-17, 9-1  
    Entry conditions, 7-16  
    Exit conditions, 7-17  
    Expression, 7-17, 9-1  
    External invoking, 4-13  
    File specifier, 7-17, 9-1  
    Funny function, 7-18  
    Get text of token, 7-16, 9-1  
    Global assumptions, 7-16  
    Initiation, 4-13  
    Multi-use routines, 7-17  
    Output utilities, 9-13  
    Poll, 7-18  
    RAM usage, 7-16  
    Register usage, 7-16  
    Statement terminators, 7-16, 9-1  
    Status flag usage, 7-16  
    Utilities, 7-16, 9-1  
    Variable, 7-17, 9-1  
    Writing a decompile routine, 7-16  
Deep sleep Algorithm, 4-5  
DEFADR, 3-24  
DEFAULT  
    EXTEND, 12-15  
    OFF, 12-15  
    ON, 12-15

Delay, 9-3  
    With Warning Messages, 10-13  
DELAYT, 3-24  
DEST, 9-17, 9-18, 13-13  
Device Type, 12-4  
Device class, 18-1  
Device code, 18-1  
Device type, 18-1  
    Allocation, 18-2  
DISINT, 3-9  
DISP statement, 9-15  
Display  
    Control, 9-2  
    Driver, 3-10  
    Format, 12-14  
DISPLAY IS, 3-18, 9-2  
DMNSN, 13-14  
Dope Vector, 13-6, 14-4, 14-6  
Dormant flag, 4-4  
DPOS, 3-24  
DPVCTR, 13-14  
DROP, 14-4, 14-5  
DSLEEP Algorithm, 4-5  
DSPBRS, 3-10  
DSPCHA, 9-2  
DSPCHX, 3-15, 3-55  
DSPMSK, 3-11  
DSPSET, 3-19  
DSPSTA, 3-10  
DSTRY\*, 13-14  
DV2-15, 9-8  
DWIDTH, 3-24

## E

eMEM, 10-8, 10-17  
ENDBIN, 11-10  
Environment  
    Save Area, 3-43, 3-44  
    Save Block, 3-43, 3-44  
EOLCK, 9-14  
EOLDC, 7-16, 9-1  
EOLLEN, 3-24  
EOLSTR, 3-24  
EOLXC, 7-16, 9-1  
EOLXCK, 7-20, 9-15  
ERRADR, 3-15, 3-46  
ERRL, 10-1, 10-6  
ERRL#, 3-20  
ERRLCH, 3-25  
ERRMS, 10-1, 10-6

Index-6

ERRN, 3-19, 10-1, 10-6

Error

- Function execution, 7-25
- Insufficient Memory, 10-17
- Message handling, 10-1
- Parse, 7-11, 10-9
- Relinquishing error handling, 7-11
- Statement execution, 7-20

Error message, 10-4, 10-7

- Last error message ([g] [ERRM]), 10-2, 10-6
- Line number, 3-20
- Message number, 3-19
- Prefix, 10-30

ERRSUB, 3-15, 3-46

ESCSTA, 3-11

EX-115, 9-9

EX15, 9-9

EX15M, 9-11

Exactness, 14-1

Exceptions

- Attention key, 3-10
- Handling software interrupts, 5-3

Execution

- Expression, 7-21
- Function, 7-24
- Function entry conditions, 7-25
- Function entry point, 7-24
- Function exit conditions, 7-25
- Funny function, 7-26
- Immediate mode, 5-6
- Program, 5-7
- Statement, 7-19

EXP15, 9-9

EXPEXC, 7-20, 9-5, 9-15, 13-13

EXPPAR, 9-14

EXPRDC, 7-17, 9-1

Expression

- Decompile, 7-17, 9-1
- Parse, 9-14

Expression execution, 7-21

- Entry conditions, 7-21
- Function returns, 7-24
- Pop numbers and test exceptions, 7-23, 9-5
- Pop numbers off math stack, 7-23, 9-5
- Pop string and reverse, 7-23, 9-6
- Pop string off math stack, 7-23, 9-6
- Subroutine, 7-20, 9-15
- Utilities, 7-23, 9-4

External Command Buffer, 12-3

External Module Missing Hardware status bit, 16-5, 16-37



## F

- Fast Poll, 6-26
  - Issuing and Checking Response, 6-27
- FCSTRT, 9-10
- FIB
  - See File Information Buffer, 11-25
  - Update pointers, 3-55
- FIBADR, 9-6
- Field selection, 16-10
- FILCRD, 11-24
- FILDC, 7-17
- FILDC\*, 9-1
- File
  - BASIC, 11-8
  - BASIC subheader, 11-8
  - BASIC tokenization, 7-1
  - BIN, 11-10
  - BIN subheader, 11-10
  - Chain, 3-29, 11-1
  - Copy code, 11-1, 11-5, 12-5
  - Copying, 11-24
  - Creation, 11-27
  - DATA, 11-15
  - File chain in memory module, 3-47
  - File Chain Length field, 11-1, 11-5
  - File Information Buffer, 11-25, 12-3
  - Header, 11-3
  - Implementation Field, 11-1, 11-4, 11-6
  - KEY, 11-21
  - LEX, 11-22
  - Name, 11-3
  - Opening, 11-25
  - Protection and open files, 12-4, 12-6
  - Protection encoding in file type, 11-7
  - SDATA, 11-22
  - Searching, 11-26
  - Subheader, 11-1, 11-5, 12-4
  - TEXT, 11-23
  - Type, 11-3, 11-7, 12-4
  - Type Table, 11-5, 12-6, 17-2
- File Header, 11-3
  - Copy code, 11-3
  - Creation date, 11-4
  - Creation time, 11-4
  - File Chain Length field, 11-1
  - File type, 11-3
  - Filename, 11-3
  - Flags, 11-3
  - Implementation Field, 11-1, 11-4, 11-6

- Subheader, 11-1, 11-5
- File I/O buffers, 12-4
- File type, 11-3, 11-7
  - BASIC, 11-8
  - BIN, 11-10
  - DATA, 11-15
  - Encoding of file protection, 11-7
  - File Type Table, 11-5, 17-2
  - KEY, 11-21
  - LEX, 11-22
  - SDATA, 11-22
  - TEXT, 11-23
- FILEP, 9-14
- FILXQ, 7-20, 9-15
- FINDE, 7-20, 9-6, 9-15, 11-26
- FINITA, 9-11
- FINITC, 9-11
- FIRSTC, 3-10
- Flags
  - File Header, 11-3
  - System, 3-16, 12-13
  - User, 3-16
- FLGREG, 3-16
- FLIP10, 9-11
- FLIP11, 9-11
- FLIP8, 9-11
- FNRTN1, 9-5
- FNRTN2, 9-5
- FNRTN3, 9-5
- FNRTN4, 9-5
- FNRTNx, 7-24
- FOR/NEXT Stack, 3-38
- Foreign Language, 6-19
  - Messages, 10-1, 10-15, 10-18
  - Translators, 10-2, 10-21, 10-30
- FORSIK, 3-14, 3-34, 3-35, 3-37
- FSPECp, 9-14
- FSPECx, 7-20, 9-6, 9-15
- FUNCD0, 3-22
- FUNCD1, 3-22
- FUNCRO, 3-22
- FUNCR1, 3-22
- Function Execution, 7-24
  - Entry conditions, 7-25
  - Entry point, 7-24
  - Error exits, 7-25
  - Exit conditions, 7-25
  - Funny functions, 7-26
- Function Tokenization, 7-13
  - Funny function, 7-15

INDEX

HP-71 Software IDS Volume I Index

Funny function

- Decompile, 7-18
- Display of, 6-23
- Execution, 7-26
- Parse, 7-13
- Tokenization, 7-15

G

- GETCON, 9-11
- GETSA, 9-10
- GETVAL, 9-11
- GNXTCR, 9-12
- GOSUB, 3-39
- GOSUB Stack, 3-39
- GSBSTK, 3-14, 3-39
- GTEXT1, 7-16, 9-1

H

Handling

- Interrupt, 4-6
- Interrupt algorithm, 4-7

Hard-configured ROMs, 2-8

Hardware

- Return stack, 16-69, 16-92, 16-101
- Status bit MP, 16-4
- Status bit SB, 16-4
- Status bit SR, 16-4
- Status bit XM, 16-4
- Status bits, 16-4, 16-5

HNDLFL, 9-11

HP Logical Interface Format, 11-1, 11-4, 11-23

HPIL Mailbox, 3-18

HPSCRH, 3-25

HTRAP, 9-11

I

I/OALL, 9-16

I/OCOL, 9-16

I/OCON, 9-16

I/ODAL, 9-16

I/OEXP, 9-16

I/OFND, 9-16

I/ORES, 3-32, 9-16

IMAGE, 7-8

Immediate Execute Buffer, 12-13

Immediate mode, 5-6

Index-10

- Implementation Field, 11-1, 11-4, 11-6
  - DATA, 11-16
- INADDR, 3-16
- INBS, 3-15
- Independent RAM, 1-8
- Inf Exception, 13-16, 13-17
- INFR15, 9-9
- Insufficient Memory
  - Error, 10-17
  - Poll, 10-19
- INTA, 3-9
- INTB, 3-9
- Integer, 13-5
  - Array internal Representation, 13-8
  - Internal Representation, 13-6
  - Packed sign, 13-6
- Interpreter
  - Algorithm, 5-4
  - Entering, 5-1
  - Exiting, 5-2
  - Global assumptions, 5-8
  - Reentering, 5-1
- Interrupt
  - Handling, 4-6
  - Handling algorithm, 4-7
  - Keyboard, 4-6
  - Module pulled, 4-6
  - ON-key, 4-6
  - Other, 4-6
  - Software, 5-3
- INTM, 3-9
- INTR4, 3-9
- INVNaN, 9-11
- INXNIB, 3-17
- IOBFEN, 3-13
- IOBFST, 3-13, 3-29
- IOFSCR, 9-16
- IRAM, 1-8
  - Configuration, 3-47
  - File chain, 3-47
- IS-DSP, 3-18
- IS-INP, 3-18
- IS-PLT, 3-18
- IS-PRT, 3-18
- IS-Table, 3-18
- IS-TBL, 3-18
- IVLNIB, 3-17

## K

- KCOLx, 3-10
- Key definition Pointer, 3-24
- KEY File, 11-21
  - Entry, 11-22
- KEYBFR, 3-10
- Keyboard
  - Buffer, 3-10, 9-4
  - Flags, 3-10
  - Scanning, 9-4
- KEYBOARD IS, 3-18
- KEYPTR, 3-10
- KEYSAV, 3-10
- KEYSCN, 9-4

## L

- Labels, 16-6
- LABLDC, 7-17, 9-1
- Language Tables, 12-9
- LBLINP, 9-14
- LDCSPC, 3-15, 3-26, 7-16
- LEEWAY, 3-50, 3-51, 10-4, 10-17, 10-19
- LEX
  - Entry Number Range, 6-20
  - ID, 6-2, 6-19
  - ID allocation, 6-20
- LEX Entry Buffer, 12-12
  - Creation, 12-12
  - Usage, 12-13
- LEX File, 6-1, 10-21, 11-22
  - Answering poll to "clean up" RAM, 6-31
  - Creation, 6-8
  - Decompiling, 6-7
  - Display of external keywords, 6-23
  - Entry numbers, 6-19
  - Execution code, 6-6
  - External lexical analysis, 6-22
  - File structure, 6-1
  - GOTO or GOSUB, 6-25
  - ID, 6-19
  - LEX Entry Buffer, 12-12
  - Line number references, 6-25
  - Main Table, 6-4
  - Memory movement (using MGOSUB), 6-21
  - Merging, 6-20
  - Message Table, 6-6, 6-19
  - Message Table offset, 6-4

Index-12

- Name, 10-29
- Next LEX Table link, 6-2
- Parsing, 6-7
- Poll handler, 6-6
- Poll handler offset, 6-4
- Polling, 6-30
- Polling during parse or decompile, 6-30
- Range of entry numbers, 6-2, 6-20
- Referencing mainframe entry points, 6-20
- Sample, 17-62
- Search order, 12-12
- Short keywords, 6-23
- Speed Table, 6-2
- Statement Execution, 6-7
- TEXT Table, 6-5
- TEXT Table entry, 6-6
- TEXT Table offset, 6-4
- Lexical Analyzer
  - Overriding mainframe lexical analyzer, 6-22
  - Restarting, 6-24
  - Use of, 6-24
- Lexical Type Table, 12-10
- LEXPTR, 3-16, 3-26, 9-12
- LGT15, 9-9
- LIF, 11-1, 11-23
  - HP Logical Interface Format, 11-4
- LIN#DC, 7-17, 9-1
- Line feed, 9-3
- LN1+15, 9-9
- LN15, 9-9
- LOCK Password, 3-19
- LOCKWD, 3-19
- Logical Interface Format, 11-1, 11-4, 11-23
- LOOPST, 3-19
- LR, 14-5

## M

- Machine Code Packing techniques, 17-1
- Main Loop Algorithm, 4-3
- Main Table
  - Characterization Nibble, 6-4
  - Entry, 6-4
  - Execution Address, 6-4
  - Mainframe, 12-10
  - TEXT Table offset, 6-4
- MAINEN, 3-13, 3-29, 3-31
- MAINST, 3-13, 3-29, 3-31
- MAINT, 12-10
- MAKE1, 9-11
- Math Standard inputs and outputs, 14-1

- Math Stack, 3-34, 3-37
  - Data representation, 13-2
  - Data types, 7-21
  - Format, 7-21
  - Scratch math stack, 3-23
  - Usage, 7-21
- Mathematical Operands, 13-15
  - 12-digit form, 13-15
  - 15-digit form, 13-17
  - Extended values, 13-16
  - Packed representation, 13-15
  - Unpacked representation, 13-17
- MBOX<sup>^</sup>, 3-18
- MEMERR, 10-4, 10-7, 10-17
  - Entry points, 10-8
- Memory
  - Devices, 2-4, 18-1
  - Error, 10-4, 10-19
  - Layout, 3-12
  - Management, 10-17
  - Movement, 3-51
- Message
  - Error, 10-7
  - Foreign language, 6-19
  - Formats, 10-29
  - Handling, 10-1
  - Multiple text insertions, 10-13
  - Numbers, 10-3
  - Prefix, 10-29
  - System, 10-14
  - Table, 10-1
  - Text Insertion, 10-5
  - Type, 10-3
  - Warning, 10-11
- Message handling, 10-1
  - Entry points, 10-7
  - Indirect Calling, 10-14
  - Options, 10-3
- Message Table, 6-6, 6-19, 12-10
  - Construction, 10-29
  - Examples, 10-37
  - Message cells, 10-33
  - Offset, 6-4
  - Range, 10-30
- MESSG, 9-11
- MFERR, 10-7
- MFERR\* Entry Conditions, 10-8
- MFERRsp, 10-10
- MFWRN, 10-11
  - Entry Conditions, 10-11
- MFWRNQ, 10-11
- MGOSUB, 6-21

MLFFLG, 3-21  
Module Pulled Hardware status bit, 16-5, 16-34  
MP Hardware status bit, 16-4, 16-5, 16-34  
MP2-15, 9-8  
MPOP1N, 7-23, 9-5  
MPOP2N, 7-23, 9-5  
MSG\$, 10-2, 10-30  
MSN15, 9-12  
MTHSTK, 3-14, 3-34, 3-35, 3-37  
MVMEM+, 9-6

## N

NaN Exception, 13-16, 13-17  
NEEDSC, 3-24  
NTOKEN, 6-24, 9-12  
NUMCK, 9-14  
NXTIRQ, 3-17  
NXTIP, 9-14  
NXTISM, 7-19

## O

ON ERROR System messages, 10-16  
ON TIMER  
    Addresses, 3-15  
    Intervals, 3-15  
    Servicing, 5-4  
ONINTR, 3-15, 3-46  
OPENF, 9-6, 11-25  
Operands Mathematical, 13-15  
Operator Tokenization, 7-13  
ORGSE, 9-12  
ORSB, 9-12  
ORXM, 9-12  
OUT1TK, 9-13  
OUT2TC, 9-13  
OUT2TK, 9-13  
OUT3TC, 9-13  
OUT3TK, 9-13  
OUTBS, 3-14, 3-34, 3-35, 3-37  
OUTBYT, 9-13  
OUTELA, 9-1  
OUTNBC, 9-13  
OUTNBS, 9-13  
OUTNIB, 9-13  
OUTVAR, 9-14  
OVFNIB, 3-17



## P

## Packing Techniques

BASIC, 8-2

Machine code, 17-1

## Parse, 4-7

Algorithm, 4-8

Array, 9-14

Categorize character, 9-14

Convert to uppercase, 9-14

Entry conditions, 7-10

Errors, 4-12, 7-11, 10-9

Exit conditions, 7-10

Expression, 9-14

External invoking, 4-8

File name, 9-14

File specifier, 9-14

Funny function, 7-13

Get next character, 9-12

Get next token, 9-12

Global assumptions, 7-9

Initiation, 4-7

Input utilities, 9-12

Line number or label, 9-14

Numeric expression, 9-14

Output a nibble, 9-13

Output byte or token, 9-13

Output three bytes, 9-13

Output two bytes, 9-13

Output utilities, 9-13

Output variable, 9-14

Polling, 7-15

Register usage, 7-9

Restart, 4-12

Restart algorithm, 4-12

Restore input pointer, 9-12

Scan for tokens, 9-13

Simple numeric variable, 9-14

Simple variable, 9-14

Statement scratch usage, 7-9

Statement terminator, 9-14

Status flag usage, 7-9

String expression, 9-14

Utilities, 9-14

Word scan, 9-13

Writing a parse routine, 7-1

PC Program Counter Register, 16-4, 16-101

PCADDR, 3-15, 3-46

PI/2, 9-12

PLOTTER IS, 3-18

Index-16

PNDALM, 3-17  
Pointers CALC mode, 3-33  
Poll, 6-25  
    Algorithm, 6-25  
    Configuration, 12-3  
    COPY to external device, 11-25  
    Deep Sleep Wakeup, 12-3  
    During decompile, 7-18  
    During parse, 7-15  
    During Parse or Decompile, 6-30  
    Entering BASIC interpreter, 5-1  
    Exception, 5-4  
    Exiting BASIC interpreter, 5-3  
    Fast, 6-26  
    File specifier execution, 11-25  
    File specifier parse, 11-25  
    From a LEX File in RAM, 6-30  
    Handler Offset, 6-4  
    Insufficient Memory, 10-19  
    LEX File Handler, 6-6  
    Numbers, 18-7  
    Powerdown, 3-49  
    Process numbers, 6-31, 18-7  
    Responding to, 6-25, 6-29  
    Restore CALL environment, 3-45  
    RUN an unknown file type, 5-7  
    RUN non-BASIC file, 5-7  
    Save CALL environment, 3-45  
    Save Stack, 3-38, 6-28  
    Saved information, 6-28  
    Service request, 5-4  
    Slow, 6-27  
    Special return type, 3-40  
    Subroutine Level Usage, 6-29  
    VER\$, 8-3  
    Wakeup, 3-49  
    Zero Program, 6-31  
POP1N, 7-23, 9-5  
POP1R, 9-10  
POP1S, 7-23, 9-6  
POP2N, 7-23, 9-5  
POPBUF, 9-4  
POPMIH, 9-6  
Power off Algorithm, 4-5  
PPOS, 3-24  
PREP, 13-14  
PRGMEF, 9-6  
PRGMEN, 3-13, 3-30, 3-46  
PRGMST, 3-13, 3-30, 3-46  
PRINT statement, 9-15  
PRINTER IS, 3-18  
PRMCNT, 3-24

PRMPTR, 3-14, 3-46  
Process numbers, 18-7  
    See Poll process numbers, 6-31  
Program  
    Binary, 6-31  
    Execution, 5-7  
    Line with comment, 7-2  
    Line with labels, 7-2  
    Scope, 3-30  
    Suspending, 5-2  
Program edit, 4-14  
    Algorithm, 4-15  
    Global assumptions, 4-15  
PURGEF, 9-6  
PWIDTH, 3-24  
PWROFF Algorithm, 4-5

## Q

Quiet option, 10-11

## R

## RAM

    Availability, 3-26  
    Independent, 3-31, 3-47  
RAMEND, 3-14, 3-44  
Random number seed, 3-17  
RAWBFR, 3-13, 3-34, 3-35  
RCL\*, 9-10  
RCLW1, 9-10  
RCLW2, 9-10  
RCLW3, 9-10  
RCSCR, 9-10  
RDBYTA, 9-7  
READNB, 9-7  
Real, 13-5  
    Array Internal representation, 13-7  
    Internal Representation, 13-5  
    Short, 13-5  
    Short array internal representation, 13-7  
REAL SHORT Internal representation, 13-5  
Reference adjust, 3-51  
    Address updating, 3-52  
    Address zeroing, 3-53  
    Buffers, 3-58  
    Configuration buffer, 3-53  
    File chain, 3-55

## Referencing Addresses

In a LEX File, 6-22

In the Mainframe, 6-20

Register Program counter, 16-101

## Registers

CPU, 13-1

Data Pointers, 16-1, 16-3

Field selection, 16-10

Input, 16-1, 16-4

Output, 16-1, 16-4

P Pointer, 16-1, 16-3

Program counter, 16-4

Scratch, 16-1, 16-2

ST, 16-1, 16-4, 16-5, 16-13

Working, 16-1, 16-2

## Representation

Numeric Array, 13-6

Scalar Variable, 13-5

RESERV, 3-26

RESPTR, 9-12

RESREG, 3-19

Restart, 4-12

REST\* entry point, 7-11

Restarting Lexical Analyzer, 6-24

Result register, 3-19

RETURN, 3-39

To machine code, 3-39

Types, 3-39

Return stack, 16-69, 16-92, 16-101

REV\$, 7-23, 9-6

REVPPOP, 7-23, 9-6

RFADJ, 3-51

RFNBER, 3-13, 3-34, 3-35, 3-37

RNDAXH, 9-7

RNSEED, 3-17

## ROM

File chain, 3-47

Plug-in, 3-47

Take-over, 3-48

Take-over hard configured, 3-48

Take-over soft configured, 3-49

Rounding, 14-1

ROWDVR, 3-3

RPLLIN, 9-7

RSTKBF, 3-20, 3-26

RSTKp, 3-20

RUN, 11-10

Save Stack usage, 3-38

RUNRT1, 7-19

RUNRTN, 7-19

## S

Save Stack, 3-37, 6-28  
SAVESB, 9-12  
SAVEXM, 9-12  
SAVGSB, 9-12  
SAVSTK, 3-14, 3-37  
SB Hardware status bit, 16-4, 16-5, 16-35  
SB15S, 9-8  
Scratch  
    (See Scratch RAM), 3-21  
    Function, 3-26  
    Math Stack, 3-23  
    SCRICH, 3-26  
    Statement, 3-26  
    TRANSFORM Scratch RAM, 3-26  
Scratch RAM  
    Function, 3-21, 3-26  
    SCRICH, 3-22, 3-26  
    Statement, 3-21, 3-26  
    TRANSFORM, 3-22, 3-26  
SCREX0, 3-21, 3-23  
SCREX1, 3-23  
SCREX2, 3-23  
SCREX3, 3-23  
Scrolling, 9-2  
SCROLT, 3-24  
SCRPTR, 3-23  
SCRST0, 3-21, 3-23  
SCRICH, 3-21  
SDATA file, 11-22  
Searching LEX Files, 12-12  
SECURE, 12-6  
Service Request  
    Bus command, 16-105  
    Checking, 5-4, 16-105  
    Hardware status bit, 16-5, 16-35, 16-105  
SFLAG?, 9-7  
SFLAGC, 9-7  
SFLAGS, 9-7  
SFLAGT, 9-7  
SHFLAC, 9-12  
SHFRAC, 9-12  
SHFRBD, 9-12  
SIN15, 9-8  
SKIPDC, 7-17, 9-1  
Slow Poll, 6-27  
    Issuing and Checking Response, 6-28  
SNAPBF, 3-20, 3-26  
SPACE, 13-14

Index-20

- Speed Table, 6-2
- SPLITA, 9-9
- SPLITC, 9-9
- SPLITAC, 9-9
- SPLITAX, 9-9
- SQR15, 9-8
- SQRSAB, 9-8
- SR Hardware status bit, 16-4, 16-5, 16-35, 16-105
- sSSTdc, 7-16
- ST Register, 16-4, 16-5, 16-13
- Stack
  - CALL Stack, 3-44
  - Command, 3-35
  - FOR/NEXT, 3-38, 3-55
  - GOSUB, 3-39, 3-55
  - Math, 3-34, 3-37, 7-21
  - Return stack, 16-69, 16-92, 16-101
  - Return stack save buffer, 3-26
  - Save, 3-37, 6-28
  - Save Slow Poll information, 6-28
  - Scratch math stack, 3-23
- Standard Math Inputs and outputs, 14-1
- Startup Buffer, 12-13
- Statistics STAT Array internal representation, 13-10
- STAT, 14-4
- STAT Array Internal representation, 13-10
- STATAR, 3-19
- Statement
  - Decompile, 4-13
  - Execution, 7-19
  - Parse, 4-7
  - Tokenization, 11-9
- Statement Buffer, 5-6
- Statement execution
  - Entry conditions, 7-19
  - Error exits, 7-20
  - Exit conditions, 7-19
  - File name, 7-20, 9-15
  - File specifier, 7-20, 9-15
  - Find a file, 7-20, 9-15
  - Global assumptions, 7-19
  - LEX File, 6-7
  - Skip to next statement, 7-19
  - Statement terminator, 7-20, 9-15
  - Utilities, 7-20, 9-15
- Statement Label Chain within BASIC file, 11-8, 11-9
- Statistic Buffer, 12-13
- Statistical Array, 13-9
- Statistics
  - Algorithms, 14-2
  - Array, 3-19
  - Linear Regression, 14-5

- Statistical Array, 13-9
  - Summary, 14-2
  - Utilities, 9-10
- Status Settings S13: Program Running, 7-20, 7-25, 10-6, 10-7
- Sticky Bit Hardware status bit, 16-5, 16-35
- STKCHR, 9-5
- STMTD0, 3-21
- STMTD1, 3-21
- STMTR0, 3-21
- STMTR1, 3-21
- STORE, 9-18, 13-13
- STRGCK, 9-14
- String, 13-5
  - Array Internal representation, 13-11
  - Internal representation, 13-11
- String Variables, 13-10
  - Internal representation, 13-10
- Strings CPU Representation, 13-3
- STSAVE, 3-15, 3-26
- STSCR, 9-10
- Subheader
  - BASIC, 11-8
  - BIN, 11-10
  - File header, 11-1, 11-5
  - Length, 12-4
- SUBONE, 9-8
- Subprogram
  - Chain within BASIC file, 11-8, 11-9, 11-11
  - Chain within BIN file, 11-10, 11-11
  - Local environment, 3-43
  - Parameter count, 3-24
  - Save Stack, 3-43, 3-44
  - Variables, 13-12
  - Writing a BIN Subprogram, 11-11
- SWPBYT, 11-23
- Symbolic References, 6-8
- Symbolics
  - Ascii, 6-17
  - Mainframe Keywords, 6-8
  - Mainframe Operators, 6-17
  - Mainframe Relational Operators, 6-17
- Symbols, 16-6
- SYSEN, 3-14, 3-34, 3-35, 3-37
- SYSFLG, 3-16, 12-13
- System buffer, 3-31, 3-33
  - Address updating, 3-32
  - Automatic deletion, 3-32
  - Format, 3-31
  - ID allocation, 18-9
  - Permanent buffer, 3-32
  - Scratch buffer, 3-33
  - Utilities, 9-16

System Flags, 12-13  
System Message, 10-14  
System RAM  
    Alarm clock, 3-17  
    Availability, 3-26  
    CPU snapshot, 3-20  
    Decompile usage, 7-16  
    DISP/PRINT, 3-24  
    HP-IL, 3-18, 3-25  
    Interrupt, 3-9  
    Parse usage, 7-9  
    Reserved, 3-26  
    Return Stack save, 3-20  
    Update addresses, 3-15

## T

TAN15, 9-8  
TERCHR, 3-25  
TEXT File, 11-23  
TEXT Table, 6-5  
    Entry, 6-6  
    Offset, 6-4  
    Size of text, 6-6  
    Token#, 6-6  
TIMAF, 3-17  
Time Format Internal, 15-2  
TIMER1, 3-3  
TIMER2, 3-3  
TIMER3, 3-2  
TIMLAF, 3-17  
TIMLST, 3-17  
TIMOFS, 3-17  
TMRAD1, 3-15  
TMRAD2, 3-15  
TMRAD3, 3-15, 3-55  
TMRIN1, 3-15  
TMRIN2, 3-15  
TMRIN3, 3-15  
Token  
    Characterization Nibble, 6-4  
    Execution Address, 6-4  
    Main Table Entry, 6-4  
    TEXT Table offset, 6-4  
TOKEN#, 6-6  
Tokenization  
    Array, 7-13  
    CALL, 7-5  
    Comment ( ,REM), 7-2  
    Constant, 7-12  
    Function, 7-13



- Funny function, 7-15
- IF..THEN..ELSE, 7-3
- Label declaration, 7-2
- Operators, 7-13
- Program line, 7-1
- Statement, 7-1, 11-9
- SUB, 7-7
- Variables, 7-12
- XFN, 7-13
- Tokens
  - Building Symbolic Tokens, 6-18
  - Complete List of Mainframe Keyword Tokens, 6-8
  - Symbolic Referencing, 6-8
- TRACE, 5-8
  - Mode, 3-19
- TRACEM, 3-19
- Tracing
  - Program flow, 5-8
  - Variable assignment, 5-8
- TRANSFORM Save Stack usage, 3-38
- Trap Menu, 12-14
- Traps, 3-17, 12-14
- TRFMBF, 3-22, 3-26
- TRPREG, 3-17
- Truncation, 14-1
- IST15, 9-7
- TWO\*, 9-12

## U

- UNFNIB, 3-17
- UPDANN, 9-7
- Update addresses
  - GOSUB Stack, 3-40
  - Reference adjust, 3-52
  - System RAM, 3-13, 3-15
- URES12, 9-9
- URES1, 9-10
- URND>P, 9-10
- User's Library LEX files, 10-2
- User-Defined Function
  - Chain within BASIC file, 11-8, 11-9
  - Environment Save Block, 3-40, 3-41
  - Multi-line flag, 3-21
  - Parameter count, 3-14
  - Parameter pointer, 3-14
- Utilities
  - Arithmetic & square root, 9-8
  - Decompile, 7-16, 9-1
  - Decompile output, 9-13
  - Execution statement terminator, 7-20, 9-15

- Exponential & involution, 9-9
- Expression execute, 7-20
- Expression execution, 9-10, 9-15
- Factorial, 9-10
- File I/O, 9-6
- Find a file, 7-20, 9-15
- Flag, 9-7
- Integer-fraction functions, 9-9
- Inverse trig, 9-8
- Invoking mainframe routines from LEX file, 6-21
- Logarithmic, 9-9
- Math, 9-7
- Miscellaneous math, 9-11
- Numeric comparison, 9-7
- Output, 9-13
- Parse general, 9-14
- Parse input, 9-12
- Parse output, 9-13
- Pop, test, prepare one argument, 9-10
- Scratch math stack, 9-10
- Statement execution, 7-20, 9-15
- Statistical, 9-10
- System Buffer, 9-16
- Trig, 9-8
- Variable storage, 9-17

## V

- VARDC, 7-17, 9-1
- Variables, 13-3
  - Chain pointer, 3-14
  - Chains, 13-3
  - Creation, 13-14
  - Decompile, 7-17, 9-1
  - Destroying, 13-14
  - Indirect, 13-12
  - Internal representation, 13-3, 13-5
  - Management utilities, 9-17
  - Parse, 9-14
  - Recalling, 13-13
  - Storage, 9-17, 13-13
  - Tokenization, 7-12
- VARNB-, 9-11
- VARNBR, 9-11
- VECTOR, 3-9
- VER\$ poll, 8-3

## W

Wakeup algorithm, 4-4  
Warning messages, 10-5, 10-11  
    Entry Conditions, 10-11  
    Quiet option, 10-11  
WINDLN, 3-10  
WINDST, 3-10  
WRBYTC, 9-7  
WRDSCN, 6-24, 9-13  
WRITNB, 9-7

## X

## XFN

    Display of, 6-23  
    Tokenization, 7-13  
XM Hardware status bit, 16-4, 16-5, 16-37  
XROM01, 12-10  
XWORD Display of, 6-23  
XYEX, 9-12

## Y

YX2-15, 9-9

HP-71 Software IDS Volume I Index

INDEX





Portable Computer Division  
1000 N.E. Circle Blvd., Corvallis, OR 97330, U.S.A.

European Headquarters  
150, Route du Nant-D'Avril  
P.O. Box, CH-1217 Meyrin 2  
Geneva-Switzerland

00071-90068 English

HP-United Kingdom  
(Pinewood)  
GB-Nine Mile Ride, Wokingham  
Berkshire RG11 3LL

Printed in U.S.A. 2/84